



PageGate Version 7 Documentation

© 2014 NotePage, Inc.

PageGate Version 7 Documentation

by NotePage, Inc.

PageGate Version 7 Documentation

© 2014 NotePage, Inc.

All rights reserved. No parts of this work may be reproduced in any form or by any means - graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, or information storage and retrieval systems - without the written permission of the publisher.

Products that are referred to in this document may be either trademarks and/or registered trademarks of the respective owners. The publisher and the author make no claim to these trademarks.

While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this document, the publisher and the author assume no responsibility for errors or omissions, or for damages resulting from the use of information contained in this document or from the use of programs and source code that may accompany it. In no event shall the publisher and the author be liable for any loss of profit or any other commercial damage caused or alleged to have been caused directly or indirectly by this document.

May 2014

Publisher

NotePage, Inc.

Managing Editor

Sharon Housley

Technical Editors

Chris Housley

Jeremy Hartman

Table of Contents

Foreword	0
Part I Installation	14
1 Overview	14
2 Installation Options	15
PageGate Server	16
System Requirements	17
Pre-installation	17
Installing the PageGate Server	18
Windows XP and Server 2003 Instructions	19
Installation by CD-Rom	19
Installation by Download	20
Promptless Automatic Installation	21
Optional Registry Settings	23
Upgrading from Version 4 to 7	24
Upgrading from Version 5 or 6 to 7	26
Windows Vista, 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012 Instructions	29
Installation by CD-Rom	30
Installation by Download	31
Promptless Automatic Installation	32
Optional Registry Settings_2	33
Upgrading from Version 4 to 7	34
Upgrading from Version 5 or 6 to 7	37
PageGate GUI Client	40
System Requirements	40
Pre-installation	40
Installing the GUI Client	41
Windows XP and Server 2003 Instructions	41
CD-Rom Installation	42
Installation by Download	43
Promptless Automatic Installation	44
Optional Registry Settings_2_2	45
Upgrading from a previous version	46
Windows Vista, 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012 Instructions	46
CD-Rom Installation	47
Installation by Download	48
Promptless Automatic Installation	49
Optional Registry Settings_2_2_2	51
Upgrading from a previous version	51
Additional PG Admin	52
System Requirements	52
Pre-installation	52
Installing the Workstation Admin	53
Windows XP and Server 2003 Instructions	53
CD-Rom Installation	54
Installation by Download	55
Promptless Automatic Installation	56
Optional Registry Settings_2_2_2_2	57
Upgrading from a previous version	58

Windows Vista, 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012 Instructions.....	59
CD-Rom Installation.....	59
Installation by Download.....	60
Promptless Automatic Installation.....	62
Optional Registry Settings_2_2_2_2_2.....	63
Upgrading from a previous version.....	64
Additional PG Monitor	64
System Requirements.....	64
Pre-installation.....	65
Installing the Workstation PG Monitor.....	65
Windows XP and Server 2003 Instructions.....	66
CD-Rom Installation.....	66
Installation by Download.....	67
Promptless Automatic Installation.....	68
Optional Registry Settings_2_2_2_2_2.....	70
Upgrading from a previous version.....	70
Windows Vista, 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012 Instructions.....	70
CD-Rom Installation.....	71
Installation by Download.....	72
Promptless Automatic Installation.....	73
Optional Registry Settings_2_2_2_2_2.....	75
Upgrading from a previous version.....	75

Part II Introduction

75

1 Welcome to PageGate.....	76
2 What's New.....	78
3 Features & Capabilities.....	80
General	82
GUI Interface/GUI Client	83
Web Interface/GetWeb	85
Command Line/GetAscii	85
Email Interface/GetMail	86
Serial Interface/GetSerial	87
TAP-In Interface/GetTAP	87
SNPP Server Add-on	88
Touch-Tone Receiver Add-on	88
4 Purchasing & Pricing.....	89
Purchase	89
Upgrade	90
Reseller & Affiliate	91
Pricing	92
5 Contact Information.....	92
6 Version Information.....	93
7 End User License Agreement (EULA).....	93
8 Shareware & Evaluation Information.....	96

Part III PageGate Admin

97

1 Overview.....	97
2 Starting and Stopping the Admin.....	97

3 Using the PageGate Admin.....	98
Program	99
Program Settings	100
Run Styles	102
Template	104
Global Log.....	104
Security	105
Settings	106
Users	107
Adding a Security User.....	108
Logging In	110
Tools	111
File Versions	111
Modem Scan	112
Port Scan	113
Templates	114
Template Components	115
Settings	117
Delivery Variables	117
Content Variables.....	119
Macros	119
Subject	122
Message	122
Global Templates	123
Interface Templates.....	124
Connector Templates.....	125
Carrier Templates.....	126
Templates for HTTP GET Carriers	127
Templates for HTTP POST Carriers.....	127
Templates for Faxing.....	128
Recipient Templates.....	129
Database	130
Settings	131
Status	131
Tools	132
Import	133
Export	134
Rebuild Database.....	135
Passw ord Protect.....	136
Synchronization.....	138
Export	138
Import	139
Scheduler	140
Settings	141
Status	141
Log	142
Interfaces	143
GetAscii	144
What is Ascii?	145
Settings	146
Advanced Polling.....	147
Advanced Polling Notes.....	147
Files	148
Symbols	151

Record	152
Recipient	153
Lookup Table	154
Sender	156
Lookup Table	157
Message	158
Lookup Table	159
Template	161
Status	161
Log	161
Command Line Interface.....	162
GetMail	163
Overview	164
Settings	164
AdHoc	167
Method 1	167
Method 2	168
Domain POP	169
DUN	170
Template	171
Status	171
Log	172
GetSerial.....	172
Settings	172
Symbols	174
Record	175
Recipient	176
Sender	177
Message	177
Template	178
Status	179
Log	179
GetTap	180
Overview	180
Settings	181
AdHoc	182
Template	183
Status	183
Log	183
GetWeb	184
Overview	185
Settings	185
Ad-Hoc	187
Template	187
Status	188
Log	188
GUI Client.....	189
Settings	189
Template	190
Status	190
Log	190
Connectors	191
Global	192
Settings	193

Status	194
Connectors.....	194
Settings	195
Template	196
2-Way	196
Status	197
Log	197
Carriers	198
Overview.....	198
Protocols.....	199
Adding a Carrier.....	200
Creating a FAX Carrier.....	202
Creating a FAXSrv Carrier.....	203
Creating a File Carrier.....	204
Creating a GSM-AT Carrier.....	205
Creating an HTTP GET Carrier.....	206
Creating an HTTP POST Carrier.....	207
Creating a Raw Serial Carrier.....	209
Creating a Raw TCP Carrier.....	210
Creating an SMTP Carrier.....	211
Creating an SNPP Carrier.....	213
Creating a TAP Carrier.....	215
Creating a TONE Carrier.....	218
Creating a UCP Carrier.....	219
Creating a WCTP Carrier.....	221
Configuring Authentication Credentials.....	223
Template	223
Template.....	223
Requeue Messages.....	224
Cancel Messages.....	224
Pending Messages.....	225
Editing a Carrier.....	226
Recipients	228
Overview.....	229
Adding a Recipient.....	229
Send Messages.....	231
Requeue Messages.....	232
Cancel Messages.....	233
Pending Messages.....	234
Recipient Settings.....	235
Context Menu Options.....	235
Send Message.....	236
Requeue Message.....	236
Cancel Message.....	237
Pending Message.....	238
Rename	239
Delete	240
Settings	240
Advanced	242
Template	243
Groups	243
Email	244
POP Mail Collection.....	245
Email Aliases	246

Web Page	246
Groups	248
Overview	248
Adding a Group	248
Group Settings	250
Context Menu Options	250
Send Message	251
Requeue Messages	251
Cancel Messages	252
Rename	253
Delete	254
Settings	254
On-Call Schedule	255
Advanced	257
Members	258
Email	258
POP Mail Collection	259
Email Aliases	260
WebPage	261
Send Messages	262
Requeue Messages	263
Cancel Messages	263
Display Groups	264
Creating a Display Group	265
Members	266
Logging	266
Settings	268
Global	269
Scheduler	270
GetAscii	271
GetMail	272
General	272
SMTP Outgoing	273
SMTP Incoming	274
POP Client	275
POP Server	276
GetSerial	277
GetTap	278
GetWeb	279
GUI Client	280
Connectors	281
Audit	282
Reports	282
Overview	283
Sent Messages	284
Pending Messages	285
Statistics	286
Carrier List	287
Recipient List	287
Group List	288
Registration	289
Advanced Server Settings	290

1 Overview.....	295
2 Configuring the PageGate Client.....	296
3 Using the GUI Client.....	297
File	299
Display Options.....	301
Tools	302
Filter Recipients.....	303
Presets	304
Local Recipients.....	306
View	307
Pending	308
Sent	308
Bad	309
Scheduled.....	310
History	311
Local and Network Recipients.....	312
Reports	313
Sent Messages.....	314
By Recipient	314
By Date/Time	316
Scheduled Messages.....	317
Scheduling Messages	318
 Part V PageGate Monitor	 319
1 File	320
Settings	321
2 View.....	323
3 Tools.....	324
 Part VI Running PageGate the First Time	 325
1 One Time Configuration.....	326
2 Starting and Stopping PageGate.....	328
3 Monitoring PageGate.....	329
 Part VII Support	 330
1 FAQs.....	330
2 Where to Find Help.....	330
3 Glossary.....	331
Ad-Hoc	331
Carrier	331
Cell Phone	332
Character Content	332
Character Length	332
Comments	333
Connectors	333
Dialers	333
Direct Connect	334
Display-group	334
Email	334

Export	334
Failover	335
Fax	335
Filter	335
Font	335
Group	335
GSM	336
History	336
Hold Messages	336
HTTPS	0
ID/Pin	336
Import	337
Init String	337
Interface	337
Internet	338
Local Domain	338
Local Recipient List	338
Lock To Group	339
Logs / Logging	339
Maximum Characters	339
Mobile Phone	340
Modem	340
MultiPage	340
Network Recipient List	340
Notification	341
Notify Only	341
On-Call Group	341
Pager	341
Preprogram	341
Protocols	342
Purge After	342
Recipient	342
Redundancy	343
Reliapage	343
Repeating	344
Reports	344
Schedule	344
Sender's Name	344
Serial Connection	344
Service Provider	344
SMS	345
SMTP	345
SNPP	345
Spell Check	345
Station Number	345
Synchronization	346
TAP	346
Text Message	346
Touch-Tone	346
UCP	346
Update Frequency	346
WCTP	347
Wireless Devices	347

Index

349

1 Installation

Installation

[Top](#) [Next](#)

Four major components or modules to PageGate software:

- 1) **PageGate Server** - This module processes messages created by its various Interfaces.
- 2) **PageGate GUI Client** - The graphical user interface is used for sending and scheduling messages.
- 3) **PageGate Monitor** - A real time logging program that shows what is immediately happening in PageGate.
- 4) **PageGate Admin** - This module is used for administering and modifying PageGate's settings.

1.1 Overview

Overview

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

PageGate is designed to be a highly modular application that can send messages to cell

phones, pagers, email addresses or any combination of the three. This design also allows PageGate's modules to be run across multiple computers and platforms. The following installation information covers installation of PageGate on a single computer.

In a PageGate Server installation, the following modules are installed:

PageGate Server - This is the control module for PageGate. It is constantly running in the background whenever the PageGate application is running. It monitors, starts, and stops the other PageGate modules.

PageGate Scheduler - This module processes all messages sent by PageGate. It manages scheduled and repeating messages, in addition to scheduling the delivery of each message by a Connector.

PageGate Connectors - The Connectors are responsible for the actual delivery of the messages to a paging carrier(s).

PageGate Interfaces - These modules (GetAscii, GetMail, GetWeb, GetTAP, GetSerial and GUI) accept messages from various sources, into the PageGate application.

PageGate Add-ons - Additional server processes than can be run to accept messages into the PageGate Server: SNPP Server Add-on, Touch-Tone Receiver Add-on (require the GetAscii interface for operation)

PageGate Admin - The administration program is used to setup, control, and maintain the PageGate application.

PageGate Monitor - The monitoring application allows for real-time monitoring of the PageGate application from the local machine, or from any other workstation that is connected to the paging server via TCP/IP.

1.2 Installation Options

When you begin the installation for PageGate, you're presented with four options:

Install PageGate Server

Install PageGate GUI Client

Install Additional PG Admin

Install Additional PG Monitor

Click on a link above for further details regarding each installation option.

PageGate v 7.0



Install PageGate Server



Install PageGate GUI Client



Installers for additional administrative workstations



Install Additional PG Admin



Install Additional PG Monitor

Exit

1.2.1 PageGate Server

PageGate Server

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The PageGate Server is the main processing portion of PageGate. All messages, modules, and interfaces are contained within and run by the PageGate Server.

This installation should only be performed on the system intended to host the PageGate Server and its data.

1.2.1.1 System Requirements

System Requirements

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Minimum requirements to run PageGate:

Operating System: Windows XP, Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, Server 2003, Server 2008 32-bit and 64-bit, Server 2012.

Processor: 1.0 Ghz Processor or better.

Memory: 1GB RAM

Storage: 100 MB of free disk space (for application and database)

Communications: Depending on your method of delivering messages, you could need several things. If you want to use any of the dialing based protocols (TAP, TONE, Faxing, etc), you'll need an analog modem for those dialup connections.

If you plan to send information to a local messaging terminal or receive messages from that terminal, you'll need a serial cable for direct connections.

If you want to send SMS messages, you're going to need either an internet connection or a cellular modem that supports the GSM AT command set.

If you want to send AND receive SMS messages, you're going to need a cellular modem that supports the GSM AT command set.

1.2.1.2 Pre-installation

Pre-installation

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

There are a few things that should be verified and setup before the

installation of PageGate:

1. **If you are upgrading from a previous registered version of PageGate, be sure to obtain a new registration key for PageGate before installing the new version of PageGate.**
2. Be sure your hardware meets the minimum requirements for PageGate version 7.x
3. Be sure the computer on which PageGate is going to be installed is configured for your network. The monitoring program uses TCP/IP. Although TCP/IP is not required for running PageGate, it is recommended that it be installed on the system running the PageGate server so the monitoring program can function properly.
4. Be sure that you have sufficient permissions (if applicable) to install new programs on the chosen computer.
5. If PageGate is to be run as a Windows Service, be sure you that either the System Account in Windows is enabled OR you have an account configured with the 'log on as a service' right. Please refer to the section titled 'Run Styles' for more information.
6. In some cases, you will be asked to restart your computer after the installation of PageGate. If so, this must be done before PageGate is run. Be sure that you install PageGate at a time when this can be done.
7. **Always** be sure to have a complete backup of your system before installing **any** new software! The installation of PageGate is **not** and exception to this rule.

1.2.1.3 Installing the PageGate Server

Installing the PageGate Server

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Please reference the Windows 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012 portion of the manual to install on those operating systems.

Please reference the Windows XP and Server 2003 portion of the manual to install on those operating systems.

1.2.1.3.1 Windows XP and Server 2003 Instructions

Windows XP and Server 2003

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

There are four primary ways to install the PageGate Server:

- . Installation by CD-Rom
- . Installation by single executable
- . Promptless Automatic installation
- . Upgrading from a previous version

*** IMPORTANT ***

Please refer to the Windows 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012 Instructions section for steps on how to install the PageGate Server for those operating systems.

1.2.1.3.1.1 Installation by CD-Rom

Installation by CD-Rom

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

- 1) Insert the PageGate CD-Rom into your computer.
- 2) PageGate's setup routine will (on most computers) automatically start. If the setup program starts, go to step 3. If not, click on the Windows start button, and click 'Run' from the menu. Type in 'd:\setup' without the quotes (in this example the CD-Rom drive letter is 'd'. If your CD-Rom drive letter is different, use it instead). Then click on 'OK' button.
- 3) Click on the Install PageGate Server option.
- 4) In the next portion of the setup, you will be given the option to view the Readme and Release Notes files. If you choose to display either file, they will be shown when you hit 'Next'.

- 5) The following screen will display PageGate's End User License Agreement. Please read it carefully and proceed with the installation of PageGate only if you agree with all the terms of this agreement.
- 6) On the next screen you can specify a location where you want PageGate installed. The default install location is C:\PageGate\ You can change the installation path by hitting the 'Browse' button. To accept the install location, hit 'OK'.
- 7) You will now be prompted for the name of the group that the PageGate icons should be added to in the Windows Start Menu. The default group is 'PageGate'.
- 8) The setup program is now ready to install PageGate. Click on the 'Next' button to start the installation process.
- 9) The setup program will now copy the PageGate program and support files to your computer. If you encounter any problems during this part of the installation, please refer to the 'Installation Troubleshooting' section of the manual.
- 10) The next screen will tell you that PageGate has been successfully installed. Hit the 'Finish' button to exit PageGate's setup program.
- 11) In some cases, your computer will ask to be restarted after the installation of PageGate. If you are prompted to do so, you must restart your computer before running PageGate
- 12) Remove the CD and keep it in a safe place. You will need it again if you ever need to reinstall PageGate, or want to install the Additional PageGate Administrator, Additional PageGate Monitor, or GUI Client on a workstation.

1.2.1.3.1.2 Installation by Download

Installation by Download

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

- 1) Open a web browser.
- 2) Go to our website: <http://www.notepage.net>
- 3) In the center of the page, click on the Download button under the PageGate section.
- 4) When prompted, click on the Save option.

- 5) Save the pgsetup.exe file on your desktop.
- 6) After the file has been downloaded, double click on it.
- 7) When prompted, you want to click on the Install PageGate Server option.
- 8) Click on Next.
- 9) Select whether or not you want to view the ReadMe File and/or Release Notes, then click on Next.
Note: If this is your first time installing the PageGate Server, please take a moment to review both.
- 10) Please read the End User License Agreement (EULA), then select "I accept the agreement" and click on Next.
- 11) In the next step, you will be prompted for the PageGate Server installation directory.
By default, the installation directory is
C:\Program Files(x86)\NotePage\PageGate\ The installation directory can be changed to any local path. Click on Next to proceed.
- 12) In the next step, changes to the program group PageGate will appear under in the start menu can be made. Click on Next to proceed.
- 13) Select whether you want to create a Desktop Icon for PageGate and click on Next.
- 14) Click on Install to begin installing the PageGate Server.
- 15) Click on Finish to finalize the installation.
- 16) Be sure to make a copy of the installation file and store it somewhere safe. You will need it again if you ever need to reinstall PageGate, or want to install the Additional PageGate Administrator, Additional PageGate Monitor, or GUI Client on a workstation.

1.2.1.3.1.3 Promptless Automatic Installation

Promptless Automatic

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Installation

The PageGate Server can be installed unattended. This helps network administrators to automate the program's installation.

- 1) Start the PageGate setup program as usual (see above).
- 2) When the list of installation options screen is shown, browse in to the c:
 \Users\<your_user>\AppData\Local\Temp\ directory.
- 3) Copy the 'PGSetup' folder to another location.
- 4) Exit out of the installation program.
- 5) Use the following command line syntax to run a promptless install.

pgssetup.exe - PageGage Server installer (includes PG Admin and PG Monitor)

pgcsetup.exe - PageGate Client installer (for workstations)

pgasetup.exe - PageGate Admin installer (for workstations)

pgmsetup.exe - PageGate Monitor installer (for workstations)

Command line options:

/silent	Installs without prompts. Does display progress screens, will prompt for reboot if necessary.
/verysilent	Installs without prompts, display screens and will reboot without prompting, if necessary.
/norestart	This flag prevents the installation from rebooting, even if necessary.
/dir ="x: \dirname"	This flag overrides the default installation directory.
/ group="folder name"	This flag overrides the default Windows Start Menu group name.
/noicons	This flag will prevent the installation from creating the desktop icons for the program.

The <path> option should be replace with the path to where you copied the 'PGSetup'

folder in step #2 above.

Here is an example of a promptless install of the PageGate server if the PGSetup folder was copied to C:\

```
C:\PGSetup\pgssetup.exe /silent /dir="c:\PageGate"
```

That command line would install the PageGate server to c:\PageGate\ without prompting for information, would display the progress screens and would prompt to reboot the system if necessary.

Optional Registry Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Note: Folders that are set must be created and given sufficient rights before the program is run.

Location: HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\NotePage\PageGate\

Name	Type	Description
Prog_Dir	String	This value specifies the directory in which the program was resides. The path specified in this field must end in a backslash, \.
DB_Dir	String	This value specifies the directory in which the database resides. The path specified in this field must end in a backslash, \.
Log_Dir	String	This value specifies the directory in which the logs reside. The path specified in this field must end in a backslash, \.
Archive_Dir	String	This value specifies the directory in which archived information should reside. The path specified in this field must end in a backslash, \.
DB_Password	String	If a database password has been set on the PageGate database, the password for the database can be specified here. Due to the nature of the security involved, the value is encrypted, so it must be copied from a system with the password already set.

Upgrading from version 4 to 7

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Make sure you have a version 7 registration key. Version 4 registration keys will not work with version 7.

To verify that you have a PageGate Version 7 registration key, please have a look at your registration information. Contained within the registration information is a "Version" field. The Version field will let you know which version of PageGate the registration information is to be used with.

1) Make a backup of the PageGate Database.

Note: The file is named pagegate.mdb and is typically located in the PageGate Program directory.

2) Backup the PageGate log files (optional). These files are typically located in the PageGate Program directory.

3) If you're using PageGate's GetMail Module, please backup the PageGate mailboxes sub-directory of the PageGate Program directory.

4) If you're using PageGate's GetWeb interface, please backup the web templates/webpages.

i. On the computer running the PageGate Server, open the PageGate Admin.

ii. Go to the Interfaces - GetWeb - Settings section.

iii. Make a note of the Web Pages Directory.

iv. Browse to the directory indicated in Step #3.

v. In this directory, there will be a sub-directory called Templates.

vi. To backup your webpage templates, you could copy the Templates folder to a CD, make a copy on a network location, make a copy in a different folder on the current system, the methods of backing up can vary widely.

5) Shut down every part of PageGate. Make sure that none of the PageGate processes or applications, even the PageGate Client on the workstations, are running.

6) To verify that everything has been shut down, run the Task Manager in Windows by pressing Ctrl+Alt+Del on your keyboard or by right clicking on the task bar and

selecting "Task Manager".

- 7) Once the task manager comes up, browse through the Applications and Processes tab. There should be nothing that begins with PG in either list. If you see something that begins with PG that's still in the list, please highlight it and click on End Task.
- 8) Download the latest PageGate installation file from our website (<http://www.notepage.net> - Click on the download button under the PageGate section and save the pgsetup.exe file to your desktop).
- 9) Run the pgsetup.exe file you've just downloaded.
- 10) When it asks which installation you wish to run, the ONLY option you want to select is the PageGate Server option.
- 11) Unless you need to change the installation directory, you can really just click next through the entire routine until it finishes.
- 12) Now that we have version 7 installed, go to your start menu and run the PageGate Admin.
- 13) When prompted, select that you would like the database to be upgraded.
- 14) After the database upgrade is complete, it will prompt you for your version 7 Registration Key. Enter it, then click on Apply.
- 15) Run the PageGate Admin again.
- 16) Go to the Program - Settings section.
- 17) Once in the Settings, you should see a section that says "Run PageGate As". Click on Windows Service.
- 18) Click on Apply. Now when you click on Apply, it will ask you for credentials in order to make the change. Typically, if the default System Account in Windows is enabled, you can leave the credentials blank and click on Apply again. If the default system account is disabled, you'll need to provide an account name and password that has the "Log on as Service" security policy applied to it.

19) Open the Services list in Windows. You can do this by either going in to the Services section of the Administrative Tools in the Control Panel or by running services.msc in the Run command.

20) Browse to the PageGate Service.

21) Right click on the PageGate service, tell it to start.

To upgrade the PageGate Client from v4 to v7 in Windows XP and Server 2003, please refer to this portion of the manual.

To upgrade the PageGate Client from v4 to v7 in Windows Vista, 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012, please refer to this portion of the manual.

To upgrade the Additional PageGate Admin from v4 to v7 in Windows XP and Server 2003, please refer to this portion of the manual.

To upgrade the Additional PageGate Admin from v4 to v7 in Windows Vista, 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012, please refer to this portion of the manual.

To upgrade the Additional PageGate Monitor from v4 to v7 in Windows XP and Server 2003, please refer to this portion of the manual.

To upgrade the Additional PageGate Monitor from v4 to v7 in Windows Vista, 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012, please refer to this portion of the manual.

1.2.1.3.1.5 Upgrading from Version 5 or 6 to 7

Upgrading from version 5 or 6 to 7

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Make sure you have a version 7 registration key. Version 4 registration keys will not work with version 7.

To verify that you have a PageGate Version 7 registration key, please have a look at your registration information. Contained within the registration information is a “Version”

field. The Version field will let you know which version of PageGate the registration information is to be used with.

1) Make a backup of the PageGateData Directory.

Note: This directory typically located on the root of your C: Drive, so the default path is c:\PageGateData\.

2) Backup the PageGate log files (optional). These files are typically located in the PageGate Program directory.

3) If you're using PageGate's GetMail Module, please backup the PageGate mailboxes sub-directory of the PageGate Program directory.

4) If you're using PageGate's GetWeb interface, please backup the web templates/webpages.

i. On the computer running the PageGate Server, open the PageGate Admin.

ii. Go to the Interfaces - GetWeb - Settings section.

iii. Make a note of the Web Pages Directory.

iv. Browse to the directory indicated in Step #3.

v. In this directory, there will be a sub-directory called Templates.

vi. To backup your webpage templates, you could copy the Templates folder to a CD, make a copy on a network location, make a copy in a different folder on the current system, the methods of backing up can vary widely.

5) Shut down every part of PageGate. Make sure that none of the PageGate processes or applications, even the PageGate Client on the workstations, are running.

6) To verify that everything has been shut down, run the Task Manager in Windows by pressing Ctrl+Alt+Del on your keyboard or by right clicking on the task bar and selecting "Task Manager".

7) Once the task manager comes up, browse through the Applications and Processes tab. There should be nothing that begins with PG in either list. If you see something that begins with PG that's still in the list, please highlight it and click on End Task.

8) Download the latest PageGate installation file from our website (<http://www.notepage.net> - Click on the download button under the PageGate section and save the pgsetup.exe file to your desktop).

- 9) Run the pgsetup.exe file you've just downloaded.
- 10) When it asks which installation you wish to run, the ONLY option you want to select is the PageGate Server option.
- 11) Unless you need to change the installation directory, you can really just click next through the entire routine until it finishes.
- 12) Now that we have version 7 installed, go to your start menu and run the PageGate Admin.
- 13) When prompted, select that you would like the database to be upgraded.
- 14) After the database upgrade is complete, it will prompt you for your version 7 Registration Key. Enter it, then click on Apply.
- 15) Run the PageGate Admin again.
- 16) Go to the Program - Settings section.
- 17) Once in the Settings, you should see a section that says "Run PageGate As". Click on Windows Service.
- 18) Click on Apply. Now when you click on Apply, it will ask you for credentials in order to make the change. Typically, if the default System Account in Windows is enabled, you can leave the credentials blank and click on Apply again. If the default system account is disabled, you'll need to provide an account name and password that has the "Log on as Service" security policy applied to it.
- 19) Open the Services list in Windows. You can do this by either going in to the Services section of the Administrative Tools in the Control Panel or by running services.msc in the Run command.
- 20) Browse to the PageGate Service.
- 21) Right click on the PageGate service, tell it to start.

To upgrade the **PageGate Client** from v5 to v7 in Windows XP and Server 2003, please refer to this portion of the manual.

To upgrade the **PageGate Client** from v5 or v6 to v7 in Windows Vista, 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012, please refer to this portion of the manual.

To upgrade the **Additional PageGate Admin** from v5 or v6 to v7 in Windows XP and Server 2003, please refer to this portion of the manual.

To upgrade the **Additional PageGate Admin** from v5 or v6 to v7 in Windows Vista, 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012, please refer to this portion of the manual.

To upgrade the **Additional PageGate Monitor** from v5 or v6 to v7 in Windows XP and Server 2003, please refer to this portion of the manual.

To upgrade the **Additional PageGate Monitor** from v5 or v6 to v7 in Windows Vista, 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012, please refer to this portion of the manual.

1.2.1.3.2 Windows Vista, 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012 Instructions

Windows Vista, 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

There are four primary ways to install the PageGate Server:

- . Installation by CD-Rom
- . Installation by single executable
- . Promptless Automatic installation
- . Upgrading from Version 4 or 5

*** IMPORTANT ***

Please refer to the Windows XP and Server 2003 Installation section for steps on how to install the PageGate Server for those operating systems.

1.2.1.3.2.1 Installation by CD-Rom

Installation by CD-Rom[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

- 1) Insert the PageGate CD-Rom into your computer.
- 2) PageGate's setup routine will (on most computers) automatically start. Cancel the auto-run.
- 3) In Windows, browse to your CD Drive.
- 4) Right click on the pgsetup.exe file, left click on "Run As Administrator".
NOTE: YOU MUST DO THIS. If you try to run the installation normally, the User Accounts Control security feature of your operating system will prevent the program from functioning properly.
- 5) In the next portion of the setup, you will be given the option to view the Readme and Release Notes files. If you choose to display either file, they will be shown when you hit 'Next'.
- 6) The following screen will display PageGate's End User License Agreement. Please read it carefully and proceed with the installation of PageGate only if you agree with all the terms of this agreement.
- 7) On the next screen you can specify a location where you want PageGate installed. The default install location is C:\PageGate\ You can change the installation path by hitting the 'Browse' button. To accept the install location, hit 'OK'.
- 8) You will now be prompted for the name of the group that the PageGate icons should be added to in the Windows Start Menu. The default group is 'PageGate'.
- 9) The setup program is now ready to install PageGate. Click on the 'Install' button to start the installation process.
- 10) The setup program will now copy the PageGate program and support files to your computer. If you encounter any problems during this part of the installation, please refer to the 'Installation Troubleshooting' section of the manual.
- 11) The next screen will tell you that PageGate has been successfully installed. Hit the

'Finish' button to exit PageGate's setup program.

- 12) In some cases, your computer will ask to be restarted after the installation of PageGate. If you are prompted to do so, you must restart your computer before running PageGate
- 13) Remove the CD and keep it in a safe place. You will need it again if you ever need to reinstall PageGate, or want to install the Additional PageGate Administrator, Additional PageGate Monitor, or GUI Client on a workstation.

1.2.1.3.2.2 Installation by Download

Installation by Download

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

- 1) Open a web browser.
- 2) Go to our website: <http://www.notepage.net>
- 3) In the center of the page, click on the Download button under the PageGate section.
- 4) When prompted, you want to click on the Save option.
- 5) Save the pgsetup.exe file on your desktop.
- 6) After the file has been downloaded, right click on the file and select "Run As Administrator".
NOTE: YOU MUST DO THIS. If you try to run the installation normally, the User Accounts Control security feature of your operating system will prevent the program from functioning properly.
- 7) When prompted, you want to click on the Install PageGate Server option.
- 8) Click on Next.
- 9) Select whether or not you want to view the ReadMe File and/or Release Notes, then click on Next.
Note: If this is your first time installing the PageGate Server, please take a moment to review both.

- 10) Please read the End User License Agreement (EULA), then select "I accept the agreement" and click on Next.
- 11) In the next step, you will be prompted for the PageGate Server installation directory. By default, the installation directory is
C:\Program Files(x86)\NotePage\PageGate\ The installation directory can be changed to any local path. Click on Next to proceed.
- 12) In the next step, changes to the program group PageGate will appear under in the start menu can be made. Click on Next to proceed.
- 13) Select whether you want to create a Desktop Icon for PageGate and click on Next.
- 14) Click on Install to begin installing the PageGate Server.
- 15) Click on Finish to finalize the installation.
- 16) Be sure to make a copy of the installation file and store it somewhere safe. You will need it again if you ever need to reinstall PageGate, or want to install the Additional PageGate Administrator, Additional PageGate Monitor, or GUI Client on a workstation.

1.2.1.3.2.3 Promptless Automatic Installation

Promptless Automatic Installation

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Any part of PageGate can be installed unattended. This helps network administrators to automate the program's installation.

- 1) Start the PageGate setup program as usual (see above).
- 2) When the list of installation options screen is shown, exit the installation.
- 3) Browse in to the c:\Users\<your_user>\AppData\Local\Temp\ directory.
- 4) Copy the 'PGSetup' folder to another location.

5) Use the following command line syntax to run a promptless install.

pgssetup.exe - PageGage Server installer (includes PG Admin and PG Monitor)

pgcsetup.exe - PageGate Client installer (for workstations)

pgasetup.exe - PageGate Admin installer (for workstations)

pgmsetup.exe - PageGate Monitor installer (for workstations)

Command line options:

/silent	Installs without prompts. Does display progress screens, will prompt for reboot if necessary.
/verysilent	Installs without prompts, display screens and will reboot without prompting, if necessary.
/norestart	This flag prevents the installation from rebooting, even if necessary.
/dir="x:\dirname"	This flag overrides the default installation directory.
/group="folder name"	This flag overrides the default Windows Start Menu group name.
/noicons	This flag will prevent the installation from creating the desktop icons for the program.

The <path> option should be replace with the path to where you copied the 'PGSetup' folder in step #2 above.

Here is an example of a promptless install of the PageGate server if the PGSetup folder was copied to C:\

```
C:\PGSetup\pgssetup.exe /silent /dir="c:\PageGate"
```

That command line would install the PageGate server to c:\PageGate\ without prompting for information, would display the progress screens and would prompt to reboot the system if necessary.

Optional Registry Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Note: Folders that are set must be created and given sufficient rights before the program

is run.

Location: HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\NotePage\PageGate\

Name	Type	Description
Prog_Dir	String	This value specifies the directory in which the program was resides. The path specified in this field must end in a backslash, \.
DB_Dir	String	This value specifies the directory in which the database resides. The path specified in this field must end in a backslash, \.
Log_Dir	String	This value specifies the directory in which the logs reside. The path specified in this field must end in a backslash, \.
Archive_Dir	String	This value specifies the directory in which archived information should reside. The path specified in this field must end in a backslash, \.
DB_Password	String	If a database password has been set on the PageGate database, the password for the database can be specified here. Due to the nature of the security involved, the value is encrypted, so it must be copied from a system with the password already set.

1.2.1.3.2.4 Upgrading from Version 4 to 7

Upgrading from Version 7

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Make sure you have a PGv7 registration key. Version 4 registration keys will not work with version 7.

To verify that you have a PageGate Version 7 registration key, please have a look at your registration information. Contained within the registration information is a "Version" field. The Version field will let you know which version of PageGate the registration information is to be used with.

- 1) Make a backup of the PageGate database (pagegate.mdb). By default, this file is located in the c:\Program Files\PageGate\ directory.

- 2) If you're using PageGate's GetMail Module, please backup the PageGate Mailboxes sub-directory of the PageGate Program directory.
- 3) If you're using PageGate's GetWeb interface, please backup the web templates/webpages.
 - i. On the computer running the PageGate Server, open the PageGate Admin.
 - ii. Go to the Interfaces - GetWeb - Settings section.
 - iii. Make a note of the Web Pages Directory.
 - iv. Browse to the directory indicated in Step #3.
 - v. In this directory, there will be a sub-directory called Templates.
 - vi. To backup your webpage templates, you could copy the Templates folder to a CD, make a copy on a network location, make a copy in a different folder on the current system, the methods of backing up can vary widely.
- 4) Shut down every part of PageGate. Make sure that none of the PageGate processes or applications, even the PageGate Client on the workstations, are running.
- 5) To verify that everything has been shut down, run the Task Manager in Windows by pressing Ctrl+Alt+Del on your keyboard or by right clicking on the task bar and selecting "Task Manager".
- 6) Once the task manager comes up, browse through the Applications and Processes tab. There should be nothing that begins with PG in either list. If you see something that begins with PG that's still in the list, please highlight it and click on End Task.
- 7) Download the latest PageGate installation file from our website (<http://www.notepage.net> - Click on the download button under the PageGate section and save the pgsetup.exe file to your desktop).
- 8) Right click on the pgsetup.exe, left click on "Run As Administrator".
NOTE: YOU MUST DO THIS. If you try to run the installation normally, the User Accounts Control security feature of your operating system will prevent the program from functioning properly.
- 9) When it asks which installation you wish to run, the ONLY option you want to select is the PageGate Server option.
- 10) Unless you need to change the installation directory, you can really just click next

through the entire routine until it finishes.

- 11) Now that we have version 7 installed, go to Start - Programs - PageGate, then left click on the shortcut for the the PageGate Admin and left click on "Run As Administrator".

NOTE: YOU MUST DO THIS. If you try to run the Admin normally, the User Accounts Control security feature of your operating system will prevent the program from functioning properly.

- 12) When prompted, select that you would like the database to be upgraded.
- 13) After the database upgrade is complete, it will prompt you for your version 7 Registration Key. Enter it, then click on Apply.
- 14) Run the PageGate Admin again, following the same procedure as in step 11.
- 15) Go to the Program - Settings section.
- 16) Once in the Settings, you should see a section that says "Run PageGate As". Click on Windows Service.
- 17) Click on Apply. Now when you click on Apply, it will ask you for credentials in order to make the change. Typically, if the default System Account in Windows is enabled, you can leave the credentials blank and click on Apply again. If the default system account is disabled, you'll need to provide an account name and password that has the "Log on as Service" security policy applied to it.
- 18) Open the Services list in Windows. You can do this by either going in to the Services section of the Administrative Tools in the Control Panel or by running services.msc in the Run command.
- 19) Browse to the PageGate Service.
- 20) Right click on the PageGate service, tell it to start.

To upgrade the PageGate Client from v4 to v7 in Windows XP and Server 2003, please refer to this portion of the manual.

To upgrade the PageGate Client from v4 to v7 in Windows Vista, 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012, please refer to this portion of the manual.

To upgrade the Additional PageGate Admin from v4 to v7 in Windows XP and Server 2003, please refer to this portion of the manual.

To upgrade the Additional PageGate Admin from v4 to v7 in Windows Vista, 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012, please refer to this portion of the manual.

To upgrade the Additional PageGate Monitor from v4 to v7 in Windows XP and Server 2003, please refer to this portion of the manual.

To upgrade the Additional PageGate Monitor from v4 to v7 in Windows Vista, 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012, please refer to this portion of the manual.

1.2.1.3.2.5 Upgrading from Version 5 or 6 to 7

Upgrading from version 5 or 6 to 7

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Make sure you have a PGv7 registration key. Version 5 or 6 registration keys will not work with version 7.

To verify that you have a PageGate Version 7 registration key, please have a look at your registration information. Contained within the registration information is a "Version" field. The Version field will let you know which version of PageGate the registration information is to be used with.

- 1) Make a backup of the PageGateData directory. By default, this is the c:\PageGateData\ directory.
- 2) If you're using PageGate's GetMail Module, please backup the PageGate Mailboxes sub-directory of the PageGate Program directory.
- 3) If you're using PageGate's GetWeb interface, please backup the web templates/webpages.
 - i. On the computer running the PageGate Server, open the PageGate Admin.
 - ii. Go to the Interfaces - GetWeb - Settings section.

- iii. Make a note of the Web Pages Directory.
 - iv. Browse to the directory indicated in Step #3.
 - v. In this directory, there will be a sub-directory called Templates.
 - vi. To backup your webpage templates, you could copy the Templates folder to a CD, make a copy on a network location, make a copy in a different folder on the current system, the methods of backing up can vary widely.
- 4) Shut down every part of PageGate. Make sure that none of the PageGate processes or applications, even the PageGate Client on the workstations, are running.
- 5) To verify that everything has been shut down, run the Task Manager in Windows by pressing Ctrl+Alt+Del on your keyboard or by right clicking on the task bar and selecting "Task Manager".
- 6) Once the task manager comes up, browse through the Applications and Processes tab. There should be nothing the begins with PG in either list. If you see something that begins with PG that's still in the list, please highlight it and click on End Task.
- 7) Download the latest PageGate installation file from our website (<http://www.notepage.net> - Click on the download button under the PageGate section and save the pgsetup.exe file to your desktop).
- 8) Right click on the pgsetup.exe, left click on "Run As Administrator".
NOTE: YOU MUST DO THIS. If you try to run the installation normally, the User Accounts Control security feature of your operating system will prevent the program from functioning properly.
- 9) When it asks which installation you wish to run, the ONLY option you want to select is the PageGate Server option.
- 10) Unless you need to change the installation directory, you can really just click next through the entire routine until it finishes.
- 11) Now that we have version 7 installed, go to Start - Programs - PageGate, then left click on the shortcut for the the PageGate Admin and left click on "Run As Administrator".
NOTE: YOU MUST DO THIS. If you try to run the Admin normally, the User Accounts Control security feature of your operating system will prevent the program

from functioning properly.

- 12) When prompted, select that you would like the database to be upgraded.
- 13) After the database upgrade is complete, it will prompt you for your version 7 Registration Key. Enter it, then click on Apply.
- 14) Run the PageGate Admin again, following the same procedure as in step 11.
- 15) Go to the Program - Settings section.
- 16) Once in the Settings, you should see a section that says "Run PageGate As". Click on Windows Service.
- 17) Click on Apply. Now when you click on Apply, it will ask you for credentials in order to make the change. Typically, if the default System Account in Windows is enabled, you can leave the credentials blank and click on Apply again. If the default system account is disabled, you'll need to provide an account name and password that has the "Log on as Service" security policy applied to it.
- 18) Open the Services list in Windows. You can do this by either going in to the Services section of the Administrative Tools in the Control Panel or by running services.msc in the Run command.
- 19) Browse to the PageGate Service.
- 20) Right click on the PageGate service, tell it to start.

To upgrade the PageGate Client from v5 or v6 to v7 in Windows XP and Server 2003, please refer to this portion of the manual.

To upgrade the PageGate Client from v5 or v6 to v7 in Windows Vista, 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012, please refer to this portion of the manual.

To upgrade the Additional PageGate Admin from v5 or v6 to v7 in Windows XP and Server 2003, please refer to this portion of the manual.

To upgrade the Additional PageGate Admin from v5 or v6 to v7 in Windows Vista, 7, 8,

Server 2008 and Server 2012, please refer to this portion of the manual.

To upgrade the Additional PageGate Monitor from from v5 or v6 to v7 in Windows XP and Server 2003, please refer to this portion of the manual.

To upgrade the Additional PageGate Monitor from v5 or v6 to v7 in Windows Vista, 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012, please refer to this portion of the manual.

1.2.2 PageGate GUI Client

PageGate GUI Client

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The PageGate GUI Client is the Graphical User Interface for the program. It shows a list of recipients available to message and grants the ability to immediately send or schedule messages.

The PageGate Client can be installed on the server but is intended to be run from workstation computers. Do not have the workstations reference the PageGate Server's GUI Client folder, if you have the Client installed on the Server as each workstation requires its own installation of the GUI Client.

1.2.2.1 System Requirements

System Requirements

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Minimum requirements to run the PageGate GUI Client:

Operating System: Windows XP, Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, Server 2003, Server 2008 32-bit and 64-bit, Server 2012.

Processor: 1.0 Ghz Processor or better.

Memory: 1GB RAM

Storage: 100 MB of free disk space (for application and database)

1.2.2.2 Pre-installation

Pre-installation

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

There are a few things you should verify before installing the PageGate GUI Client:

- 1) The PageGate paging server must be installed and operational before the PageGate GUI Client is installed.
- 2) The workstation must have network access to the paging database (pagegate.mdb). The workstation must have read, write, and change permissions to this file.
- 3) If you plan to use the spell-checking feature, Microsoft Office 2000 or newer must be installed on the workstation.
- 4) If application or database passwords have been defined in the PG Admin program, they will be needed to access the application and the PageGate database.

1.2.2.3 Installing the GUI Client

Installing the GUI Client

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Please reference the Windows 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012 portion of the manual to install on those operating systems.

Please reference the Windows XP and Server 2003 portion of the manual to install on those operating systems.

1.2.2.3.1 Windows XP and Server 2003 Instructions

Windows XP and Server 2003

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

There are four primary ways to install the PageGate Client:

- . Installation by CD-Rom
- . Installation by single executable
- . Promptless Automatic installation
- . Upgrading from a previous version

*** IMPORTANT ***

Please refer to the Windows 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012 Instructions section for steps on how to install the PageGate Server for those operating

systems.

1.2.2.3.1.1 CD-Rom Installation

CD-Rom Installation

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

- 1) Insert the PageGate CD-Rom into your computer.
- 2) PageGate's setup routine will (on most computers) automatically start. If the setup program starts, go to step 3. If not, click on the Windows start button, and click 'Run' from the menu. Type in 'd:\setup' without the quotes (in this example the CD-Rom drive letter is 'd'. If your CD-Rom drive letter is different, use it instead). Then click on 'OK' button.
- 3) Click on the Install PageGate GUI Client option.
- 4) Click on Next.
- 5) In the next portion of the setup, you will be given the option to view the Readme and Release Notes files. If you choose to display either file, they will be shown when you hit 'Next'.
- 6) Please read the End User License Agreement (EULA), then select "I accept the agreement" and click on Next.
- 7) Next you will be prompted for the PageGate GUI Client installation directory. By default, the installation directory is c:\program files (x86)\pagegate client\. While you do not necessarily have to change the installation directory, **we strongly recommend changing the path to c:\PageGate Client**. Once you've specified the installation path, click on Next to proceed.
- 8) In the next step, changes to the program group the GUI Client will appear under in the start menu can be made. Click on Next to proceed.
- 9) Select whether you want to create a Desktop Icon for PageGate and click on Next.
- 10) Click on Install to begin the installation.

- 11) Click on Finish to finalize the installation.
- 12) Remove the CD and keep it in a safe place. You will need it again if you ever need to reinstall PageGate, or want to install the Additional PageGate Administrator, Additional PageGate Monitor, or GUI Client on a workstation.

1.2.2.3.1.2 Installation by Download

Installation by Download

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

- 1) Open a web browser.
- 2) Go to our website: <http://www.notepage.net>
- 3) In the center of the page, click on the Download button under the PageGate section.
- 4) When prompted, you want to click on the Save option.
- 5) Save the pgsetup.exe file on your desktop.
- 6) After the file has been downloaded, double click on it.
- 7) When prompted, you want to click on the Install PageGate GUI Client option.
- 8) Click on Next.
- 9) Select whether or not you want to view the ReadMe File and/or Release Notes, then click on Next.
Note: If this is your first time installing the PageGate Client, please take a moment to review both.
- 10) Please read the End User License Agreement (EULA), then select "I accept the agreement" and click on Next.
- 11) In the next step, you will be prompted for the PageGate Client installation directory. By default, the installation directory is c:\program files (x86)\pagegate client\. While you do not necessarily have to change the installation directory, **we strongly recommend changing the path to c:\PageGate Client**. Once you've specified the installation path, click on Next to proceed.

- 12) In the next step, changes to the program group PageGate Client will appear under in the start menu can be made. Click on Next to proceed.
- 13) Select whether you want to create a Desktop Icon for the PageGate Client and click on Next.
- 14) Click on Install to begin installing the PageGate Client.
- 15) Click on Finish to finalize the installation.
- 16) Be sure to make a copy of the installation file and store it somewhere safe. You will need it again if you ever need to reinstall PageGate, or want to install the Additional PageGate Administrator, Additional PageGate Monitor, or GUI Client on a workstation.

1.2.2.3.1.3 Promptless Automatic Installation

Promptless Automatic Installation

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Any part of PageGate can be installed unattended. This helps network administrators to automate the program's installation.

- 1) Start the PageGate setup program as usual (see above).
- 2) When the list of installation options screen is shown, exit the installation.
- 3) Browse in to the c:\Users\<your_user>\AppData\Local\Temp\ directory.
- 4) Copy the 'PGSetup' folder to another location.
- 5) Use the following command line syntax to run a promptless install.

pgssetup.exe - PageGage Server installer (includes PG Admin and PG Monitor)

pgcsetup.exe - PageGate Client installer (for workstations)

pgasetup.exe - PageGate Admin installer (for workstations)

pgmsetup.exe - PageGate Monitor installer (for workstations)

Command line options:

/silent	Installs without prompts. Does display progress screens, will prompt for reboot if necessary.
/verysilent	Installs without prompts, display screens and will reboot without prompting, if necessary.
/norestart	This flag prevents the installation from rebooting, even if necessary.
/dir="x:\dirname"	This flag overrides the default installation directory.
/group="folder name"	This flag overrides the default Windows Start Menu group name.
/noicons	This flag will prevent the installation from creating the desktop icons for the program.

The <path> option should be replace with the path to where you copied the 'PGSetup' folder in step #2 above.

Here is an example of a promptless install of the PageGate server if the PGSetup folder was copied to C:\

```
C:\PGSetup\pgssetup.exe /silent /dir="c:\PageGate"
```

That command line would install the PageGate server to c:\PageGate\ without prompting for information, would display the progress screens and would prompt to reboot the system if necessary.

Optional Registry Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Note: Folders that are set must be created and given sufficient rights before the program is run.

Client Registry Settings

Location: HKEY_CURRENT_USER\SOFTWARE\NotePage\NotePagerNet\

Name	Type	Description
LockSettings	Dword	By default settings in the Current User portion of the registry

		are used. If every user on the workstation should use the standardized, rather than logon specific, settings, then the Local Machine portion of the registry can be forced to be used instead by setting LockSettings to 1, which is a 'true' value.
DB_Dir	String	This value specifies the directory in which the database resides. The path specified in this field must end in a backslash, \.
DB_Password	String	If a database password has been set on the PageGate database, the password for the database can be specified here. Due to the nature of the security involved, the value is encrypted, so it must be copied from a system with the password already set.
Sender	String	This value specifies a static sender's name that this copy of the Client will use when sending messages.
Station	String	Note: Values lower than 10 are system reserved and should never be used. Clients with the same Station value will be able to reference each others' message histories and be able to run reports on the same.

1.2.2.3.1.4 Upgrading from a previous version

Upgrading from a previous version

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

To upgrade the PageGate Client from a previous version to version 7:

Make sure you DO NOT have the PageGate Client running. The update cannot be applied if the PG Client is running.

Go through the steps enumerated in the Installation by Download section but during the installation, make sure to specify the exact same installation directory that the previous version of the PageGate Client was installed to.

1.2.2.3.2 Windows Vista, 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012 Instructions

Windows Vista, 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

There are four primary ways to install the PageGate Server:

- . Installation by CD-Rom
- . Installation by single executable
- . Promptless Automatic installation
- . Upgrading from Version 4 or 5

***** IMPORTANT *****

Please refer to the Windows XP and Server 2003 Installation section for steps on how to install the PageGate Client for those operating systems.

1.2.2.3.2.1 CD-Rom Installation

CD-Rom Installation

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

- 1) Insert the PageGate CD-Rom into your computer.
- 2) PageGate's setup routine will (on most computers) automatically start. Cancel the auto-run.
- 3) In Windows, browse to your CD Drive.
- 4) Right click on the pgcsetup.exe file, left click on "Run As Administrator".
NOTE: YOU MUST DO THIS. If you try to run the installation normally, the User Accounts Control security feature of your operating system will prevent the program from functioning properly.
- 5) In the next portion of the setup, you will be given the option to view the Readme and Release Notes files. If you choose to display either file, they will be shown when you hit 'Next'.
- 6) Please read the End User License Agreement (EULA), then select "I accept the agreement" and click on Next.
- 7) Next you will be prompted for the PageGate GUI Client installation directory. By

default, the installation directory is c:\program files (x86)\pagegate client\. While you do not necessarily have to change the installation directory, **we strongly recommend changing the path to c:\PageGate Client**. Once you've specified the installation path, click on Next to proceed.

- 8) In the next step, changes to the program group the GUI Client will appear under in the start menu can be made. Click on Next to proceed.
- 9) Select whether you want to create a Desktop Icon for PageGate and click on Next.
- 10) Click on Install to begin the installation.
- 11) Click on Finish to finalize the installation.
- 12) Remove the CD and keep it in a safe place. You will need it again if you ever need to reinstall PageGate, or want to install the Additional PageGate Administrator, Additional PageGate Monitor, or GUI Client on a workstation.

1.2.2.3.2.2 Installation by Download

Installation by Download

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Any part of PageGate can be installed unattended. This helps network administrators to automate the program's installation.

- 1) Start the PageGate setup program as usual (see above).
- 2) When the list of installation options screen is shown, exit the installation.
- 3) Browse in to the c:\Users\<your_user>\AppData\Local\Temp\ directory.
- 4) Copy the 'PGSetup' folder to another location.
- 5) Use the following command line syntax to run a promptless install.

pgssetup.exe - PageGate Server installer (includes PG Admin and PG Monitor)
pgcsetup.exe - PageGate Client installer (for workstations)
pgasetup.exe - PageGate Admin installer (for workstations)
pgmsetup.exe - PageGate Monitor installer (for workstations)

Command line options:

/silent	Installs without prompts. Does display progress screens, will prompt for reboot if necessary.
/verysilent	Installs without prompts, display screens and will reboot without prompting, if necessary.
/norestart	This flag prevents the installation from rebooting, even if necessary.
/dir="x:\dirname"	This flag overrides the default installation directory.
/group="folder name"	This flag overrides the default Windows Start Menu group name.
/noicons	This flag will prevent the installation from creating the desktop icons for the program.

The <path> option should be replace with the path to where you copied the 'PGSetup' folder in step #2 above.

Here is an example of a promptless install of the PageGate server if the PGSetup folder was copied to C:\

```
C:\PGSetup\pgssetup.exe /silent /dir="c:\PageGate"
```

That command line would install the PageGate server to c:\PageGate\ without prompting for information, would display the progress screens and would prompt to reboot the system if necessary.

1.2.2.3.2.3 Promptless Automatic Installation

Promptless Automatic Installation

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Any part of PageGate can be installed unattended. This helps network administrators to automate the program's installation.

- 1) Start the PageGate setup program as usual (see above).
- 2) When the list of installation options screen is shown, exit the installation.

- 3) Browse in to the c:\Users\<your_user>\AppData\Local\Temp\ directory.
- 4) Copy the 'PGSetup' folder to another location.
- 5) Use the following command line syntax to run a promptless install.

pgssetup.exe - PageGage Server installer (includes PG Admin and PG Monitor)

pgcsetup.exe - PageGate Client installer (for workstations)

pgasetup.exe - PageGate Admin installer (for workstations)

pgmsetup.exe - PageGate Monitor installer (for workstations)

Command line options:

/silent	Installs without prompts. Does display progress screens, will prompt for reboot if necessary.
/verysilent	Installs without prompts, display screens and will reboot without prompting, if necessary.
/norestart	This flag prevents the installation from rebooting, even if necessary.
/dir="x:\dirname"	This flag overrides the default installation directory.
/group="folder name"	This flag overrides the default Windows Start Menu group name.
/noicons	This flag will prevent the installation from creating the desktop icons for the program.

The <path> option should be replace with the path to where you copied the 'PGSetup' folder in step #2 above.

Here is an example of a promptless install of the PageGate server if the PGSetup folder was copied to C:\

C:\PGSetup\pgssetup.exe /silent /dir="c:\PageGate"

That command line would install the PageGate server to c:\PageGate\ without prompting for information, would display the progress screens and would prompt to reboot the system if necessary.

Optional Registry Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Note: Folders that are set must be created and given sufficient rights before the program is run.

Client Registry Settings

Location: HKEY_CURRENT_USER\SOFTWARE\NotePage\NotePagerNet\

Name	Type	Description
LockSettings	Dword	By default settings in the Current User portion of the registry are used. If every user on the workstation should use the standardized, rather than logon specific, settings, then the Local Machine portion of the registry can be forced to be used instead by setting LockSettings to 1, which is a 'true' value.
DB_Dir	String	This value specifies the directory in which the database resides. The path specified in this field must end in a backslash, \.
DB_Password	String	If a database password has been set on the PageGate database, the password for the database can be specified here. Due to the nature of the security involved, the value is encrypted, so it must be copied from a system with the password already set.
Sender	String	This value specifies a static sender's name that this copy of the Client will use when sending messages.
Station	String	Note: Values lower than 10 are system reserved and should never be used. Clients with the same Station value will be able to reference each others' message histories and be able to run reports on the same.

1.2.2.3.2.4 Upgrading from a previous version

Upgrading from a previous version

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

To upgrade the PageGate Client from a previous version to version 7:

Make sure you **DO NOT** have the PageGate Client running. The update cannot be applied if the PG Client is running.

Go through the steps enumerated in the Installation by Single Executable section but during the installation, make sure to specify the exact same directory that the previous version of the PageGate Client was installed to.

1.2.3 Additional PG Admin

Additional PG Admin

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Do not install this on the PageGate Server. The Additional PageGate Admin is only intended for workstations.

The Additional PageGate Admin is a program that allows a workstation the capability to modify PageGate's settings, such as the ability to add, modify, or remove recipients and carriers. The workstation intended to run the Additional PageGate Admin must have network access to the PageGate Server's database.

1.2.3.1 System Requirements

System Requirements

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Minimum requirements to run the PageGate Admin:

Operating System: Windows XP, Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, Server 2003, Server 2008 32-bit and 64-bit, Server 2012.

Processor: 1.0 Ghz Processor or better.

Memory: 1GB RAM

Storage: 100 MB of free disk space (for application and database)

1.2.3.2 Pre-installation

Pre-installation

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

There are a few things that should be verified and setup before the installation of PG Admin:

- 1) Do not install this on the PageGate Server. The Additional PageGate Admin program is intended only for workstations.
- 2) Be sure your hardware meets the minimum specs for PageGate Admin.
- 3) Be sure the computer is configured for your network. The PageGate Admin must access the PageGate database through your LAN (Local Area Network).
- 4) Be sure that you have sufficient permissions (if applicable) to install new programs on the chosen computer.
- 5) In some cases, you will be asked to restart your computer after the installation of the PageGate Admin. If so, this must be done before the PageGate Admin is run. Be sure that you install the PageGate Admin at a time when this can be done.
- 6) Always be sure to have a complete backup of your system before installing any new software! The installation of the PageGate Admin is not an exception to this rule

1.2.3.3 Installing the Workstation Admin

Installing the Workstation PG Admin

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Please reference the Windows 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012 portion of the manual to install on those operating systems.

Please reference the Windows XP and Server 2003 portion of the manual to install on those operating systems.

1.2.3.3.1 Windows XP and Server 2003 Instructions

Windows XP and Server 2003

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

There are four primary ways to install the PageGate Admin:

- . Installation by CD-Rom
- . Installation by single executable

- . Promptless Automatic installation
- . Upgrading from a previous version

*** **IMPORTANT** ***

Please refer to the Windows 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012 Instructions section for steps on how to install the PageGate Server for those operating systems.

1.2.3.3.1.1 CD-Rom Installation

CD-Rom Installation

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

- 1) Insert the PageGate CD-Rom into your computer.
- 2) PageGate's setup routine will (on most computers) automatically start. If the setup program starts, go to step 3. If not, click on the Windows start button, and click 'Run' from the menu. Type in 'd:\setup' without the quotes (in this example the CD-Rom drive letter is 'd'. If your CD-Rom drive letter is different, use it instead). Then click on 'OK' button.
- 3) Click on the Install Additional PG Admin option.
- 4) Click on Next.
- 5) In the next portion of the setup, you will be given the option to view the Readme and Release Notes files. If you choose to display either file, they will be shown when you hit 'Next'.
- 6) Please read the End User License Agreement (EULA), then select "I accept the agreement" and click on Next.
- 7) Next you will be prompted for the PageGate Admin installation directory. By default, the installation directory is c:\program files (x86)\pagegate admin\. While you do not necessarily have to change the installation directory, **we strongly recommend changing the path to c:\PageGate Admin**. Once you've specified the installation path, click on Next to proceed.

- 8) In the next step, changes to the program group the PageGate Admin will appear under in the start menu can be made. Click on Next to proceed.
- 9) Select whether you want to create a Desktop Icon for the PageGate Admin and click on Next.
- 10) Click on Install to begin the installation.
- 11) Click on Finish to finalize the installation.
- 12) Remove the CD and keep it in a safe place. You will need it again if you ever need to reinstall PageGate, or want to install the Additional PageGate Administrator, Additional PageGate Monitor, or GUI Client on a workstation.

1.2.3.3.1.2 Installation by Download

Installation by Download

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

- 1) Open a web browser.
- 2) Go to our website: <http://www.notepage.net>
- 3) In the center of the page, click on the Download button under the PageGate section.
- 4) When prompted, you want to click on the Save option.
- 5) Save the pgsetup.exe file on your desktop.
- 6) After the file has been downloaded, double click on it.
- 7) When prompted, you want to click on the Install Additional PG Admin option.
- 8) Click on Next.
- 9) Select whether or not you want to view the ReadMe File and/or Release Notes, then click on Next.
Note: If this is your first time installing the PageGate Admin, please take a moment to review both.

- 10) Please read the End User License Agreement (EULA), then select "I accept the agreement" and click on Next.
- 11) In the next step, you will be prompted for the PageGate Admin installation directory. By default, the installation directory is c:\program files (x86)\pagegate admin\ . While you do not necessarily have to change the installation directory, **we strongly recommend changing the path to c:\PageGate Admin**. Once you've specified the installation path, click on Next to proceed.
- 12) In the next step, changes to the program group PageGate Admin will appear under in the start menu can be made. Click on Next to proceed.
- 13) Select whether you want to create a Desktop Icon for the PageGate Admin and click on Next.
- 14) Click on Install to begin installing the PageGate Admin.
- 15) Click on Finish to finalize the installation.
- 16) Be sure to make a copy of the installation file and store it somewhere safe. You will need it again if you ever need to reinstall PageGate, or want to install the Additional PageGate Administrator, Additional PageGate Monitor, or GUI Client on a workstation.

1.2.3.3.1.3 Promptless Automatic Installation

Promptless Automatic Installation

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Any part of PageGate can be installed unattended. This helps network administrators to automate the program's installation.

- 1) Start the PageGate setup program as usual (see above).
- 2) When the list of installation options screen is shown, exit the installation.
- 3) Browse in to the c:\Users\<your_user>\AppData\Local\Temp\ directory.

- 4) Copy the 'PGSetup' folder to another location.
- 5) Use the following command line syntax to run a promptless install.

pgssetup.exe - PageGate Server installer (includes PG Admin and PG Monitor)

pgcsetup.exe - PageGate Client installer (for workstations)

pgasetup.exe - PageGate Admin installer (for workstations)

pgmsetup.exe - PageGate Monitor installer (for workstations)

Command line options:

/silent	Installs without prompts. Does display progress screens, will prompt for reboot if necessary.
/verysilent	Installs without prompts, display screens and will reboot without prompting, if necessary.
/norestart	This flag prevents the installation from rebooting, even if necessary.
/dir="x:\dirname"	This flag overrides the default installation directory.
/group="folder name"	This flag overrides the default Windows Start Menu group name.
/noicons	This flag will prevent the installation from creating the desktop icons for the program.

The <path> option should be replace with the path to where you copied the 'PGSetup' folder in step #2 above.

Here is an example of a promptless install of the PageGate server if the PGSetup folder was copied to C:\

C:\PGSetup\pgssetup.exe /silent /dir="c:\PageGate"

That command line would install the PageGate server to c:\PageGate\ without prompting for information, would display the progress screens and would prompt to reboot the system if necessary.

Optional Registry Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Note: Folders that are set must be created and given sufficient rights before the program is run.

Location: HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\NotePage\PageGate\

Name	Type	Description
Prog_Dir	String	This value specifies the directory in which the program was resides. The path specified in this field must end in a backslash, \.
DB_Dir	String	This value specifies the directory in which the database resides. The path specified in this field must end in a backslash, \.
Log_Dir	String	This value specifies the directory in which the logs reside. The path specified in this field must end in a backslash, \.
Archive_Dir	String	This value specifies the directory in which archived information should reside. The path specified in this field must end in a backslash, \.
DB_Password	String	If a database password has been set on the PageGate database, the password for the database can be specified here. Due to the nature of the security involved, the value is encrypted, so it must be copied from a system with the password already set.

1.2.3.3.1.4 Upgrading from a previous version

Upgrading from a previous version

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

To upgrade the PageGate Admin from a previous version to version 7:

Make sure you DO NOT have the PageGate Admin running. The update cannot be applied if the PG Admin is running.

Go through the steps enumerated in the Installation by Download section but during the installation, make sure to specify the exact same directory that the previous version of the PageGate Admin was installed to.

1.2.3.3.2 Windows Vista, 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012 Instructions

Windows Vista, 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

There are four primary ways to install the PageGate Admin:

- . Installation by CD-Rom
- . Installation by single executable
- . Promptless Automatic installation
- . Upgrading from Version 4 or 5

*** IMPORTANT ***

Please refer to the Windows XP and Server 2003 Installation section for steps on how to install the PageGate Client for those operating systems.

1.2.3.3.2.1 CD-Rom Installation

CD-Rom Installation

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

- 1) Insert the PageGate CD-Rom into your computer.
- 2) PageGate's setup routine will (on most computers) automatically start. Cancel the auto-run.
- 3) In Windows, browse to your CD Drive.
- 4) Right click on the pgasetup.exe file, left click on "Run As Administrator".
NOTE: YOU MUST DO THIS. If you try to run the installation normally, the User Accounts Control security feature of your operating system will prevent the program from functioning properly.
- 5) In the next portion of the setup, you will be given the option to view the Readme and Release Notes files. If you choose to display either file, they will be shown when you hit 'Next'.

- 6) Please read the End User License Agreement (EULA), then select "I accept the agreement" and click on Next.
- 7) Next you will be prompted for the PageGate Admin installation directory. By default, the installation directory is c:\program files (x86)\pagegate admin\. While you do not necessarily have to change the installation directory, **we strongly recommend changing the path to c:\PageGate Admin**. Once you've specified the installation path, click on Next to proceed.
- 8) In the next step, changes to the program group the PageGate Admin will appear under in the start menu can be made. Click on Next to proceed.
- 9) Select whether you want to create a Desktop Icon for the PageGate Admin and click on Next.
- 10) Click on Install to begin the installation.
- 11) Click on Finish to finalize the installation.
- 12) Remove the CD and keep it in a safe place. You will need it again if you ever need to reinstall PageGate, or want to install the Additional PageGate Administrator, Additional PageGate Monitor, or GUI Client on a workstation.

1.2.3.3.2.2 Installation by Download

Installation by Download

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

- 1) Open a web browser.
- 2) Go to our website: <http://www.notepage.net>
- 3) In the center of the page, click on the Download button under the PageGate section.
- 4) When prompted, you want to click on the Save option.
- 5) Save the pgsetup.exe file on your desktop.
- 6) After the file has been downloaded, right click on the file and select "Run As Administrator".

NOTE: YOU MUST DO THIS. If you try to run the installation normally, the User Accounts Control security feature of your operating system will prevent the program from functioning properly.

- 7) When prompted, you want to click on the Install Additional PG Admin option.
- 8) Click on Next.
- 9) Select whether or not you want to view the ReadMe File and/or Release Notes, then click on Next.
Note: If this is your first time installing the PageGate Admin, please take a moment to review both.
- 10) Please read the End User License Agreement (EULA), then select "I accept the agreement" and click on Next.
- 11) Next you will be prompted for the PageGate Admin installation directory. By default, the installation directory is c:\program files (x86)\pagegate Admin\. While you do not necessarily have to change the installation directory, **we strongly recommend changing the path to c:\PageGate Admin**. Once you've specified the installation path, click on Next to proceed.
- 12) In the next step, changes to the program group the PageGate Admin will appear under in the start menu can be made. Click on Next to proceed.
- 13) Select whether you want to create a Desktop Icon for the PageGate Admin and click on Next.
- 14) Click on Install to begin the installation.
- 15) Click on Finish to finalize the installation.
- 16) Be sure to make a copy of the installation file and store it somewhere safe. You will need it again if you ever need to reinstall PageGate, or want to install the Additional PageGate Administrator, Additional PageGate Monitor, or GUI Client on a workstation.

1.2.3.3.2.3 Promptless Automatic Installation

Prompt-less Automatic Installation

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Any part of PageGate can be installed unattended. This helps network administrators to automate the program's installation.

- 1) Start the PageGate setup program as usual (see above).
- 2) When the list of installation options screen is shown, exit the installation.
- 3) Browse in to the c:\Users\<your_user>\AppData\Local\Temp\ directory.
- 4) Copy the 'PGSetup' folder to another location.
- 5) Use the following command line syntax to run a promptless install.

pgssetup.exe - PageGage Server installer (includes PG Admin and PG Monitor)

pgcsetup.exe - PageGate Client installer (for workstations)

pgasetup.exe - PageGate Admin installer (for workstations)

pgmsetup.exe - PageGate Monitor installer (for workstations)

Command line options:

/silent	Installs without prompts. Does display progress screens, will prompt for reboot if necessary.
/verysilent	Installs without prompts, display screens and will reboot without prompting, if necessary.
/norestart	This flag prevents the installation from rebooting, even if necessary.
/dir ="x:\dirname"	This flag overrides the default installation directory.
/group="folder name"	This flag overrides the default Windows Start Menu group name.
/noicons	This flag will prevent the installation from creating the desktop icons for the program.

The <path> option should be replace with the path to where you copied the 'PGSetup'

folder in step #2 above.

Here is an example of a promptless install of the PageGate server if the PGSetup folder was copied to C:\

```
C:\PGSetup\pgssetup.exe /silent /dir="c:\PageGate"
```

That command line would install the PageGate server to c:\PageGate\ without prompting for information, would display the progress screens and would prompt to reboot the system if necessary.

Optional Registry Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Note: Folders that are set must be created and given sufficient rights before the program is run.

Location: HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\NotePage\PageGate\

Name	Type	Description
Prog_Dir	String	This value specifies the directory in which the program was resides. The path specified in this field must end in a backslash, \.
DB_Dir	String	This value specifies the directory in which the database resides. The path specified in this field must end in a backslash, \.
Log_Dir	String	This value specifies the directory in which the logs reside. The path specified in this field must end in a backslash, \.
Archive_Dir	String	This value specifies the directory in which archived information should reside. The path specified in this field must end in a backslash, \.
DB_Password	String	If a database password has been set on the PageGate database, the password for the database can be specified here. Due to the nature of the security involved, the value is encrypted, so it must be copied from a system with the password already set.

1.2.3.3.2.4 Upgrading from a previous version

Upgrading from a previous version

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

To upgrade the PageGate Admin from a previous version to version 7:

Make sure you DO NOT have the PageGate Admin running. The update cannot be applied if the PG Admin is running.

Go through the steps enumerated in the Installation by Single Executable section but during the installation, make sure to specify the exact same directory that the previous version of the PageGate Admin was installed to.

1.2.4 Additional PG Monitor

Additional PG Monitor

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Additional PageGate Monitor program is only intended for workstations. Do not install this on the PageGate Server.

The Additional PageGate Monitor is a program that allows a workstation to view what's happening in PageGate as it happens. It shows which modules are running, how many messages have been processed, how many of the processed messages are good, how many of the processed messages are bad, and also gives the detailed log of the precise transactions between PageGate, its modules and the messaging hosts PageGate contacts.

1.2.4.1 System Requirements

System Requirements

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Minimum requirements to run the PageGate Monitor:

Operating System: Windows XP, Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, Server 2003, Server 2008 32-bit and 64-bit, Server 2012.

Processor: 1.0 Ghz Processor or better.

Memory: 1GB RAM

Storage: 100 MB of free disk space (for application and database)

1.2.4.2 Pre-installation

Pre-installation

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

There are a few things that should be verified and setup before the installation of PG Monitor:

- 1) Be sure your hardware meets the minimum specs for PG Monitor
- 2) Be sure the computer that PG Monitor is to be installed on is configured for your network. The monitoring program uses TCP/IP. Although TCP/IP is not required for running PageGate, it is recommended that it be installed on the PageGate server so the monitoring program can be used.
- 3) Be sure that you have sufficient permissions (if applicable) to install new programs on the chosen computer.
- 4) In some cases, you will be asked to restart your computer after the installation of PG Monitor. If so, this must be done before PG Monitor is run. Be sure that you install PG Monitor at a time when this can be done.
- 5) ALWAYS be sure to have a complete backup of your system before installing ANY new software! The installation of PG Monitor is NOT an exception to this rule.

1.2.4.3 Installing the Workstation PG Monitor

Installing the Additional PG Monitor

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Please reference the Windows 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012 portion of the manual to install on those operating systems.

Please reference the Windows XP and Server 2003 portion of the manual to install on those operating systems.

1.2.4.3.1 Windows XP and Server 2003 Instructions

Windows XP and Server 2003

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

There are four primary ways to install the PageGate Monitor:

- . Installation by CD-Rom
- . Installation by single executable
- . Promptless Automatic installation
- . Upgrading from a previous version

***** IMPORTANT *****

Please refer to the Windows 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012 Instructions section for steps on how to install the PageGate Server for those operating systems.

1.2.4.3.1.1 CD-Rom Installation

CD-Rom Installation

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

- 1) Insert the PageGate CD-Rom into your computer.
- 2) PageGate's setup routine will (on most computers) automatically start. If the setup program starts, go to step 3. If not, click on the Windows start button, and click 'Run' from the menu. Type in 'd:\setup' without the quotes (in this example the CD-Rom drive letter is 'd'. If your CD-Rom drive letter is different, use it instead). Then click on 'OK' button.
- 3) Click on the Install Additional PG Monitor option.
- 4) Click on Next.
- 5) In the next portion of the setup, you will be given the option to view the Readme and Release Notes files. If you choose to display either file, they will be shown when you hit 'Next'.

- 6) Please read the End User License Agreement (EULA), then select "I accept the agreement" and click on Next.
- 7) Next you will be prompted for the PageGate Monitor installation directory. By default, the installation directory is c:\program files (x86)\pagegate Monitor\. While you do not necessarily have to change the installation directory, **we strongly recommend changing the path to c:\PageGate Monitor**. Once you've specified the installation path, click on Next to proceed.
- 8) In the next step, changes to the program group the PageGate Monitor will appear under in the start menu can be made. Click on Next to proceed.
- 9) Select whether you want to create a Desktop Icon for the PageGate Monitor and click on Next.
- 10) Click on Install to begin the installation.
- 11) Click on Finish to finalize the installation.
- 12) Remove the CD and keep it in a safe place. You will need it again if you ever need to reinstall PageGate, or want to install the Additional PageGate Administrator, Additional PageGate Monitor, or GUI Client on a workstation.

1.2.4.3.1.2 Installation by Download

Installation by Download

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

- 1) Open a web browser.
- 2) Go to our website: <http://www.notepage.net>
- 3) In the center of the page, click on the Download button under the PageGate section.
- 4) When prompted, you want to click on the Save option.
- 5) Save the pgsetup.exe file on your desktop.
- 6) After the file has been downloaded, double click on it.

7) When prompted, you want to click on the Install Additional PG Monitor option.

8) Click on Next.

9) Select whether or not you want to view the ReadMe File and/or Release Notes, then click on Next.

Note: If this is your first time installing the PageGate Admin, please take a moment to review both.

10) Please read the End User License Agreement (EULA), then select "I accept the agreement" and click on Next.

11) In the next step, you will be prompted for the PageGate Monitor installation directory. By default, the installation directory is c:\program files (x86)\pagegate monitor\. While you do not necessarily have to change the installation directory, **we strongly recommend changing the path to c:\PageGate Monitor**. Once you've specified the installation path, click on Next to proceed.

12) In the next step, changes to the program group PageGate Monitor will appear under in the start menu can be made. Click on Next to proceed.

13) Select whether you want to create a Desktop Icon for the PageGate Monitor and click on Next.

14) Click on Install to begin installing the PageGate Monitor.

15) Click on Finish to finalize the installation.

16) Be sure to make a copy of the installation file and store it somewhere safe. You will need it again if you ever need to reinstall PageGate, or want to install the Additional PageGate Administrator, Additional PageGate Monitor, or GUI Client on a workstation.

1.2.4.3.1.3 Promptless Automatic Installation

Promptless Automatic Installation

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Any part of PageGate can be installed unattended. This helps network administrators to

automate the program's installation.

- 1) Start the PageGate setup program as usual (see above).
- 2) When the list of installation options screen is shown, exit the installation.
- 3) Browse in to the c:\Users\<your_user>\AppData\Local\Temp\ directory.
- 4) Copy the 'PGSetup' folder to another location.
- 5) Use the following command line syntax to run a promptless install.

pgssetup.exe - PageGage Server installer (includes PG Admin and PG Monitor)

pgcsetup.exe - PageGate Client installer (for workstations)

pgasetup.exe - PageGate Admin installer (for workstations)

pgmsetup.exe - PageGate Monitor installer (for workstations)

Command line options:

/silent	Installs without prompts. Does display progress screens, will prompt for reboot if necessary.
/verysilent	Installs without prompts, display screens and will reboot without prompting, if necessary.
/norestart	This flag prevents the installation from rebooting, even if necessary.
/dir="x:\dirname"	This flag overrides the default installation directory.
/group="folder name"	This flag overrides the default Windows Start Menu group name.
/noicons	This flag will prevent the installation from creating the desktop icons for the program.

The <path> option should be replace with the path to where you copied the 'PGSetup' folder in step #2 above.

Here is an example of a promptless install of the PageGate server if the PGSetup folder was copied to C:\

C:\PGSetup\pgssetup.exe /silent /dir="c:\PageGate"

That command line would install the PageGate server to c:\PageGate\ without prompting for information, would display the progress screens and would prompt to reboot the system if necessary.

Optional Registry Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Note: Folders that are set must be created and given sufficient rights before the program is run.

Location: HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\NotePage\PageGate\

Name	Type	Description
PGM_Port	Dword, Decimal	This key specifies the port number that PageGate uses to send updates via UDP. This setting MUST match the setting used by the PageGate Server, referenced in the Logging section of the documentation. Use a value of 10101 decimal, unless the server value has been changed.

1.2.4.3.1.4 Upgrading from a previous version

Upgrading from a previous version

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

To upgrade the PageGate Monitor from a previous version to version 7:

Make sure you DO NOT have the PageGate Monitor running. The update cannot be applied if the PG Monitor is running.

Go through the steps enumerated in the Installation by Single Executable section but during the installation, make sure to specify the exact same directory that the previous version of the PageGate Monitor was installed to.

1.2.4.3.2 Windows Vista, 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012 Instructions

Windows Vista, 7, 8, Server 2008 and Server 2012

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

There are four primary ways to install the PageGate Admin:

- . Installation by CD-Rom
- . Installation by single executable
- . Promptless Automatic installation
- . Upgrading from Version 4 or 5

***** IMPORTANT *****

Please refer to the Windows XP and Server 2003 Installation section for steps on how to install the PageGate Client for those operating systems.

1.2.4.3.2.1 CD-Rom Installation

CD-Rom Installation

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

- 1) Insert the PageGate CD-Rom into your computer.
- 2) PageGate's setup routine will (on most computers) automatically start. Cancel the auto-run.
- 3) In Windows, browse to your CD Drive.
- 4) Right click on the pgmsetup.exe file, left click on "Run As Administrator".
NOTE: YOU MUST DO THIS. If you try to run the installation normally, the User Accounts Control security feature of your operating system will prevent the program from functioning properly.
- 5) In the next portion of the setup, you will be given the option to view the Readme and Release Notes files. If you choose to display either file, they will be shown when you hit 'Next'.
- 6) Please read the End User License Agreement (EULA), then select "I accept the agreement" and click on Next.
- 7) Next you will be prompted for the PageGate Monitor installation directory. By default, the installation directory is c:\program files (x86)\pagegate monitor\. While you do

not necessarily have to change the installation directory, **we strongly recommend changing the path to c:\PageGate Monitor**. Once you've specified the installation path, click on Next to proceed.

- 8) In the next step, changes to the program group the PageGate Monitor will appear under in the start menu can be made. Click on Next to proceed.
- 9) Select whether you want to create a Desktop Icon for the PageGate Monitor and click on Next.
- 10) Click on Install to begin the installation.
- 11) Click on Finish to finalize the installation.
- 12) Remove the CD and keep it in a safe place. You will need it again if you ever need to reinstall PageGate, or want to install the Additional PageGate Administrator, Additional PageGate Monitor, or GUI Client on a workstation.

1.2.4.3.2.2 Installation by Download

Installation by Download

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

- 1) Open a web browser.
- 2) Go to our website: <http://www.notepage.net>
- 3) In the center of the page, click on the Download button under the PageGate section.
- 4) When prompted, you want to click on the Save option.
- 5) Save the pgsetup.exe file on your desktop.
- 6) After the file has been downloaded, right click on the file and select "Run As Administrator".
NOTE: YOU MUST DO THIS. If you try to run the installation normally, the User Accounts Control security feature of your operating system will prevent the program from functioning properly.
- 7) When prompted, you want to click on the Install Additional PG Monitor option.

- 8) Click on Next.
- 9) Select whether or not you want to view the ReadMe File and/or Release Notes, then click on Next.
Note: If this is your first time installing the PageGate Monitor, please take a moment to review both.
- 10) Please read the End User License Agreement (EULA), then select "I accept the agreement" and click on Next.
- 11) Next you will be prompted for the PageGate Monitor installation directory. By default, the installation directory is c:\program files (x86)\pagegate Monitor\. While you do not necessarily have to change the installation directory, **we strongly recommend changing the path to c:\PageGate Monitor**. Once you've specified the installation path, click on Next to proceed.
- 12) In the next step, changes to the program group the PageGate Monitor will appear under in the start menu can be made. Click on Next to proceed.
- 13) Select whether you want to create a Desktop Icon for the PageGate Monitor and click on Next.
- 14) Click on Install to begin the installation.
- 15) Click on Finish to finalize the installation.
- 16) Be sure to make a copy of the installation file and store it somewhere safe. You will need it again if you ever need to reinstall PageGate, or want to install the Additional PageGate Administrator, Additional PageGate Monitor, or GUI Client on a workstation.

1.2.4.3.2.3 Promptless Automatic Installation

Promptless Automatic Installation

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Any part of PageGate can be installed unattended. This helps network administrators to automate the program's installation.

- 1) Start the PageGate setup program as usual (see above).
- 2) When the list of installation options screen is shown, exit the installation.
- 3) Browse in to the c:\Users\<your_user>\AppData\Local\Temp\ directory.
- 4) Copy the 'PGSetup' folder to another location.
- 5) Use the following command line syntax to run a promptless install.

pgssetup.exe - PageGate Server installer (includes PG Admin and PG Monitor)

pgcsetup.exe - PageGate Client installer (for workstations)

pgasetup.exe - PageGate Admin installer (for workstations)

pgmsetup.exe - PageGate Monitor installer (for workstations)

Command line options:

/silent	Installs without prompts. Does display progress screens, will prompt for reboot if necessary.
/verysilent	Installs without prompts, display screens and will reboot without prompting, if necessary.
/norestart	This flag prevents the installation from rebooting, even if necessary.
/dir="x:\dirname"	This flag overrides the default installation directory.
/group="folder name"	This flag overrides the default Windows Start Menu group name.
/noicons	This flag will prevent the installation from creating the desktop icons for the program.

The <path> option should be replace with the path to where you copied the 'PGSetup' folder in step #2 above.

Here is an example of a promptless install of the PageGate server if the PGSetup folder was copied to C:\

C:\PGSetup\pgssetup.exe /silent /dir="c:\PageGate"

That command line would install the PageGate server to c:\PageGate\ without prompting for information, would display the progress screens and would prompt to reboot the system if necessary.

Optional Registry Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Note: Folders that are set must be created and given sufficient rights before the program is run.

Location: HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\NotePage\PageGate\

Name	Type	Description
PGM_Port	Dword, Decimal	This key specifies the port number that PageGate uses to send updates via UDP. This setting MUST match the setting used by the PageGate Server, referenced in the Logging section of the documentation. Use a value of 10101 decimal, unless the server value has been changed.

1.2.4.3.2.4 Upgrading from a previous version

Upgrading from a previous version

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

To upgrade the PageGate Monitor from a previous version to version 7:

Make sure you DO NOT have the PageGate Monitor running. The update cannot be applied if the PG Monitor is running.

Go through the steps enumerated in the Installation by Single Executable section but during the installation, make sure to specify the exact same directory that the previous version of the PageGate Monitor was installed to.

2 Introduction

Introduction

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

PageGate is a Wireless-messaging/SMS/Paging gateway. It can accept messages from

one or more different sources, and is then able to deliver those messages to wireless devices via one or more industry standard communication methods.

2.1 Welcome to PageGate

Welcome to PageGate

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Thank you for your interest in our PageGate application.

PageGate is a sophisticated wireless messaging (paging) application. The heart of the application is a high throughput paging engine that has the ability to support multiple connectors that can send pages to pagers, SMS messages to cell phones and Email to Email addresses through a variety of protocols. PageGate supports several front-end interfaces (gateways) that can be used alone or in conjunction with each other. This allows PageGate to receive messages from many sources, and deliver the messages to wireless messaging devices (including alphanumeric pagers, numeric pagers, mobile phones, PIMs, etc.) The front-end interfaces include: PageGate GUI Client, a Windows based graphical user interface which enables an entire network to send messages from its Windows based workstations, a Commandline/Ascii interface which enables many 'off the shelf' and custom applications to send messages to PageGate, an Email gateway interface which enables email messages to be accepted and sent by PageGate, a serial port interface that enables PageGate to accept data that arrives over a serial port, a TAP incoming interface to accept data in from another application that sends via TAP, and a CGI web server interface which allows messages to be sent directly from web pages. PageGate supports several delivery protocols for sending messages: TAP/IXO, UCP, TONE, GSM, SMTP, SNPP, WCTP, FAX, Microsoft Fax Server, HTTP GET, HTTP POST, Raw Serial, Raw TCP and File. PageGate's modularity (PageGate's modules can be run on several separate machines), scalability (direct cable connection and support for multiple dialers), multiple front-end interfaces, and high-end features (group paging, scheduled pages, repeating pages, on-call groups, ad-hoc paging, failover, etc.) makes it a perfect solution for most wireless messaging needs.

For example, in a simple configuration PageGate can accept messages from a dispatcher, who manually enters messages into PageGate's Windows GUI Client application, and PageGate can then send those messages to mobile phones or pagers via the wireless providers's network.

In a more complicated example, PageGate can be simultaneously accepting hundreds of messages from multiple sources such as email, webpages, analog modems, manual dispatchers, integration with other applications, etc., while also delivering them with up to sixteen concurrent outbound communication sessions.

PageGate can be installed to run on a single non-dedicated workstation, or using its modular architecture, PageGate can actually be installed across a dozen or more computers for a truly high-performance messaging gateway system.

Inbound Messages - ways that PageGate can accept incoming messages:

- PageGate's GUI Client - A simple to use Windows program for manually dispatching messages. It has many advanced features such as preset messages and recipients, scheduling, logging, reports, etc.
- Webpage/webserver - A CGI application that allows users to dispatch messages from a webpage on your webserver
- Email - Full support for SMTP and POP3 protocols for accepting and collecting email messages
- Commandline executable - 16-bit and 32-bit applications (executables) that can be run on the commandline, or by other applications to submit messages to PageGate (this is a common integration method for 3rd party applications)
- Text files - PageGate can 'watch' one or more files and folders for new text files, that contain messages (this is a common integration method for 3rd party applications)
- TAP - Messages can be accepted via modem or direct serial connection, using the standard TAP messaging protocol
- SNPP - Messages can be accepted over the Internet using the standard SNPP messaging protocol
- Touch-Tone - A voicemodem can be used to accept messages sent from a touch-tone phone, and convert them to textual messages

- Serial (RS232) - A serial port can be monitored, and messages can be extracted from the input
- Direct database integration - New messages can be written directly to PageGate's industry standard MS Access compatible database (this is a common integration method for 3rd party applications)

Outbound Messages - ways that PageGate can deliver outbound messages:

- TAP - Telocator Alphanumeric Protocol - the standard message delivery protocol for analog modem, or direct serial communications to wireless providers
- SNPP - Simple Network Paging Protocol - a standard message delivery protocol for Internet communications to a wireless provider
- WCTP - Wireless Communications Transfer Protocol - a standard message delivery for Internet communications to a wireless provider (both HTTP and HTTPS are supported)
- SMTP - Simple Mail Transport Protocol - an email protocol used by many wireless providers
- UCP - Universal Computer Protocol - a delivery protocol for analog modem, or direct serial communications to a wireless provider
- GSM-AT - Global System for Mobile communication AT Command Set - a method used to communicate with a directly connected mobile phone or wireless modem for end-to-end wireless message delivery
- Touch-Tone - DTMF (Dual Tone Multi-Frequency) - a way to deliver touch tone messages to older numeric-only pagers and similar equipment
- Fax - Facsimile Machines - message delivery to destination Fax machines via faxmodem
- Raw-Serial - transmission of message text over a standard serial port (direct connect or via modem)
- Raw-TCP - transmission of message text to a host via a TCP/IP connection

2.2 What's New

What's New

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Here are some of the new features you will find in PageGate version 7

Supported Operating Systems

- Windows XP
- Windows Vista
- Windows 7
- Windows 8/8.1
- Server 2003
- Server 2008/R2
- Server 2012

General

- Windows Vista, Windows 7 and Server 2008 Support
- Greatly enhanced security options, including 'managers' allowed only to maintain their own group of recipients
- Database synchronization between PG servers (master/slave configuration)
- Improved logging (additional logging detail levels and log search function)
- Audit logging/tracking
- Message Archiving with 'Archive Manager' version of PG Admin for archiving old messages and accessing them
- Improved reporting (including speed improvements in some reports)

PG Server

- 2-Way Messaging with Cellular Modems
- FILE protocol allows for messages to be written as text to a folder.
- SNPP server add-on (for incoming messages)
- Touch tone receiver add-on (for incoming messages)
- Fax delivery capability
- Raw Serial and Raw TCP delivery protocols
- HTTPS support for WCTP delivery
- Message templates, which allow customized formatting of message text
- Pin length can be automatically limited by carrier (important for carriers who use different length pin numbers for different protocols)
- Failure/Success notifications can be sent to groups of email recipients
- User's PG login name, Windows login name, and machine name tracked for each message

PG GUI Client

- Pre-programmable buttons can also be programmed to automatically select

recipients and groups

- When recipients are selected, a list of predefined messages can be displayed for selection (preset prompting)
- Clients can be locked into only seeing a predefined set of recipients and groups (display groups)
- Message length in message entry box can be limited
- A failure warning can be set to popup on failed messages, even if the PG Client is minimized
- Send confirmation option added
- Can now requeue messages from the history screen
- New hot-keys added
- New improved security options (individual logins for a users & use of Windows login credentials)
- Can view all groups a recipient belongs to
- Macro variables to allow a recipient's carrier, pin, and manager on its info screen
- Reporting improvements

PG Monitor

- Can be integrated with a stand-alone copy of NotePager Pro to send wireless alerts of the PageGate Server's health
- Decreased network overhead

2.3 Features & Capabilities

Features & Capabilities

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Here is a summary of some of PageGate's capabilities

Inbound Message Support

- Windows Client Application
- Webpage/Webserver
- Email (SMTP, POP3)
- Commandline Executable (16-bit and 32-bit)
- Text File (watched files/folders)
- TAP (via modem or direct connect)
- SNPP (multi-threaded SNPP server)

- Touch-Tone (via voicemodem)
- Serial (RS232 serial port monitoring)
- Database (MS Access compatible)

Outbound Message Support

- TAP (via modem or direct connect)
- SNPP (via Internet)
- WCTP (HTTP and HTTPS via Internet)
- SMTP (email via Internet)
- UCP (via modem or direct connect)
- GSM-AT (via mobile phone or wireless modem)
- Touch-Tone (via voicemodem)
- Fax (via faxmodem)
- FaxSrv (Faxing via Microsoft Fax Server)
- Raw-Serial (via modem or direct connect)
- Raw-TCP (over LAN, WAN, or Internet)
- HTTPGET and HTTPPOST for CGI executable
- File (outputting messages as text files to a directory)

Connectivity (up to 16 simultaneous outbound delivery sessions)

- Direct (hard-wired) serial RS232 connection
- Analog Modem
- Voicemodem
- Faxmodem
- LAN/WAN
- Internet (via DSL, Cable, T1, Fiber, Satellite, etc.)
- Wireless (mobile phone, cellular modem)

General

- Intelligent queuing/grouping/sessions/thresholds on all connectors for outbound message delivery
- Real-time system monitoring and logging
- On-call groups
- Message scheduling
- Message holding
- Recipient groups
- Display groups
- Multiple failover levels

- Automatic/Intelligent message splitting
- Reporting
- Centralized administration
- Security
- Audit logs
- Multiple server database synchronization
- Message archiving
- Delivery/Failure notifications
- Message templates

2.3.1 General

General

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Multiple recipients - allows a single message to be sent to more than one recipient and/or group.

Recipient Groups - messages can be sent to predefined groups of recipients.

Display Groups - dispatchers using the PageGate GUI Client program can be configured to only see a subset of recipients and groups

On-call groups - a schedule can be setup for the recipients in a group, allowing PageGate to send messages to only the recipients scheduled to receive messages at that point in time.

Multiple delivery methods - PageGate can be connected to the internet through a modem, and a paging terminal by a direct cable connection.

Message splitting - long messages can be intelligently split into multiple smaller messages.

Settable character limits - the maximum number of characters to be sent in a message is settable by carrier and individual recipient

Modular / Scalable - PageGate's front-end Interfaces allows the program to be used with network computers, email, websites and 3rd party applications.

Protocols - for message delivery PageGate supports the protocols: SNPP, SMTP, WCTP, HTTPS, TAP, FAX, GSM, UCP and TONE.

Requeue messages - missed messages can be requeued for re-transmission to the wireless carrier.

High output - PageGate's intelligent queuing of messages and multiple Connectors allows for the delivery of a large number of messages.

Failover - undeliverable text messages can be automatically sent to an alternative carrier, recipient, group and connection.

Intelligent message queuing - messages for the same carrier are grouped together and sent during a single communication session.

Maximum Characters - set the number of characters for each recipient and carrier. When sending a larger amount of characters the messages will be sequentially numbered.

Reliabase - will number a message and a recipient can tell if a sequentially numbered message is missed.

Hold Messages - for recipients and groups to be sent at a later time.

Reports - on recipient, date/time and message can be previewed, saved and printed for all messages sent and received.

Logs - to help monitor the activity of all of PageGate modules and functions.

Real-time Monitoring - with the PageGate Monitor module of all PageGate's modules and functions from the paging server, or any workstation connected via TCP/IP.

2.3.2 GUI Interface/GUI Client

GUI Interface/GUI Client

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Local and network recipient lists - on each workstation you can choose recipients

from the network recipient list, or from a smaller local recipient list that can be defined for each workstation.

Scheduled messages - messages can be scheduled to be sent at a future date/time.

Repeating messages - messages can be scheduled to repeat at predefined interval.

Multiple recipients - allows a single message to be sent to more than one recipient and/or group.

Pre-programmed messages - on each workstation, up to 100 pre-programmed messages can be defined.

Real-time message status log - each workstation can track the progress of each message from start to finish.

Real-time message status counters - displays current number of messages pending, sent, or failed from each workstation.

Message character counter - displays the length of the current message.

Message history log - displays a history of all messages sent from the workstation.

Point and click operation - an intuitive user interface makes the PageGate Client very easy to use.

Spell check - a spell check option is available on systems running MS Word.

Recipient cueing - Recipients may be selected by typing the first few letters of their name.

Restricted recipient lists - PageGate Client users can be restricted to only be able to use a local recipient list.

Reporting - Print or preview reports for messages that are pending or already sent.

2.3.3 Web Interface/GetWeb

Web Interface/GetWeb

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Automatic Web Page Generation - web pages can be created automatically by using template files

Custom Web Page Support - messages can be sent from within custom web pages

Flexible Web Server Support - PageGate can be used with any windows based web server

Ad-Hoc recipients - messages can be sent by using PIN numbers (recipients don't need to be setup inside PageGate). Only available with 5000 user license or greater

Multi-Page recipients - multiple recipients can be specified within a single message

Drop-Down List Support - web pages with drop down lists of recipients is supported, and is automatically updated

Recipient Verification - users are notified immediately if a message is sent to an invalid recipient

2.3.4 Command Line/GetAscii

Command Line/GetAscii

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

DOS Commandline - messages can be sent from a DOS prompt.

Windows Commandline - messages can be sent from a Windows command line.

Polling - a directory can be polled for Ascii text files containing message information.

Advanced Polling - message recipients can be defined by text file names or locations. Multiple files/folders can be scanned for message information

Multiple file type support - Additions to files can be detected, changes in files can be detected, message information can be parsed out of most file formats.

Ad-Hoc recipients - messages can be sent by using PIN numbers (recipients don't need to be setup inside PageGate). Only available with 5000 user license or greater.

Multi-Page recipients - multiple recipients can be specified within a single message.

Message Tracking - messages sent via this interface can be tracked via status directories.

3rd party application support - messages can be sent from any application that can issue a command line command (shell command) or create an Ascii text file.

Custom Application Support - this is a popular interface for developers who want an easy way to add paging to their application.

2.3.5 Email Interface/GetMail

Email Interface/GetMail

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Email Server - PageGate's email interface is a full email server. Along with its ability to send and receive email for paging, the server can act as a regular SMTP/POP mail server for company email.

Forwarding - each recipient can have their messages forwarded to an additional email account.

Ad-Hoc recipients - messages can be sent by using PIN numbers (recipients don't need to be setup inside PageGate). Only available with 5000 user license or greater.

Multi-Page recipients - multiple recipients can be specified within a single email message.

Email Outcome - the success or failure of messages sent can be automatically returned to the sender via email.

Numeric Email Notification - numeric pagers can receive notification of the arrival of email messages.

Full Module Integration - integrates with all other PageGate modules for

forwarding of messages received via any other Interface.

Filtering - PageGate can be setup to only send messages that are received from specific email addresses or domains. PageGate can also be setup to block messages that come from specific email addresses or domains.

2.3.6 Serial Interface/GetSerial

Serial Interface/GetSerial

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Serial Interface - PageGate's serial port interface accepts data in over a serial port and extracts messages from it.

Direct support - the serial interface can support a direct serial cable connection to the computer's COM port.

Modem support - the serial interface can support a modem connected to the serial port.

Message data - the recipient, sender and message can be extracted from the received data, or each can be hard coded.

Communications - the serial interface supports a whole range of communication speeds, protocols, and flow control options.

Lookup Tables - lookup tables can be used to automatically substitute text data in the place of codes received over the serial connection.

2.3.7 TAP-In Interface/GetTAP

TAP-In Interface/GetTAP

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Tap Interface - PageGate can accept incoming messages via modem or direct serial connection, via the industry standard TAP protocol.

Routing - incoming messages can be re-routed to different recipients or groups.

Logging - standalone applications (like NotePager Pro) can send messages through

PageGate to enable message logging and tracking in a central location.

Centralization - standalone applications (like NotePager Pro) can be setup to use PageGate as its only carrier. Messages will be sent through PageGate and delivered to any number of actual carriers and delivery methods.

2.3.8 SNPP Server Add-on

SNPP Server Add-on

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

SNPP-IN or GetSNPP - enables PageGate to receive incoming data using the SNPP protocol.

Multi-threaded server - capable of many simultaneous inbound connections.

Number Range File - for configuring the server's options and to set ranges of acceptable pager or cell phone numbers.

Bad numbers - can be rejected or silently dropped (your choice).

Non Binding - SNPP-In does not bind itself to one IP address / NIC.

Port 444 - monitors all port 444 traffic on the machine.

TAP - most commonly used protocol with a connection to a paging terminal.

Ad-Hoc Recipients - messages can be sent by using the pager or cell phone numbers. Recipients do not need to be setup in PageGate. Only available with the PageGate 5000 Pager License or greater.

Commandline/Ascii Interface - all SNPP message acceptance / rejection is configured using a text file.

2.3.9 Touch-Tone Receiver Add-on

Touch-Tone Receiver Add-on

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Touch-Tone Interface or GetTouchTone - enables users to initiate text messages remotely from any touch-tone phone.

Preset - recipients and messages ahead of time.

Voice Modem - required.

2.4 Purchasing & Pricing

Purchasing & Pricing

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

For information on pricing for PageGate, please call our Sales Department at 781-829-0500 xt 2. Alternatively, you can email us at sales@notepage.com or visit our website, <http://www.notepage.net>

2.4.1 Purchase

Purchase

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Order PageGate software

1. Online (with credit cards: MasterCard, Visa, American Express and Discover) at www.notepage.net/purchase

2. Fax credit card details (i.e. number, expired date, security code, name and billing address) and order information to NotePage, Inc. at 781-829-0419.

3. Purchase order, signed and dated, on official letterhead can be faxed to NotePage, Inc. at 781-829-0419. We are unfortunately unable to accept purchase orders from outside of the USA. Obtain W-9 at www.notepage.net/purchase-orders

For a quote, please contact NotePage Sales at 781-829-0500 or sales@notepage.com

4. Check and money order (in US Dollars, drawn from a US bank) payable to:
NotePage, Inc.
P.O. Box 296
Hanover, MA 02339
USA

5. For a wire transfer, please contact NotePage Sales at sales@notepage.com

6. NotePage Reseller listed at www.notepage.net/reseller

For more NotePage Resellers, please contact NotePage Sales Department at 781-829-0500 or sales@notepage.com

Please include the following order information:

1. PageGate Pager License quantity.
2. Interface(s) & optional Additional Connectors.
3. Mailing address and attention to for the CD.
4. Contact name, email and telephone number.
5. Email address for Registration Key delivery.
6. Software registration information includes these fields:

Name/Department:

Company Name:

Address1:

Address2:

City:

State/Province:

Zip Code/Postal Code:

Country:

A PageGate electronic Registration Key will be emailed within 24 hours of ordering. A PageGate CD will be sent by regular mail.

2.4.2 Upgrade

Upgrade

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Upgrade PageGate software

1. Online (with credit cards: MasterCard, Visa, American Express and Discover) at www.notepage.net/upgrades

2. Fax credit card details (i.e. number, expired date, security code, name and billing address) and order information to NotePage, Inc. at 781-829-0419.

3. Purchase order, signed and dated, on official letterhead can be faxed to NotePage, Inc. at 781-829-0419. We are unfortunately unable to accept purchase orders from outside of the USA. Obtain W-9 at www.notepage.net/purchase-orders

For a quote, please contact NotePage Sales at 781-829-0500 or sales@notepage.com

4. Check and money order (in US Dollars, drawn from a US bank) payable to:
NotePage, Inc.
P.O. Box 296
Hanover, MA 02339
USA

5. For a wire transfer, please contact NotePage Sales at sales@notepage.com

6. For a NotePage Reseller in your area, please contact NotePage Sales.

Please include the following upgrade information:

1. PageGate Serial Number (PageGate Admin module under Registration).
2. PageGate existing version to current version and PageGate CD (optional).
3. PageGate Pager License: existing quantity to new quantity.
4. Interfaces: GUI, Web, Email, Commandline/Ascii, Serial, TAP-In, Touch-Tone, SNPP-In.
5. Additional Connectors.
6. Contact name, email and telephone number.
7. Mailing address and 'attention to' for the optional PageGate CD.
8. Email address for Registration Key delivery.

An upgraded PageGate electronic Registration Key is emailed within 24 hours of ordering. The optional PageGate CD, if ordered, is sent by regular mail. The optional PageGate CD is only relevant when upgrading the PageGate version.

2.4.3 Reseller & Affiliate

Reseller & Affiliate

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

NotePage's Reseller, Affiliate and Integration Programs

When reselling NotePage software to your customers use NotePage's Reseller program. There are no costs to join.

When reselling NotePage software to your customers do not order online.

NotePage's Affiliate program provides a NotePage graphic or banner link for your website. When your customers click through to our website, and purchase NotePage software you earn a sales commission.

NotePage's Integration Partnership program promotes on NotePage's websites the integration of your program with NotePage software.

For NotePage's Reseller, Affiliate and Integration Partnership programs please contact NotePage, Inc. at 781-829-0500 or sales@notepage.com

More information at www.notepage.net/reseller-options

2.4.4 Pricing

Pricing

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

PageGate software is licensed and priced per pager, cell/mobile phone, fax number, email address or wireless device that messages are being sent to.

PageGate's Interfaces are priced separately.

PageGate includes 1 Connector. Additional Connectors are a separate one-time charge.

There are no charges for messages sent from PageGate software. There are no monthly or yearly fees for PageGate.

Pricing for PageGate software at www.notepage.net/pricing

2.5 Contact Information

Contact Information

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

NotePage, Inc.
PO Box 296
Hanover, MA 02339
USA

NotePage, Inc.
291 Rockland Street
Suite 13
Hanover, MA 02339
USA

Sales: sales@notepage.net

Support: support@notepage.net

Phone Number: 781-829-0500

Fax Number: 781-829-0419

Websites: www.notepage.net and www.notepage.com

2.6 Version Information

Version Information

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

PageGate Help File for PageGate version 7.0

Copyright 1997-2014 NotePage, Inc.

2.7 End User License Agreement (EULA)

End User License Agreement (EULA)

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

END-USER LICENSE AGREEMENT FOR PageGate

IMPORTANT PLEASE READ THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS
LICENSE AGREEMENT CAREFULLY BEFORE CONTINUING WITH THIS
PROGRAM INSTALL:

NotePage, Inc.'s End-User License Agreement ("EULA") is a legal agreement

between you (either an individual or a single entity) and NotePage, Inc. for the NotePage software product(s) identified above which may include associated software components, media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE PRODUCT"). By installing, copying, or otherwise using the SOFTWARE PRODUCT, you agree to be bound by the terms of this EULA. This license agreement represents the entire agreement concerning the program between you and NotePage, Inc., (referred to as "licensor"), and it supersedes any prior proposal, representation, or understanding between the parties. If you do not agree to the terms of this EULA, do not install or use the SOFTWARE PRODUCT.

The SOFTWARE PRODUCT is protected by copyright laws and international copyright treaties, as well as other intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE PRODUCT is licensed, not sold.

1. GRANT OF LICENSE. The SOFTWARE PRODUCT is licensed as follows:

- (a) Installation and Use. NotePage, Inc. grants you the right to install and use copies of the SOFTWARE PRODUCT on your computer running a validly licensed copy of the operating system for which the SOFTWARE PRODUCT was designed [e.g., Windows 95®, Windows NT®, Windows 98®, Windows 2000 ®].
- (b) Backup Copies. You may also make copies of the SOFTWARE PRODUCT as may be necessary for backup and archival purposes.

2. DESCRIPTION OF OTHER RIGHTS AND LIMITATIONS.

- (a) Maintenance of Copyright Notices. You must not remove or alter any copyright notices on any and all copies of the SOFTWARE PRODUCT.
- (b) Distribution. You may not distribute registered copies of the SOFTWARE PRODUCT to third parties. Evaluation versions available for download from NotePage, Inc.'s websites may be freely distributed.
- (c) Prohibition on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation, and Disassembly. You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble the SOFTWARE PRODUCT, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- (d) Rental. You may not rent, lease, or lend the SOFTWARE PRODUCT.
- (e) Support Services. NotePage, Inc. may provide you with support services related to the SOFTWARE PRODUCT ("Support Services"). Any supplemental software code provided to you as part of the Support Services shall be

considered part of the SOFTWARE PRODUCT and subject to the terms and conditions of this EULA.

(f) Compliance with Applicable Laws. You must comply with all applicable laws regarding use of the SOFTWARE PRODUCT.

3. TERMINATION

Without prejudice to any other rights, NotePage may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA. In such event, you must destroy all copies of the SOFTWARE PRODUCT in your possession.

4. COPYRIGHT

All title, including but not limited to copyrights, in and to the SOFTWARE PRODUCT and any copies thereof are owned by NotePage, Inc. or its suppliers. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE PRODUCT is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content. All rights not expressly granted are reserved by NotePage.

5. NO WARRANTIES

NotePage, Inc. expressly disclaims any warranty for the SOFTWARE PRODUCT. The SOFTWARE PRODUCT is provided "As Is" without any express or implied warranty of any kind, including but not limited to any warranties of merchantability, noninfringement, or fitness of a particular purpose. NotePage does not warrant or assume responsibility for the accuracy or completeness of any information, text, graphics, links or other items contained within the SOFTWARE PRODUCT. NotePage makes no warranties respecting any harm that may be caused by the transmission of a computer virus, worm, time bomb, logic bomb, or other such computer program. NotePage further expressly disclaims any warranty or representation to Authorized Users or to any third party.

6. LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

In no event shall NotePage, Inc. be liable for any damages (including, without limitation, lost profits, business interruption, or lost information) rising out of 'Authorized Users' use of or inability to use the SOFTWARE PRODUCT, even

if NotePage, Inc. has been advised of the possibility of such damages. In no event will NotePage be liable for loss of data or for indirect, special, incidental, consequential (including lost profit), or other damages based in contract, tort or otherwise. NotePage, Inc. shall have no liability with respect to the content of the SOFTWARE PRODUCT or any part thereof, including but not limited to errors or omissions contained therein, libel, infringements of rights of publicity, privacy, trademark rights, business interruption, personal injury, loss of privacy, moral rights or the disclosure of confidential information.

2.8 Shareware & Evaluation Information

Shareware & Evaluation Information

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

PageGate software defaults into a shareware or evaluation mode until purchased and registered. Enter the provided registration information in the PageGate Admin module's Registration screen.

The shareware version of PageGate allows for two active recipients at any given time, and the PageGate Server and PageGate will need to be restarted every 3-5 days.

If a less restrictive evaluation would be useful to fully test PageGate, please contact NotePage Sales to discuss the availability of a thirty-day temporary evaluation key.

Shareware is based on the concept "try it before you buy it". This software is not free. Using an unregistered copy of NotePage, Inc.'s software outside the trial period is considered software piracy and is illegal. The registration fee allows us to continue developing quality products, notify you of updates, and provide technical support. PageGate can be tried and tested for an unconditional trial.

If you like PageGate software, and want a complete registered version please contact: sales@notepage.com

If there are any questions, please contact sales@notepage.com

3 PageGate Admin

PageGate Admin

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The PageGate Administrator (PG Admin) is used for configuring and controlling all aspects of the PageGate Server.

PG Admin can be run from the paging server computer, or it can be setup and run on an administrator's workstation.

PG Admin takes an object-oriented approach to administering the server; most of its functions and settings can be accessed by manipulating the objects in its object-tree. Many of the functions of PG Admin are only accessible by right-clicking on these objects.

3.1 Overview

Overview

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The PageGate Administrator (PG Admin) is used for configuring and controlling all aspects of the PageGate Server.

PG Admin can be run from the paging server computer, or it can be setup and run on an administrator's workstation.

PG Admin takes an object-oriented approach to administering the server; most of its functions and settings can be accessed by manipulating the objects in its object-tree. Many of the functions of PG Admin are only accessible by right-clicking on these objects.

3.2 Starting and Stopping the Admin

Starting and Stopping the Admin

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

To run the PageGate Admin on a **Windows Vista, 7, 8, Server 2008 or Server 2012** system:

- 1) Go to Start - All Programs - PageGate.

- 2) Right click on the shortcut for the PageGate Admin.
- 3) Left click on the "Run As Administrator" option.
- 4) If you're prompted by the User Accounts Control, authorize the program to run.

To run the PageGate Admin on a **Windows XP or Server 2003** system:

- 1) In Windows, go to Start - All Programs - PageGate.
- 2) Click on the shortcut for the PageGate Admin.

Alternatively, if the PageGate Server is running, there should be a pager icon in the Windows system tray (bottom right corner of the screen, next to the clock). Click on the pager icon and you will see a popup menu. Choose 'PG Admin' from the menu.

3.3 Using the PageGate Admin

Using the PageGate Admin

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The PageGate Admin uses an object-oriented interface and is split into the two sections seen below:



The left section shown above is the tree-style view of PageGate's modules and functions. The right half gives details about the module or function you are currently working within. Much of the PageGate Admin's functionality can be accessed by using the right clicking on one of PageGate's objects.

3.3.1 Program

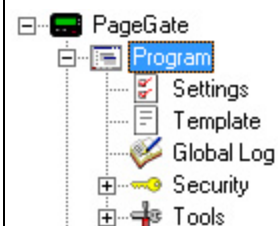
Program

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Program subsection of the PageGate Admin is found beneath the PageGate object (shown right) and contains settings and information that relate to the global operations of the PageGate Server.

By clicking on the + next to Program, it will expand Program's sub-sections:

- Settings
- Global Log
- Template



- Security
- Tools

If you right click on the word Program (shown right), you'll receive the following options:

Start Server	Starts the PageGate server, if it's stopped.
Stop Server	Stops the PageGate server, if it's started.
Start Monitor	Runs the PageGate Monitor application.
Exit	Closes the PageGate Admin.

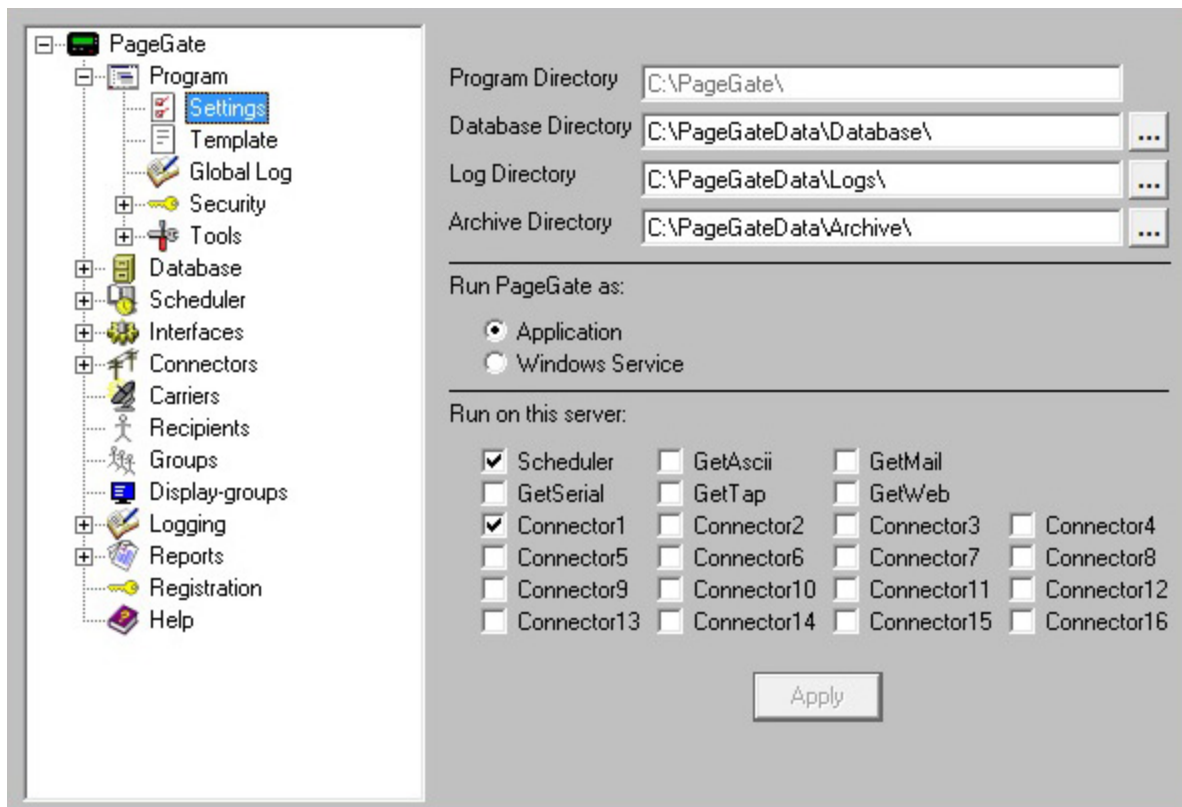
A screenshot of the PageGate Admin application interface. On the left, a tree view shows a hierarchy of folders: Program, Data, Schedules, Interfaces, Connections, Carriers, Recipients, and Groups. The 'Program' folder is selected and highlighted in blue. A right-click context menu is open over the 'Program' folder, displaying four options: 'Start Server', 'Stop Server', 'Start Monitor', and 'Exit'. The background of the application window is light gray.

3.3.1.1 Program Settings

Program Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

In the Program - Settings section of the Admin, you can modify the base options and functions of the PageGate Server.



Setting	Function
Program Directory	The Program Directory MUST point to the directory where the PageGate Admin is installed and cannot be modified after the installation.
Database Directory	This is the directory where PageGate stores its database. The database contains ALL pertinent information for the PageGate Server and must be available on the network for the GUI Client and Additional Admin.
Log Directory	This is the directory where PageGate stores the record of transactions for all modules. All of the program and security logs are written to this directory.
Archive Directory	When the option for PageGate to archive log files is enabled, all of the archived files will be stored in this directory.
Run PageGate As	This sets how the PageGate Server runs. By default, the PageGate Server runs as an Application. We do, however, recommend running PageGate as a Windows Service once you have the program configured. See the Run Styles section for more information.

Run on this server	This section allows you to choose which Interfaces are to be run by the PageGate Server. Please see the Interfaces section for more information on each of PageGate's modules.
--------------------	--

3.3.1.1.1 Run Styles

Run Styles

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

PageGate can be configured to run in two different styles: Application and Windows Service.

Application

This style will run on any version of Windows. PageGate is started and stopped just like any other program and can be automatically run at startup by putting a shortcut to it in the Windows "Startup" group. The disadvantage to this run style, is that if the computer is configured to show a login screen at startup, PageGate cannot automatically start until someone logs onto the computer.

Windows Service

This option will run PageGate as a true Windows system service. Like other services, PageGate will start even if the computer is just sitting at the Windows login screen. To switch PageGate's run style to a Windows Service, please follow the steps in this video tutorial: <http://www.notepage.net/videos/pagegate-run-styles.htm>

Here are a few important notes regarding running PageGate as a Windows System service:

- 1) When switching the run style to a Service, you will be prompted for a user account and password for PageGate to use. You can leave both these fields blank to use the local computer's System Account (as long as PageGate's doesn't need to open files on another computer).
- 2) If you do need to supply a username and password when switching run styles, choose an account that has the 'Log on as a service' and 'Administrator' rights. The Windows administrator accounts do NOT have the 'Log on as a service' right by default. You must add this right manually to the user account you intend to use.
- 3) If you change the password on the account PageGate has been set to use, you must update it for each of PageGate's services. You can use the 'Services' utility from the

Windows control panel to do this, or you can switch PageGate to run as an Application and then back to run as a NT service, so you will be re-prompted for the account information.

- 4) The account you choose to use with the PageGate service must have sufficient rights to access all directories setup in PageGate for its various functions (i.e. program files, database directory, log files, interface directories, etc).
- 5) Like many services, PageGate may not be completely started before you log in and get the Windows desktop. Be patient. On computers that load several services, it can take several minutes for all the services to start.
- 6) In the Windows 'Services' utility (found in the control panel), you will see several PageGate services installed. ONLY the one labeled 'PageGate' is set for automatic startup. This is by design and should not be changed.
- 7) Starting or stopping PageGate when it is running as a service can take several minutes, especially if it is in the middle of transmitting messages to a carrier. Please be patient.
- 8) You can easily start or stop PageGate's services by clicking on the pager icon in the system tray, and choosing 'Start' or 'Stop' from the menu.
- 9) If you are running PageGate's modules across more than one computer, each computer will run the 'PageGate' service along with the specific module(s) setup to run on that computer. In other words, there should only be a single instance of any module running, with the exception of the 'PageGate' service (which will be running on every computer).

Follow these instructions to give an existing account 'Log on as a service' rights:

- 1) Go in to the Control Panel in Windows.
- 2) In the Control Panel, open the Administrative Tools.
- 3) In the Administrative Tools, open the Local Security Settings.
- 4) Go to Local Policies - User Rights Assignment.

- 5) Find the "Log on as a service" option.
- 6) Right click "Log on as a service" and left click on Properties.
- 7) Left click on "Add User or Group".
- 8) Type the user account PageGate will be using.
- 9) Left click on Check Names.
- 10) Left click on OK.
- 11) Reboot the computer.

3.3.1.2 Template

Program Template

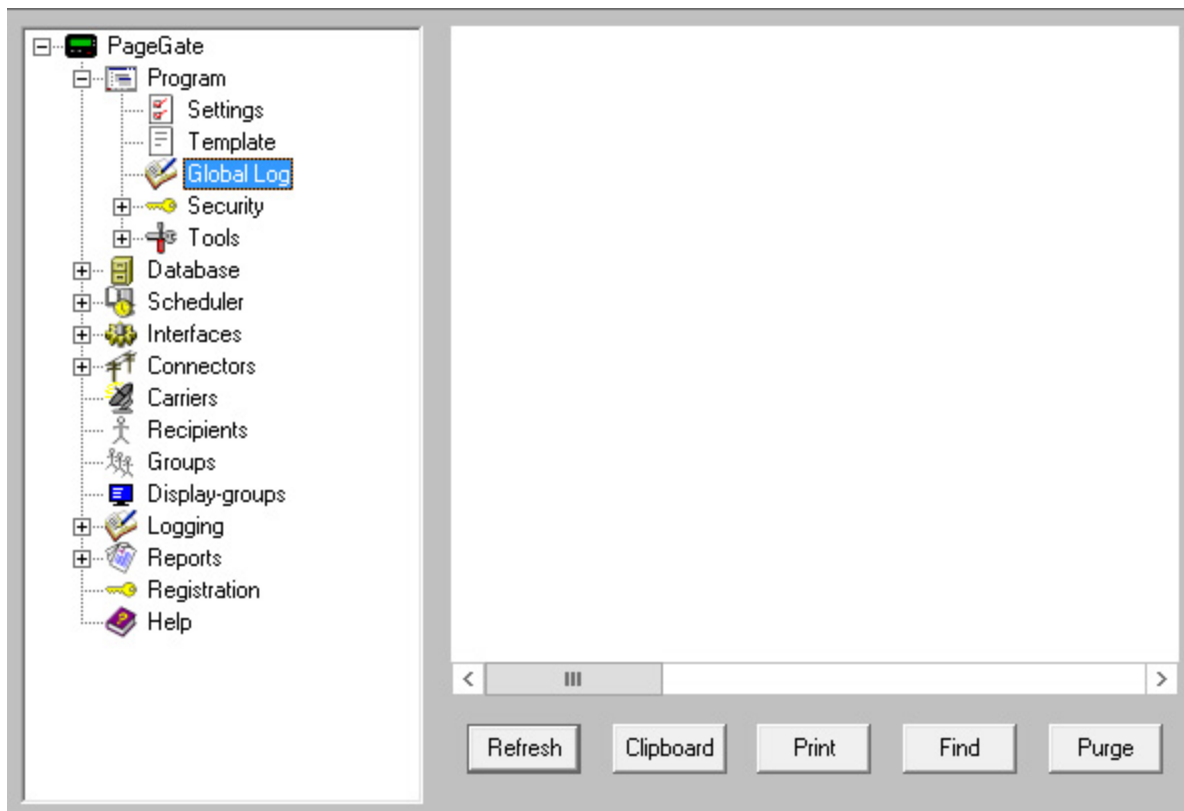
[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Please see the Templates portion of the manual.

3.3.1.3 Global Log

Global Log

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



If logging is enabled, this log shows a summary of the events generated by PageGate, including all messages scheduled and sent. The Global Log section of the Admin had five buttons:

- | | |
|-----------|--|
| Refresh | Displays the most current entries in the global log. |
| Print | Sends a copy of everything listed in the Global Log to a printer. |
| Find | Allows you to search for a variable (such as a carrier or recipient name). |
| Purge | Deletes the entirety of the Global Log. |
| Clipboard | Copies the contents of the Global Log to the Windows Clipboard, allowing it to be pasted into another application. |

3.3.1.4 Security

Security

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The security portion of the PageGate Admin will allow you to restrict access to the PageGate Admin and GUI Client. The two subsections of Security are: Settings and Users.

The Security Settings will allow you to enable or disable security restrictions to the Admin or GUI Client.

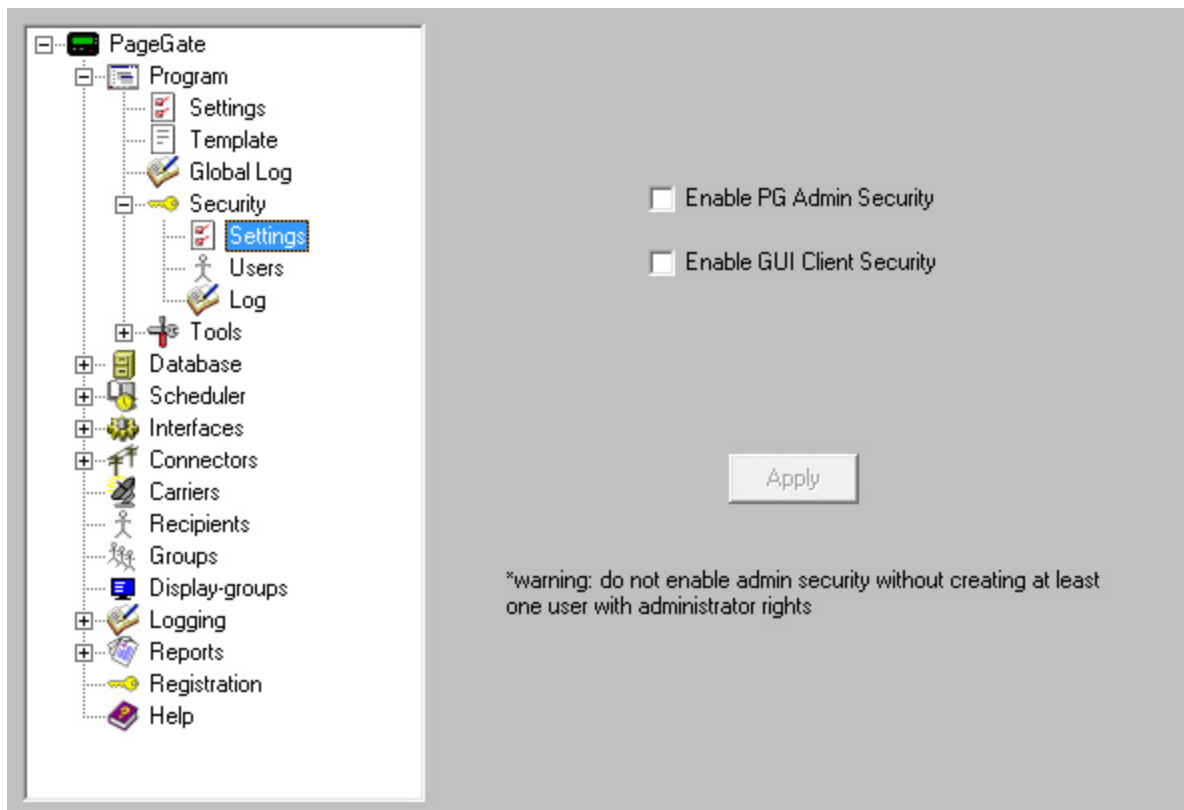
The Users will allow you to create and manage the list of users who have access to the programs and what level of control they have.

The Log shows which user has performed which action at any given date and time. It records each instance of security permissions being used.

3.3.1.4.1 Settings

Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



Within the Security - Settings section of the Admin, you have two options:

Enable PG
Admin Security

Resistricts access to the PG Admin to ONLY those users given rights in the Users section. If this option is not enabled, all users will be able to access all functions of the PG Admin.

Enable GUI
Client Security

Resistricts access to the GUI Client to ONLY those users given rights in the Users section. If this option is not enabled, all users will be able to access all functions of the GUI Client.

3.3.1.4.2 Users

Users

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The users portion of the Security Settings allows you to create and maintain a list of users that have permission to access certain portions of either the PageGate Admin or the GUI Client.

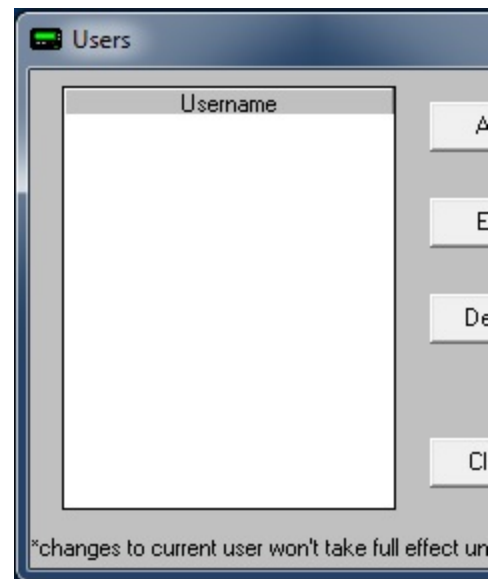
Specific permissions can be granted to each user and is discussed in greater detail below.

Shown right, the four functions of the Users section are Add, Edit, Delete, and Close.

Clicking on Add will allow you to create a user.

Highlighting an existing user and clicking on Edit will allow you to modify the password or specific permissions granted to a user.

Highlighting an existing user and clicking on Delete will remove that user from the Security list.



3.3.1.4.3 Adding a Security User

Adding a Security User

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

New User

Username

☐ Use Windows Login Credentials

Password

Alias

Display-group

Sender

Station

Presets File

Rights

- ☐ Administrator
- ☐ Interfaces
- ☐ Connectors
- ☐ Carriers
- ☐ All Recipients
- ☐ Own Recipients
- ☐ All Groups
- ☐ Own Groups
- ☐ All Display-groups
- ☐ Own Display-groups
- ☐ Reports
- ☐ Client Administrator
- ☐ Client

Cancel Apply

When creating a user to have security rights, there are several settings that need to be considered:

Username	This field is where you assign a unique login name to a user. When a user attempts to access a security enabled PG Admin or GUI Client, they will be prompted for this username.
Use Windows Login Credentials	When this option is checked, both the GUI Client and PG Admin will allow a user logged into windows with this name to access the program. For example, if you create a user named "Johnny" and a workstation is currently logged in as the Windows user "Johnny", it will grant access to the program.
Password	This field is where you assign a unique password to a user. When a user attempts to access a security enabled PG Admin or GUI Client, they will be prompted for this password.

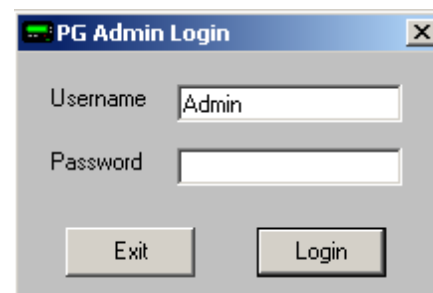
Alias	This field allows you to set a security alias for this user. For more information, please refer to the Detailed Security Description section.
Display-group	This field over-rides the Display-group setting in the settings of the GUI Client for this specific user. For more information, please refer to the GUI Client Settings section of the help file.
Sender	This field over-rides the Sender setting in the GUI Client for this specific user. For more information, please refer to the GUI Client Settings section of the help file.
Station	This field over-rides the Station Number of the GUI Client for this specific user. For more information, please refer to the GUI Client Settings section of the help file.
Presets File	This field over-rides the Preset Msgs File setting in the settings of the GUI Client for this specific user. For more information, please refer to the GUI Client Settings section of the help file.
Rights	Check the rights for this user 'own' means they can only change the recipients/etc. that they are the creator/manager for

3.3.1.4.4 Logging In

Logging In

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

When logging in to the PageGate Admin or PageGate Client, you will receive the login prompt (shown right). Simply type in the username and password that has been assigned, then click on Login.



Note: Not every user is granted administrative privileges. If certain

functions are unavailable, the user you have logged in as may not have access to them.

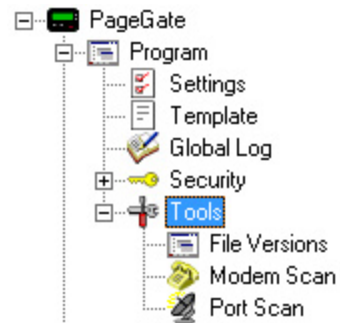
3.3.1.5 Tools

Tools

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Program - Tools section of the PageGate Admin provides three functions:

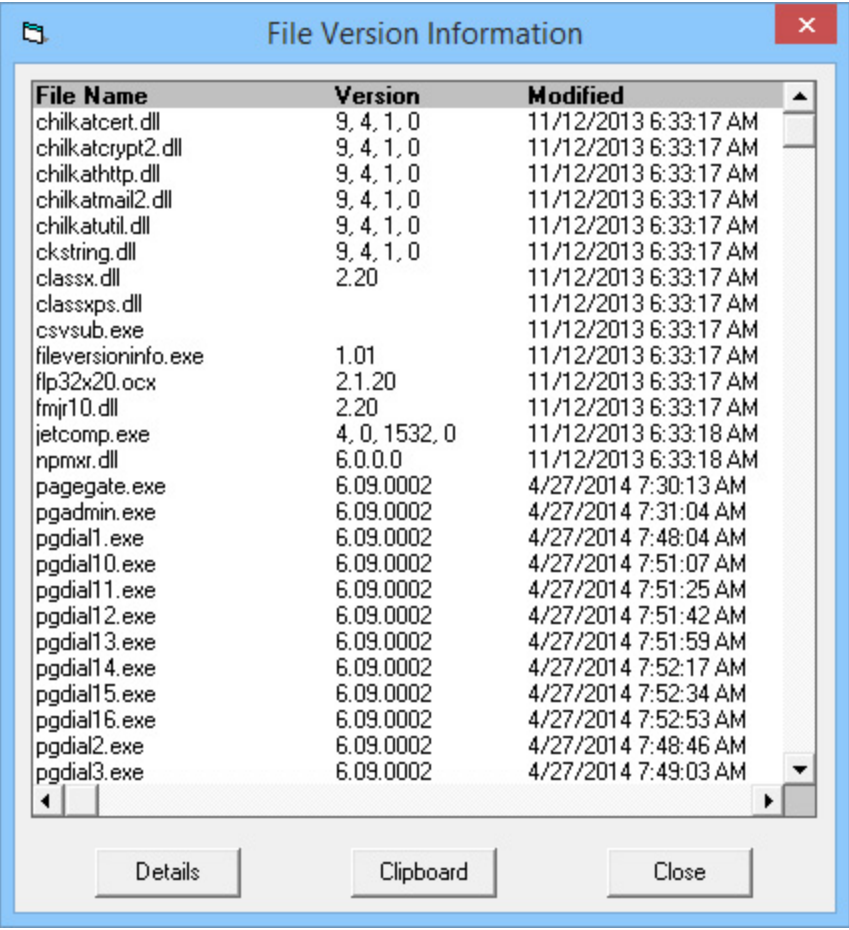
- File Version
- Modem Scan
- Port Scan



3.3.1.5.1 File Versions

File Versions

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



The screenshot shows a window titled "File Version Information" with a table of file details. The table has three columns: "File Name", "Version", and "Modified". The files listed include various DLLs and executables, with their respective version numbers and the date and time they were last modified. At the bottom of the window, there are three buttons: "Details", "Clipboard", and "Close".

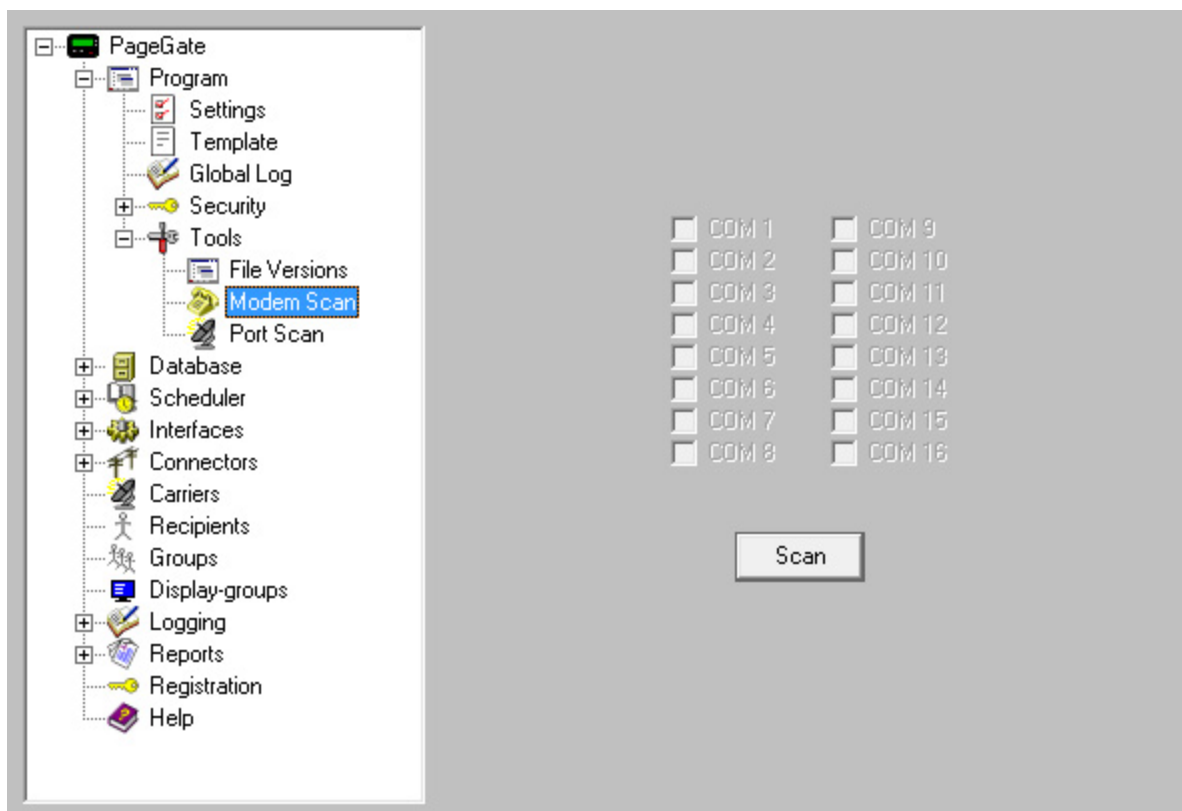
File Name	Version	Modified
chilkatcert.dll	9, 4, 1, 0	11/12/2013 6:33:17 AM
chilkatcrypt2.dll	9, 4, 1, 0	11/12/2013 6:33:17 AM
chilkathttp.dll	9, 4, 1, 0	11/12/2013 6:33:17 AM
chilkatmail2.dll	9, 4, 1, 0	11/12/2013 6:33:17 AM
chilkatutil.dll	9, 4, 1, 0	11/12/2013 6:33:17 AM
ckstring.dll	9, 4, 1, 0	11/12/2013 6:33:17 AM
classx.dll	2.20	11/12/2013 6:33:17 AM
classxps.dll		11/12/2013 6:33:17 AM
csvsub.exe		11/12/2013 6:33:17 AM
fileversioninfo.exe	1.01	11/12/2013 6:33:17 AM
flp32x20.ocx	2.1.20	11/12/2013 6:33:17 AM
fmjr10.dll	2.20	11/12/2013 6:33:17 AM
jetcomp.exe	4, 0, 1532, 0	11/12/2013 6:33:18 AM
npmxr.dll	6.0.0.0	11/12/2013 6:33:18 AM
pagegate.exe	6.09.0002	4/27/2014 7:30:13 AM
pgadmin.exe	6.09.0002	4/27/2014 7:31:04 AM
pgdial1.exe	6.09.0002	4/27/2014 7:48:04 AM
pgdial10.exe	6.09.0002	4/27/2014 7:51:07 AM
pgdial11.exe	6.09.0002	4/27/2014 7:51:25 AM
pgdial12.exe	6.09.0002	4/27/2014 7:51:42 AM
pgdial13.exe	6.09.0002	4/27/2014 7:51:59 AM
pgdial14.exe	6.09.0002	4/27/2014 7:52:17 AM
pgdial15.exe	6.09.0002	4/27/2014 7:52:34 AM
pgdial16.exe	6.09.0002	4/27/2014 7:52:53 AM
pgdial2.exe	6.09.0002	4/27/2014 7:48:46 AM
pgdial3.exe	6.09.0002	4/27/2014 7:49:03 AM

The file version (build) information for every executable contained within the PageGate Program directory.

3.3.1.5.2 Modem Scan

Modem Scan

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

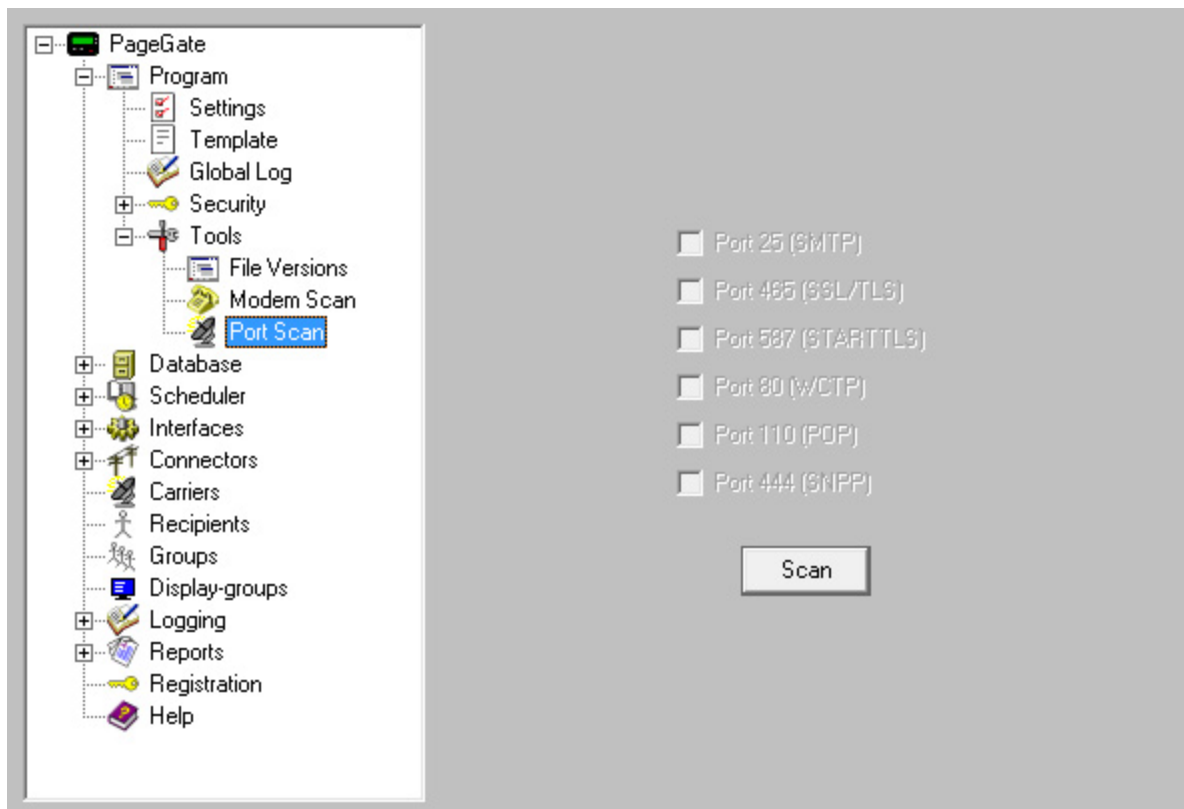


The modem scan tool allows PageGate to scan all communication (COM) ports for installed modems. Any COM port found to have a modem installed will have a check placed next to it when the scan completes.

3.3.1.5.3 Port Scan

Port Scan

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



PageGate uses many internet based protocols.

This Port Scan tool allows PageGate to determine whether the ports to use these protocols are available or closed.

3.3.2 Templates

Templates

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Templates control how messages are formatted and are a key component in configuring PageGate to send messages. PageGate comes preloaded with a set of default templates that you may never need to modify. However, the Templates section provides Administrators easy access to modify any or all variables for any or all messages that leave the system.

Message templates are available at the Global, Interface, Connector, Carrier and Recipient levels.

This means that a message template can be configured for all messages that leave the system or messages specific to a given interface, connector, carrier or recipient. The priority order for the templates is as follows:

- 1) Recipient
- 2) Carrier
- 3) Connector
- 4) Interface
- 5) Global

This inter-connected template system enables changes to be made for the maximum number of recipients by making a single change to one of the parent templates.

For example, if a Recipient has a template that has been applied to it, PageGate will format any messages delivered to this recipient based on its template regardless of whether Carrier, Connector, Interface or Global templates have been configured. This allows you to create exceptions for Global rules by creating templates unique to a given Recipient, Carrier, Connector or Interface while the rest of your traffic remains formatted to a standard.

Both hard-coded text and PageGate specific macros can be used in each template, combining both static and dynamic elements into the message text. For a full list of variables that can be used, please see the Template Variables section of the manual.

Templates are comprised of three sections: Settings, Subject and Text.

3.3.2.1 Template Components

Template: Components

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

All Templates have three sections: Settings, Subject and Text

The image shows a graphical user interface for configuring a template. It consists of three vertically stacked sections, each with a title bar and a text input area. The top section is titled 'Settings' and has a large text input area with vertical and horizontal scrollbars. The middle section is titled 'Subject' and has a smaller text input area with horizontal scrollbars. The bottom section is titled 'Text' and has a large text input area with vertical and horizontal scrollbars. At the bottom center of the window is an 'Apply' button.

Each section is controlled by a set of variables that can be broken down in to two categories:

Settings and Macros

A Setting variable controls either a delivery response setting or modifies the content of a message.

The Settings section of a Template does not use, nor should it reference, a Macro variable and must only use and reference Setting variables.

A Macro variable is an inserted value to control, modify and specify the output of a message. These variables are used in the Subject and Message templates.

The Subject and message sections of a Template should not use, nor should they reference, any Setting variables and must only use Macro variables.

3.3.2.1.1 Settings

Template: Settings[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Template settings can be broken down in to two categories:

- Settings that affect the delivery of a message
- Settings that affect the contents of a message

3.3.2.1.1.1 Delivery Variables

Template: Delivery Variables[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Of the list of variables that can be applied to the Settings portion of a Template, these modify the delivery of the message:

Variable	Description
SMTPHelloHost	This value is used for Hello and Ehlo statements during SMTP negotiation sequences. When sending or receiving SMTP traffic, this value MUST match that of a domain within the PTR record of the IP address for the PageGate Server. This value only controls the behavior of the Connectors. The PageGate Mail Server process that runs with the GetMail module uses the settings in GetMail.
InternetDomain	<p>This variable sets the value of the %InternetDomain% macro. It is also used by some protocols when Recipient or Sender values need to be transformed in to valid email addresses.</p> <p>By default, this value should match the EMAIL domain of the network on which the PageGate server resides. If you're unsure as to what this value should be, please contact your network Administrator.</p>

SubjectDelimiter	<p>This value determines what character PageGate will recognize as the delimiter (separator) for the subject part of a message. By default, PageGate looks for the SubjectDelimiter within the first 80 characters of the message. If found, it uses everything before the delimiter as the subject. By default, the Subject Delimiter is a carriage-return, a linefeed, a tab character, or a colon.</p> <p>For example, if you have a message that says "This is the subject: This is the message", the program would recognize "This is the subject" as the subject and use it as such because it was followed by a ':'. </p> <p>Multiple delimiters can be specified. You will need to separate each value by a pipe ' ', which functions as an OR statement.</p> <p>For example, if you set the following: SubjectDelimiter = \013\010 \013 \010 \009 ~ </p> <p>the program will recognize a Carriage Return + Line Feed OR a Single Carriage Return OR a Single Line Feed OR a Horizontal Tab OR a Single Tilde. When referencing any non-printable character, such as a line feed, carriage return or similar, you MUST use the Ascii code for that character.</p>
SubjectSearchLength	<p>This value determines the number of characters to look for the subject within. By default, PageGate looks within the first 80 characters of a message for the SubjectDelimiter. If you wish to set a different value, do so here.</p>
SmtptSubjectDefault	<p>In the event that PageGate does not see the SubjectDelimiter within the SubjectSearchLength, this is the default text that will be used as the subject instead.</p>
From	<p>This variable will tell the program to use a uniform From address for all messages affected by this Template. This variable will supersede any From variables passed by modules or end user input.</p>
To	<p>This variable will tell the program to use a uniform To address for all messages affected by this Template. This variable will supersede any 'Deliver To' variables passed by modules, end user input and Recipient settings.</p>

EnvelopeFrom	This variable is similar to the 'From' variable found above. However, this setting will only change who the message is reported to be from during the communication session with the carrier. It has no effect the message content or values specified by any Macro.
EnvelopeTo	This variable is similar to the 'To' variable found above. However, this setting will only change who the message is set to during the communication session with the carrier. It has no effect the message content or values specified by any Macro.

3.3.2.1.1.2 Content Variables

Template: Content Variables[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Of the list of variables that can be applied to the Settings portion of a Template, these modify the contents of the message:

Variable	Description
StripNonPrintable	Non-printable characters are things like carriage returns, line feeds and other white space characters. By default, this value is Globally set to False. This value should be set to True for Carriers that use the SMTP protocol. Also, if you want PageGate to remove all non-printable characters from the body of a message, this value should be set to True.
StripAlpha	Alpha characters are letters. To have the program strip out all alpha characters from a message, thereby leaving the message with only numeric characters, set this value to True.

3.3.2.1.2 Macros

Template: Macros[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

This is the master list of all Macro variables that can be used in a Subject or Text Template.

Variable	Description
%InternetDomain%	This variable inserts the setting specified Internet Domain Setting.
%Subject%	This variable inserts the Subject text.

%SubjectDelimiter%	This variable inserts the Subject Delimiter.
%Message%	This variable inserts the body of the Message.
%Sender%	This variable inserts the Sender of the Message.
%SenderMailbox%	If the Sender value is an email address, this variable inserts only the portion of the Sender's Address before the @.
%SenderDomain%	If the Sender value is an email address, this variable inserts only the portion of the Sender's Address after the @.
%Recipient%	This variable inserts the Recipient field of a Recipient's record or Group field of a Group record.
%RecipientFullName%	This variable inserts the Full Name field of a Recipient's record or the Description field of a Group record.
%OriginalRecipient%	This variable inserts the intended Original Recipient of a message. For example, if the message was originally addressed to a group, this will be the group's name.
%LastRecipient%	This variable inserts the Last Recipient a message delivery attempt was addressed to. this can be used when a message has "failed over" to another recipient, to insert the previous recipient's name.
%RecipientId%	This variable inserts the ID/PIN field of a Recipient's record.
%RecipientMailbox%	If the Recipient of a message is an email address, this variable inserts only the portion of the Recipient's Address before the @.
%RecipientDomain%	If the Recipient of a message is an email address, this variable inserts only the portion of

	the Recipient's Address after the @.
%Comment1%	This variable inserts the Comment 1 field of a Recipient or Group's Record.
%Comment2%	This variable inserts the Comment 2 field of a Recipient or Group's Record.
%Comment3%	This variable inserts the Comment 3 field of a Recipient or Group's Record.
%Comment4%	This variable inserts the Comment 4 field of a Recipient or Group's Record.
%Date%	This variable inserts the Date as specified by the operating system.
%Time%	This variable inserts the Time as specified by the operating system.
%MilitaryTime%	This variable inserts the Time as specified by the operating system output in a 00:00 - 24:00 format.
%RequestedDate%	This variable inserts the Date on which a request to deliver a message was requested.
%RequestedTime%	This variable inserts the Time on which a request to deliver a message was requested.
%RequestedMilitaryTime%	This variable inserts the Time on which a request to deliver a message was requested output in a 00:00 - 24:00 format.
%TimeZone%	This variable inserts the Time Zone as specified by the operating system.
%ShortTimeZone%	This variable inserts the Time Zone as specified by the operating system output in short code.
%Station%	This variable inserts the PageGate Station ID value.

%LoginName%	This variable inserts the Windows Login Name of the the user who performs a given action (such as sending a message).
%ComputerName%	This variable inserts the Windows Computer of the a computer that performs a given action (such as sending a message).
%Reliapage%	PageGate will sequentially number each message it sends to recipients. This is useful for detecting if a message has been missed (a number is missing).

3.3.2.1.3 Subject

Template: Subject

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

A Subject Template controls the behavior of any Subject Line information used in a message passed through this template. Since Subject Templates may be applied on a Global, Carrier, Connector or Recipient level, it is entirely possible to create a standard format for all Message Subjects using a Global Template, then specify exceptions to this global rule in the Carrier, Connector or Recipient templates.

Generally speaking, the SMTP or Email protocol is the only protocol that actively references the Subject line during its protocol negotiation sequence. As such, you may want to format special Subject Templates for each of your SMTP carriers but that is not required. This can be also accomplished by a single Global Template, if you want to apply these settings to all messages.

Please see the Macros section for a list of variables that can be used in this section.

3.3.2.1.4 Message

Template: Message

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

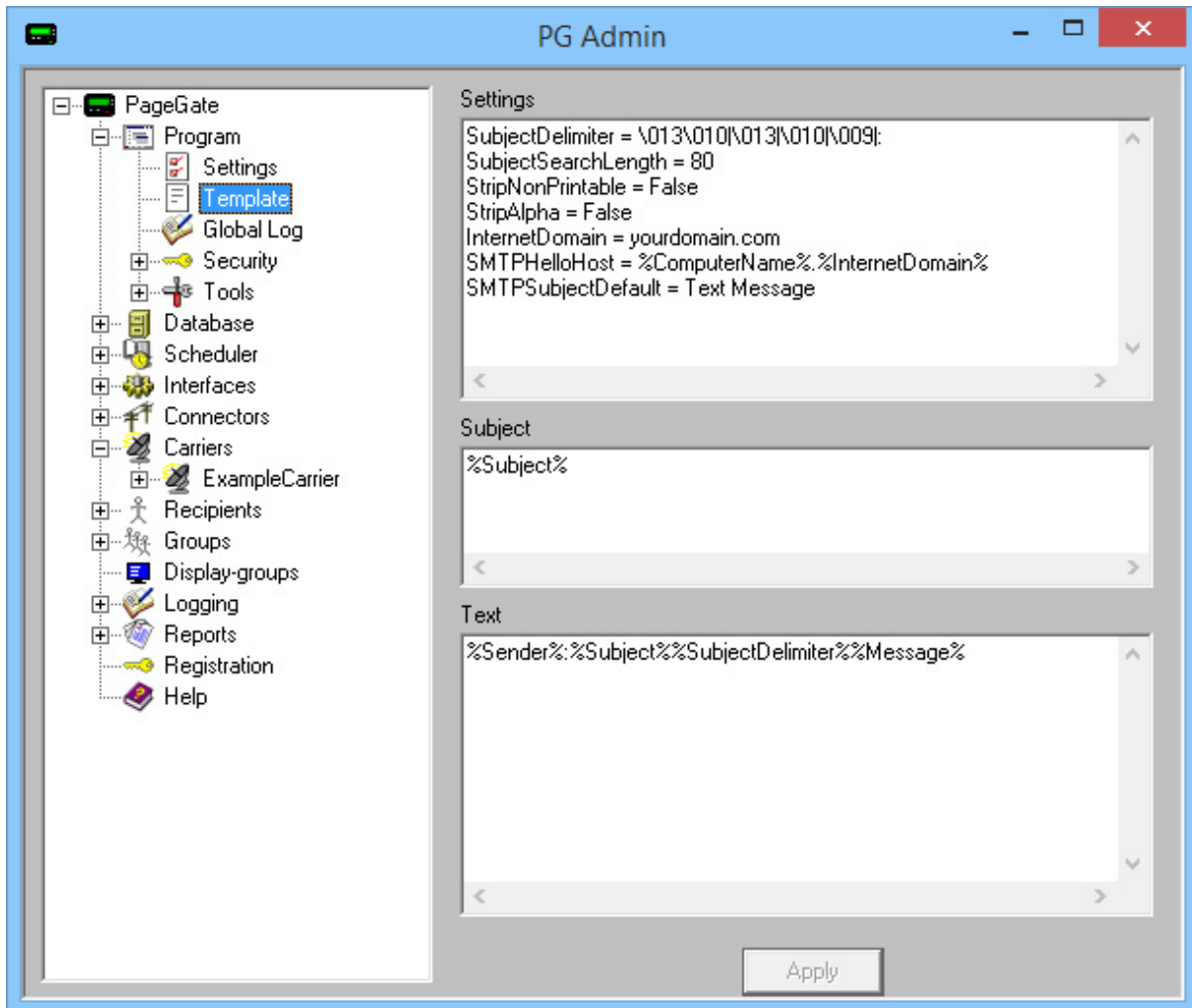
A Message Template controls the output and format of the body of any message passed through this template. Since Message Templates may be applied on a Global, Carrier, Connector or Recipient level, it is entirely possible to create a standard format for all Messages using a Global Template, then specify exceptions to this global rule in the

Carrier, Connector or Recipient templates.

Please see the Macros section for a list of variables that can be used in this section.

3.3.2.2 Global Templates

Global Templates Top Previous Next



The Global Template controls the behavior of all messages processed by the PageGate Server as well as certain protocol negotiation information. PageGate is pre-loaded with a default template that provides most base functionality, so you may not need to modify the Global Template. However, it is very, very important to make sure that this Template is formatted properly.

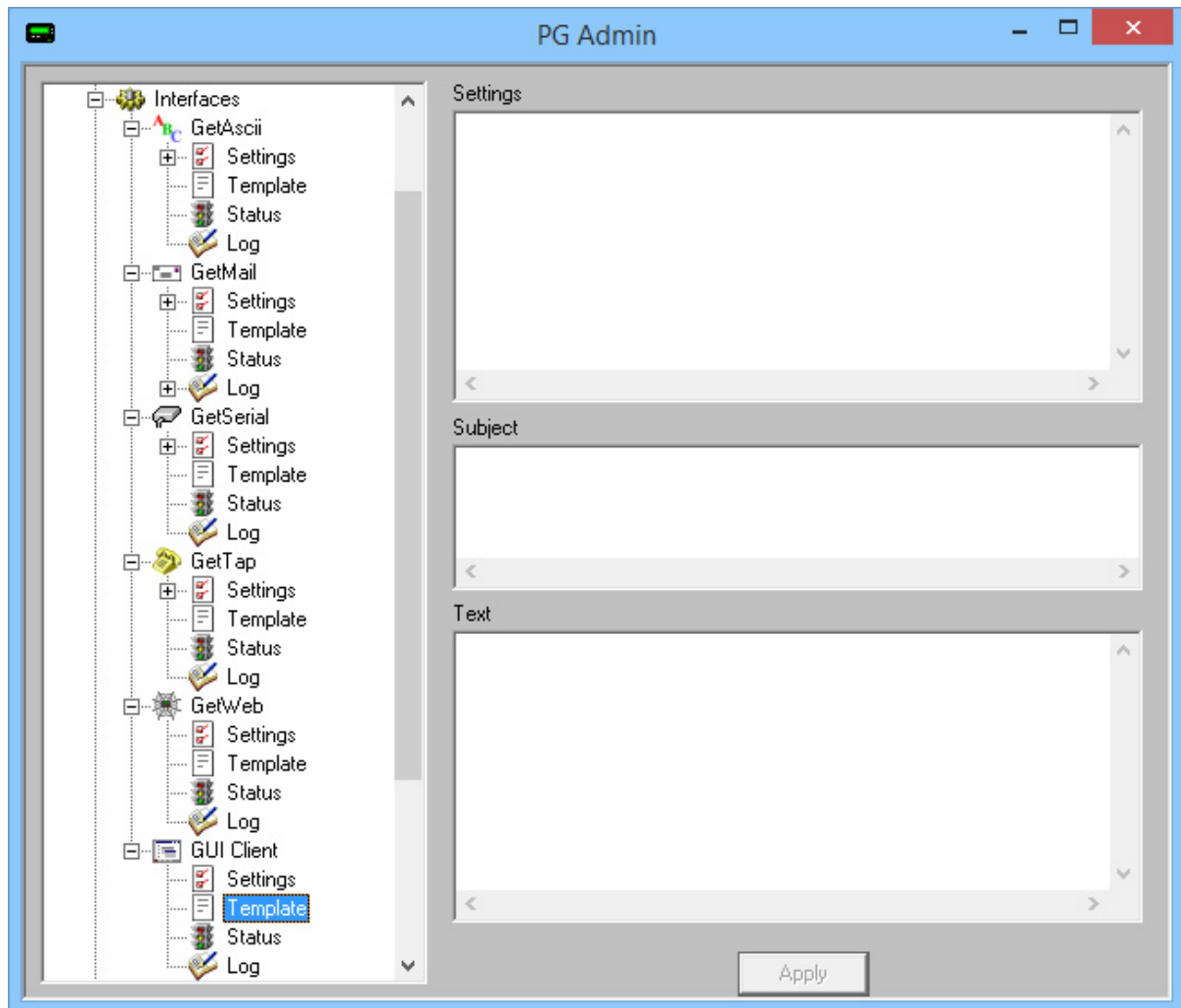
To format the Global Template, please review the Template Components section of the

documentation.

3.3.2.3 Interface Templates

Interface Templates

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



Templates applied to a specific interface format, or re-format, all messages processed by this interface. Interface level variables will override the same variables specified on a Global level but will be overridden by variables specified at a Connector, Carrier or Recipient level.

For example, if the Interface Template formats the message to standardize the Sender's Name to a static value, but a Connector, Carrier or Recipient template specifies a different value, messages passed through those Carriers or to those Recipients will use the Sender's Name variable from their own templates and ALL other variables from higher level

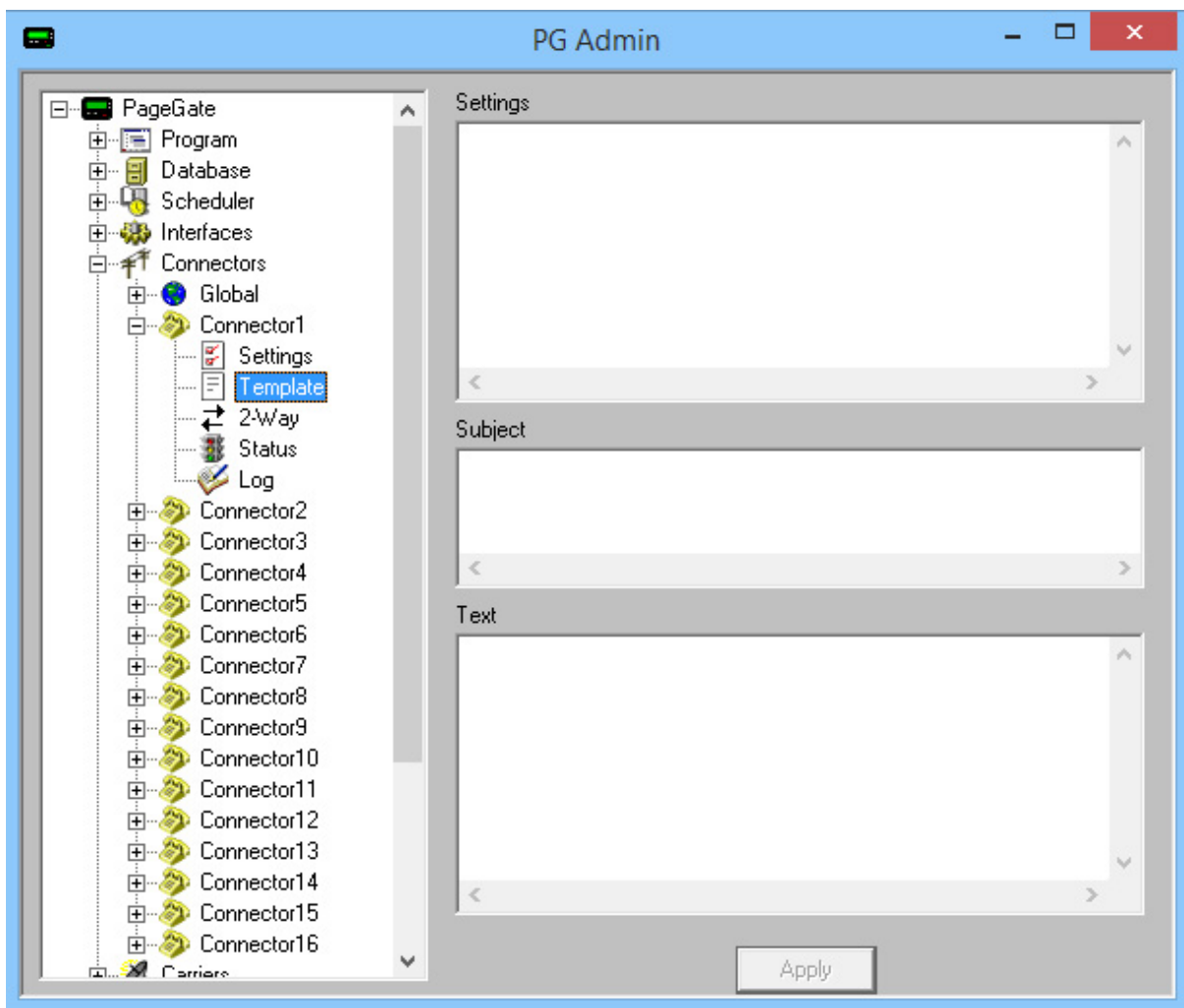
templates.

To format an Interface Template, please review the Template Components section of the documentation.

3.3.2.4 Connector Templates

Connector Templates

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



Templates applied to a specific connector format, or re-format, all messages passed through this connector. Connector level variables will override the same variables specified on a Global or Interface level but will be overridden by variables specified at a Carrier or Recipient level.

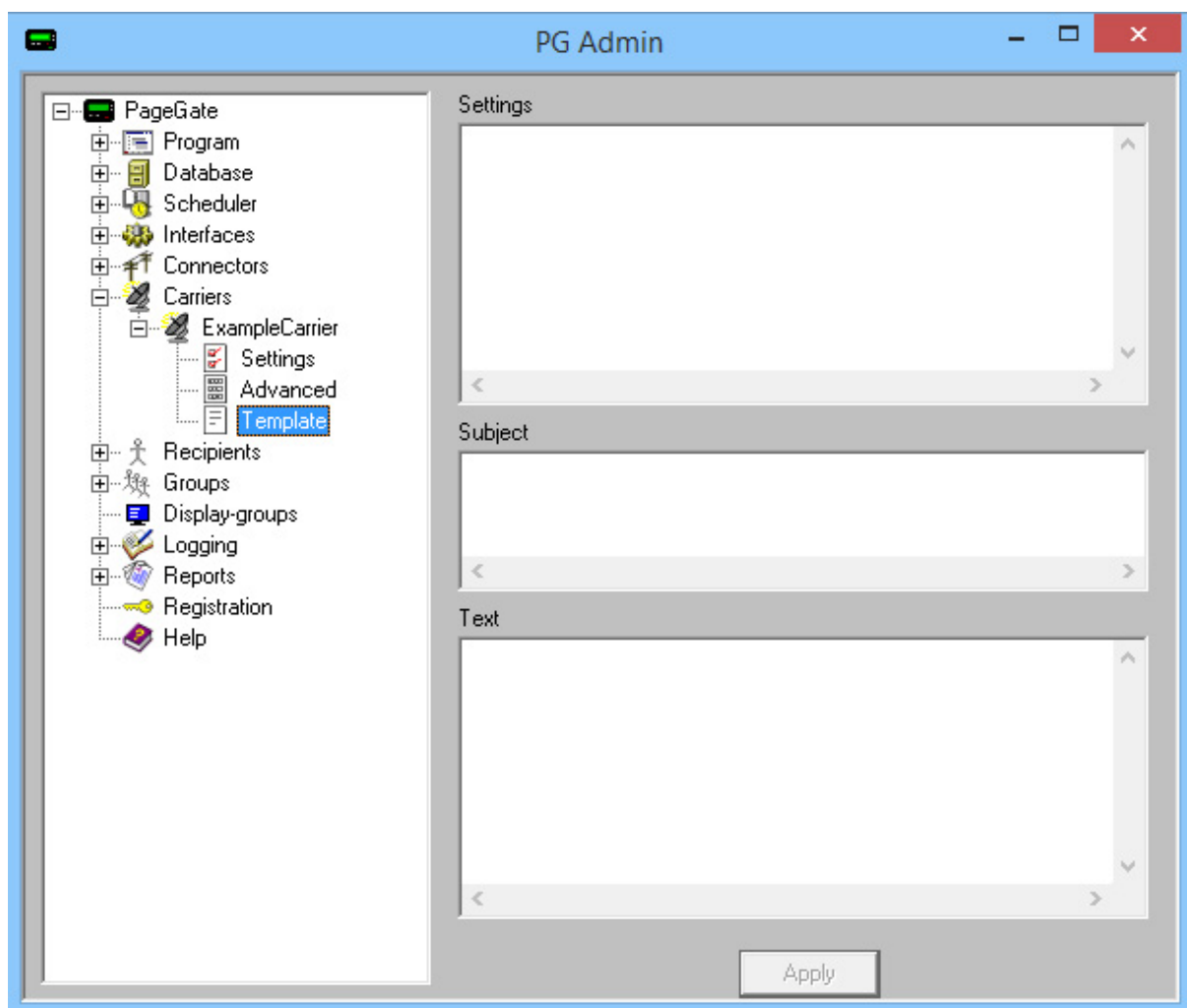
For example, if the Connector Template formats the message to standardize the Sender's

Name to a static value, but a Carrier or Recipient template specifies a different value, messages passed through those Carriers or to those Recipients will use the Sender's Name variable from their own templates and ALL other variables from higher level templates.

To format a Connector Template, please review the Template Components section of the documentation.

3.3.2.5 Carrier Templates

Carrier Templates

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Applying a custom template to a carrier tells PageGate to format messages delivered via this carrier in a certain way. Most carriers do not require a custom template but there may be things you want to customize about the look, output or specific format of your messages. There are, however, carriers that do require a custom template to function.

The following protocols require a custom template to function properly:

- HTTPGET
- HTTPPOST
- Fax
- FaxSrv

For all other Carrier Templates, please review the Template Components section of the documentation.

3.3.2.5.1 Templates for HTTP GET Carriers

Templates for HTTP GET Carriers

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

HTTP GET is a special protocol in that a template **MUST** be applied in order for this protocol to function properly.

In the Template sub-section of any HTTP GET carrier, enter the following in the Message portion of the Template:

```
|<name1>|<value1>|  
|<name2>|<value2>|  
etc.
```

Here is an example where the parameter names (or form field names) are: to, from, subject, and text:

```
|to| %Pin% |  
|from| %Sender% |  
|subject| %Subject% |  
|text| %Message% |
```

NOTE: The | symbol is called a pipe and is found on most keyboards above the backslash character, \.

3.3.2.5.2 Templates for HTTP POST Carriers

Templates for HTTP POST

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Carriers

HTTP POST is a special protocol in that a template **MUST** be applied in order for this protocol to function properly.

In the Template sub-section of any HTTP POST carrier, enter the following in the Message section of the Template:

```
|<name1>|<value1>|  
|<name2>|<value2>|  
etc.
```

Here is an example where the parameter names (or form field names) are: to, from, subject, and text:

```
|to| %Pin% |  
|from| %Sender% |  
|subject| %Subject% |  
|text| %Message% |
```

NOTE: The | symbol is called a pipe and is found on most keyboards above the backslash character, \.

3.3.2.5.3 Templates for Faxing

Templates for Faxing

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

When sending a fax from PageGate, you may want to modify the output so that the information maintains the look of a facsimile transmission rather than raw text output.

To apply a template to a Fax or FaxSrv carrier, all you have to do is go in to the Template sub-section of that carrier. In the "Message" section, you can enter the template and all important variables. The following is an **example** of a Faxing Template:

```
FROM    <Your Name here>  
  
TO:      %Recipient%  
          %Comment 1%  
          %Comment 2%  
          %Comment 3%  
          %Comment 4%
```


SENT: %Date% %Time%

SUBJECT: %Subject%

MESSAGE:

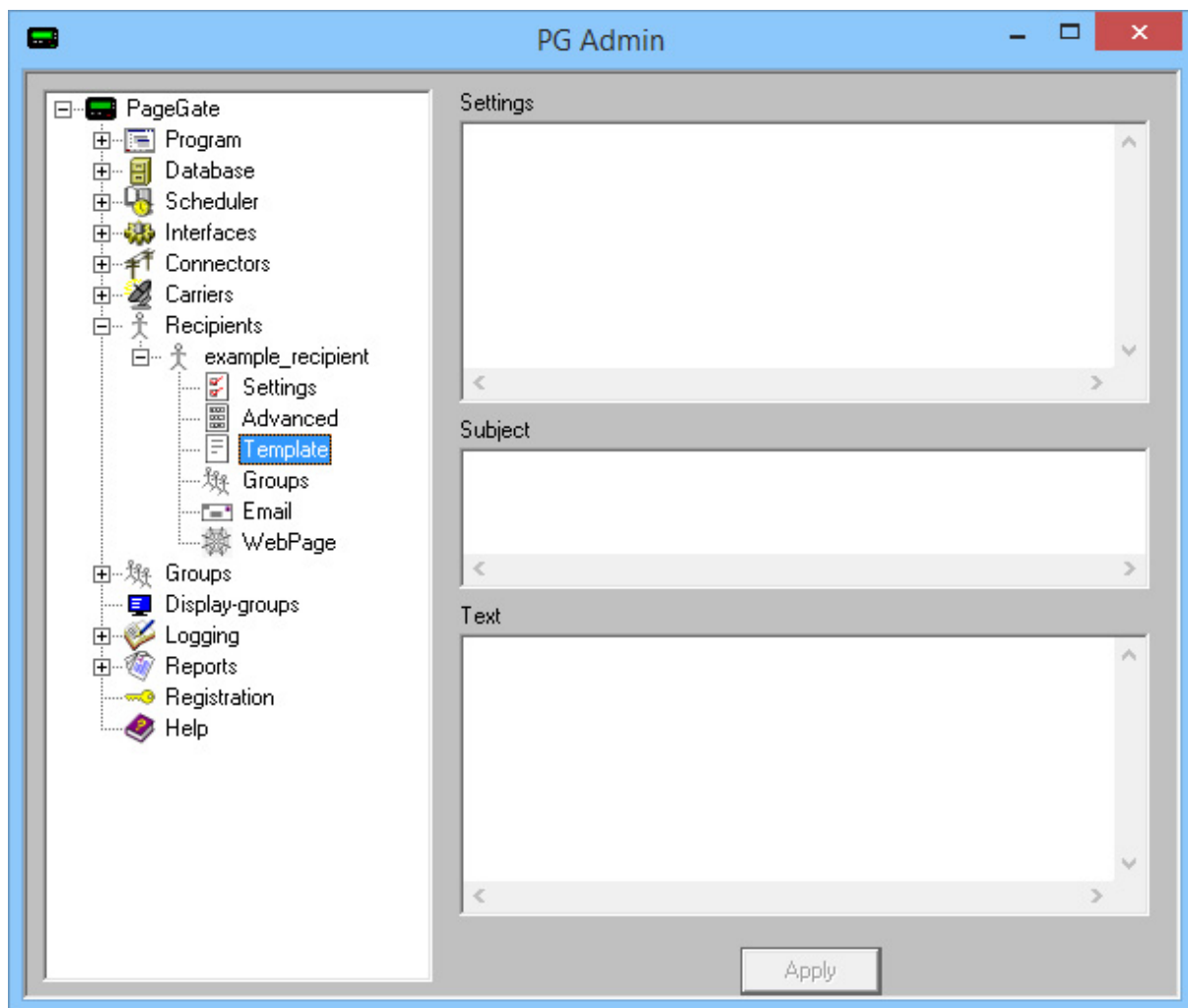
%Message%

After entering the template information, click on Apply.

3.3.2.6 Recipient Templates

Recipient Templates

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



Templates applied to a specific Recipient format, or re-format, all messages passed to this Recipient. Recipient level variables will override the same variables specified in any other

Template. Recipient level variables will not, and can not, be overridden by Global, Interface, Connector or Carrier templates.

For example, if the Recipient Template formats the message to standardize the Sender's Name to a static value, but a Carrier or Global template specifies a different value, messages passed to this Recipient will use the static Sender's Name value you've specified and will ignore any Sender's Name variables in the Global, Interface, Connector or Carrier level templates.

To format a Recipient Template, please review the Template Components section of the documentation.

3.3.3 Database

Database

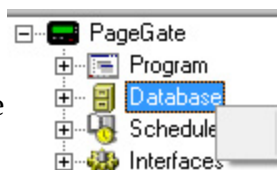
[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Database subsection of the PageGate Admin is found beneath the PageGate object (shown right) and contains settings and information that relate to the global operations of the PageGate Database.

By clicking on the + next to Database, it will expand the following sub-sections:

Settings, Status, Tools, Password Protect, and Synchronization

Right clicking on the Database section will provide the option to Zip the database. Selecting this option will create a compressed file named pagegate.mdb.zip output in the PageGate database directory.

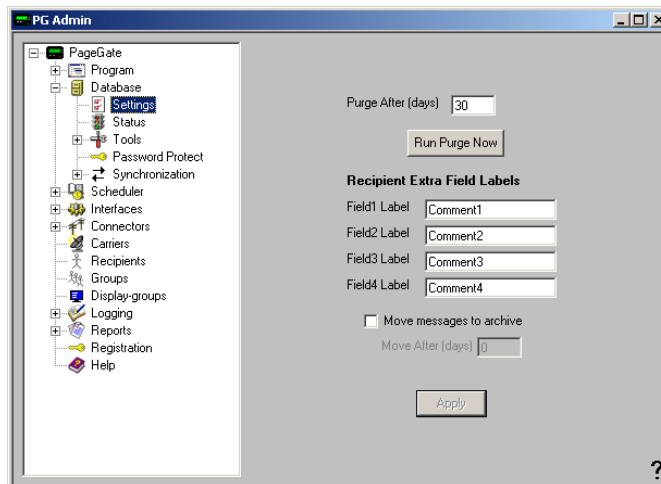


3.3.3.1 Settings

Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Settings

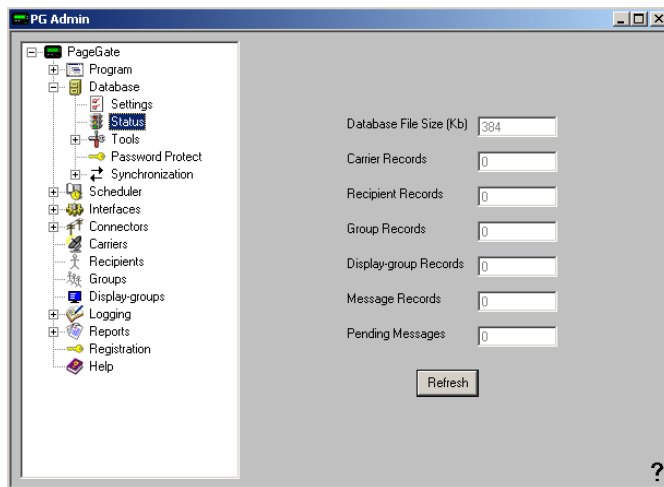
[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

<u>Setting</u>	<u>Function</u>
Purge After (days)	This field sets the number of days that PageGate will keep old messages in the messages table. After X days, where X is the number you enter, PageGate will purge old messages from the database.
Run Purge Now	Normally, the messages are purged from the database during the midnight cleanup routine. Messages can be manually purged from the database by clicking this button.
Field 1, 2, 3, and 4 Label	Four extra pieces of information can be stored with each recipient and group. This is where you can set the labels that are shown with each piece of information.
Move messages to archive	Checking this option will allow PageGate to move "purged" messages to the Archive Directory.
Move After (days)	This determines the number of days that messages are moved to the Archive Directory.

3.3.3.2 Status

Status

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



Setting	Function
Database File Size (Kb)	Displays the current file size of the database in kilobytes.
Carrier Records	Displays the current number of carrier records in the database.
Recipient Records	Displays the current number of recipient records in the database.
Group Records	Displays the current number of group records in the database.
Display-group Records	Displays the current number of Display-group records in the database.
Message Records	Displays the current number of messages in the messages table.
Pending Messages	Displays the current number of messages waiting to be processed in the messages table.

3.3.3.3 Tools

Tools

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

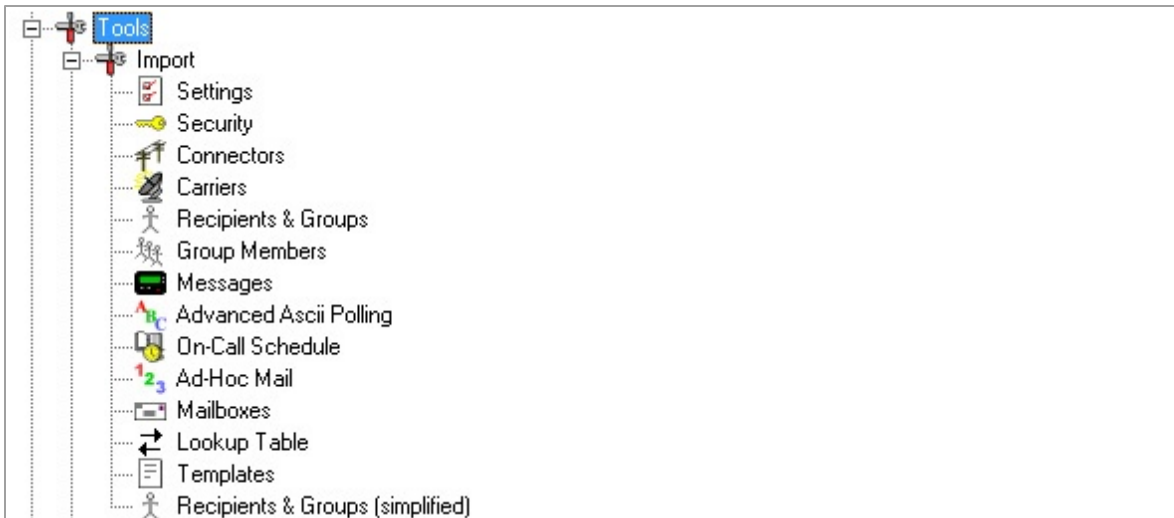
The Database subsection of the PageGate Admin is found beneath the Database object (shown right) and contains settings and information that relate to the specific database tools offered in the Admin.

By clicking on the + next to Tools, it will expand the following sub-sections:

Import, Export, and Rebuild Database.

3.3.3.3.1 Import

Import

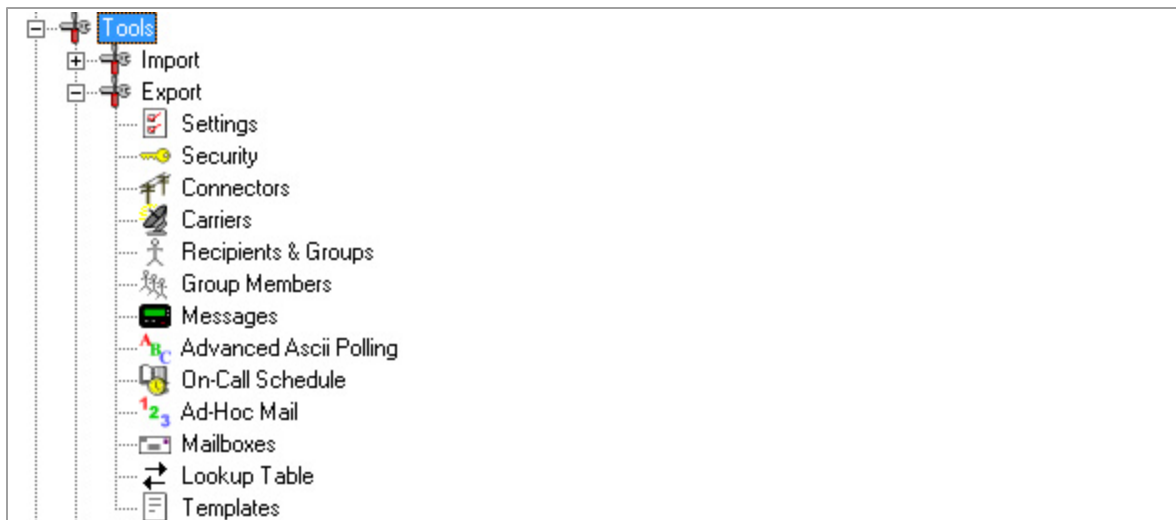
[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Option	Function
Settings	Imports the global settings for PageGate, including registration and Program Settings.
Security	Imports the Security Settings and Users.
Connectors	Imports the Connectors settings.
Carriers	Imports a list of Carriers and their respective settings.
Recipients & Groups	Imports a list of Recipients and Group names.
Group Members	Imports a list of recipients as members of a group.
Messages	Imports the messages contained within the text file.
Advanced Ascii Polling	Imports the Advanced Polling settings for the GetAscii module.
On-Call Schedule	Imports a schedule to send messages to on-call groups.
Ad-Hoc Mail	Imports a range of PIN numbers for use with the ad-hoc mail option.
Mailboxes	Imports information about the mail settings for each recipient or group.
Lookup Table	Imports the Lookup Table settings used with the GetAscii and GetSerial interfaces.

Templates	Imports all Templates from a text file.
Recipients & Groups (simplified)	A simplified form of the Recipients and Groups import file.

3.3.3.3.2 Export

Export

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Option	Function
Settings	Exports the existing global settings for PageGate, including registration and Program Settings.
Security	Exports the existing Security Settings and Users.
Connectors	Exports the existing Connectors settings.
Carriers	Exports the Carriers and their respective settings.
Recipients & Groups	Exports a list of Recipients and Group names.
Group Members	Exports a list of recipients currently set as members of a group.
Messages	Exports the messages table of the database.
Advanced Ascii Polling	Exports the Advanced Polling settings for the GetAscii module.
On-Call Schedule	Exports the existing schedule of messages to send to on-call groups.
Ad-Hoc Mail	Exports the range of PIN numbers set for use by the ad-hoc mail option.

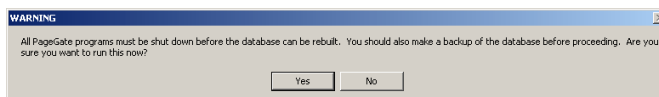
Mailboxes	Exports the mail settings set for each recipient or group.
Lookup Table	Exports the Lookup Table settings used by the GetAscii and GetSerial interfaces.
Templates	Exports all Templates to a text file.

3.3.3.3.3 Rebuild Database

Rebuild Database

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

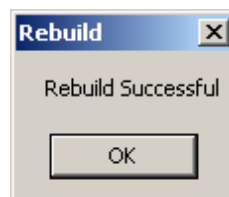
This option will compact and rebuild the PageGate database. When you click on the Rebuild Database option, you will receive the following prompt:



All of PageGate's modules **must** be stopped in order to rebuild the database. This can be accomplished by clicking on the pager icon in the Windows system tray (next to the clock) and choosing 'Quit' or 'Stop'.

No part of PageGate can be running when this rebuild takes place. Please be sure to shut down all instances of the GUI Client and PageGate Admin.

When you click on Yes, the rebuild will take place. After the rebuild has finished, you should receive this prompt:



After you click on OK, it is safe to run the PageGate Server, Admin, and Client once more.

If PageGate is running as an Application, restart PageGate by choosing 'PageGate Server' from the Windows start menu.

If PageGate is running as a Windows Service, click on the pager icon in the Windows system tray (next to the clock) and choose 'Start' from the popup menu.

Note: An external rebuild utility is included with PageGate. It is called 'Jetcomp.exe' and can be found in the PageGate program directory. This utility can be used in cases where the PG Admin program is unable to start due to certain types of database corruption. After the database is rebuilt, you will have to restart the PageGate Server module.

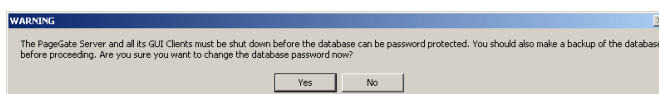
3.3.3.4 Password Protect

Password Protect

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The password protect option allows you to set a password specifically on the database. This does not have anything to do with the other Security features of PageGate; Entering a database password will restrict access to the database from programs like Microsoft Access.

When you click the Password Protect option, you will receive this prompt:

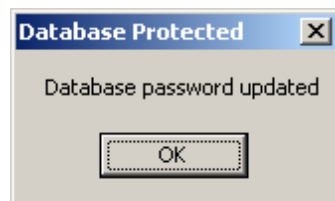


When you click on Yes, you will be prompted with this:



Enter a password, then click on Apply.

When you receive the following prompt:



Click on OK for the password to be accepted.

NOTE: Without the password, the database cannot be opened. If this password is set, the next time each PageGate GUI Client is started, the you will need to enter it (you will be prompted for it automatically). The PageGate GUI Client will only prompt for this password once, and then it will be stored for the future (unless the password is changed again).

DO NOT LOSE THIS PASSWORD.

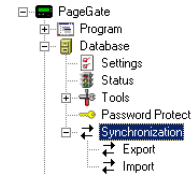
If this password is lost, the database may become permanently inaccessible!

3.3.3.5 Synchronization

Synchronization

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

When multiple PageGate databases are used, this Database option is used to synchronize one or more slave databases with a master database.



By clicking the + next to Synchronization, it will expand the following sub-sections:

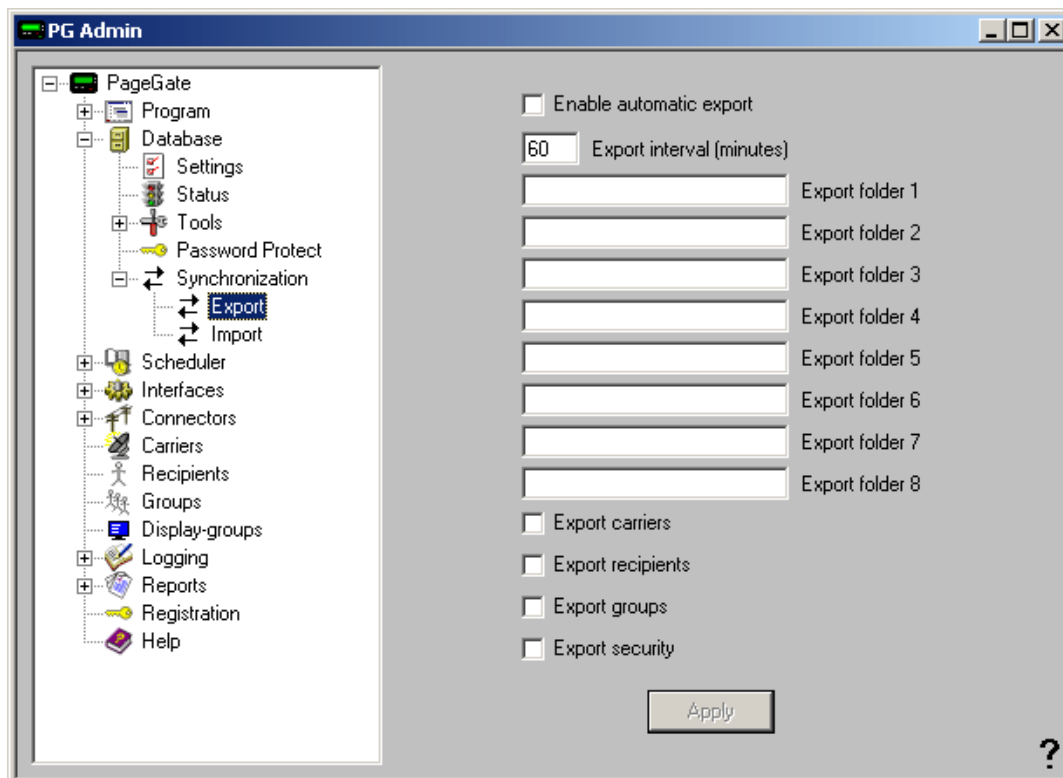
Export and Import

3.3.3.5.1 Export

Export

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

NOTE: This option should only ever be set on the Master PageGate Server. Do NOT configure the Synchronization Export on Slave PageGate Servers.



Option	Function
Enable automatic export	Enabling this option will export changes made to the master database to each of the slave databases.
Export interval (minutes)	This field sets the interval at which changes are exported to the slave databases. It is not recommended to have this set lower than once per hour.
Export folder 1 - 8	This field sets the path to the database directory of the slave servers.
Export Carriers	Enabling this option will export the carriers from the master database to the slave databases.
Export Recipients	Enabling this option will export the recipients from the master database to the slave databases.
Export Groups	Enabling this option will export the groups from the master database to the slave databases.
Export Security	Enabling this option will export the security settings and users from the master database to the slave databases.

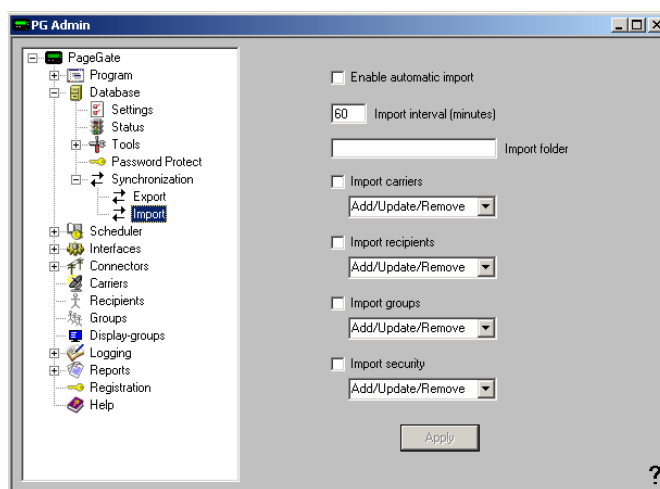
3.3.3.5.2 Import

Import

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

NOTE: This option should only ever be set on the Slave PageGate Servers.

Do NOT configure the Synchronization Import on the Master PageGate Server.



Option	Function
Enable automatic import	Enabling this option will import changes made to the master database into each the slave database this copy of the Admin controls.
Import interval (minutes)	This field sets the interval at which changes are imported to the slave database. It is not recommended to have this set lower than once per hour.
Import Carriers	Enabling this option will import the carriers from the master database.
Import Recipient	Enabling this option will import the recipients from the master database.
Import Groups	Enabling this option will import the recipients from the master database.
Import Security	Enabling this option will import the security settings and users from the master database.

When enabling the option to import Carriers, Recipients, Groups, or Security Settings, you will be presented with four options:

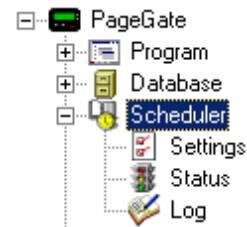
Option	Function
Add/Update/Remove	This option will allow the imported entries to Add new recipients, Updated existing recipients, or Remove existing recipients that are not on the list of recipients to be imported.
Add Only	This option will only allow new recipients to be added upon import.
Update Only	This option will only update existing recipients upon import.
Add/Update	This option will allow new recipients to be created and existing recipients can be updated upon import.

3.3.4 Scheduler

Scheduler

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Scheduler subsection of the PageGate Admin is found beneath the PageGate object (shown right) and contains options for monitoring and controlling the behavior of the Scheduler.



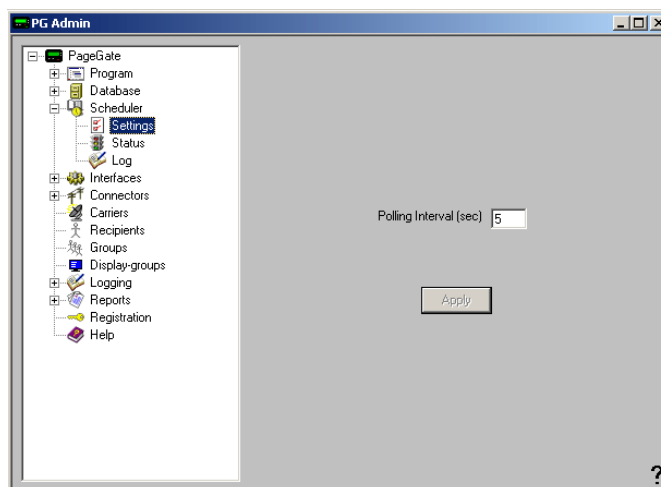
When you click the + next to Scheduler, it expands the three options:

Settings, Status, and Log

To manually stop or start the PageGate Scheduler, right click on the word Scheduler (shown right). When you do, it will come up with the Start and Stop options.

3.3.4.1 Settings

Settings

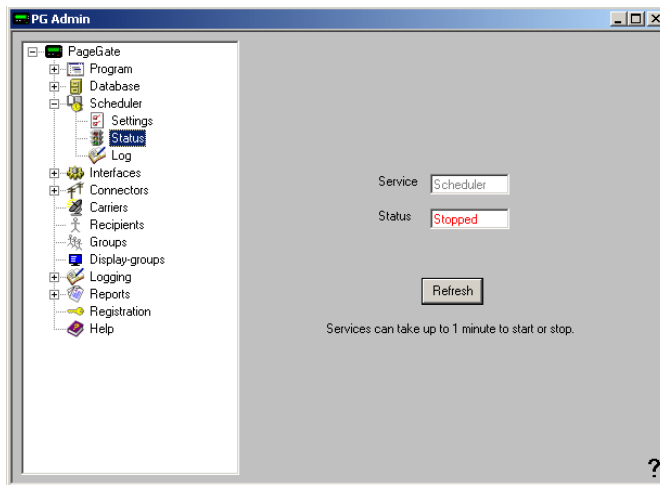
[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The only setting for the Scheduler is the Polling Interval (in seconds). This determines how often the PageGate Scheduler polls the database for new messages to be processed.

3.3.4.2 Status

Status

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



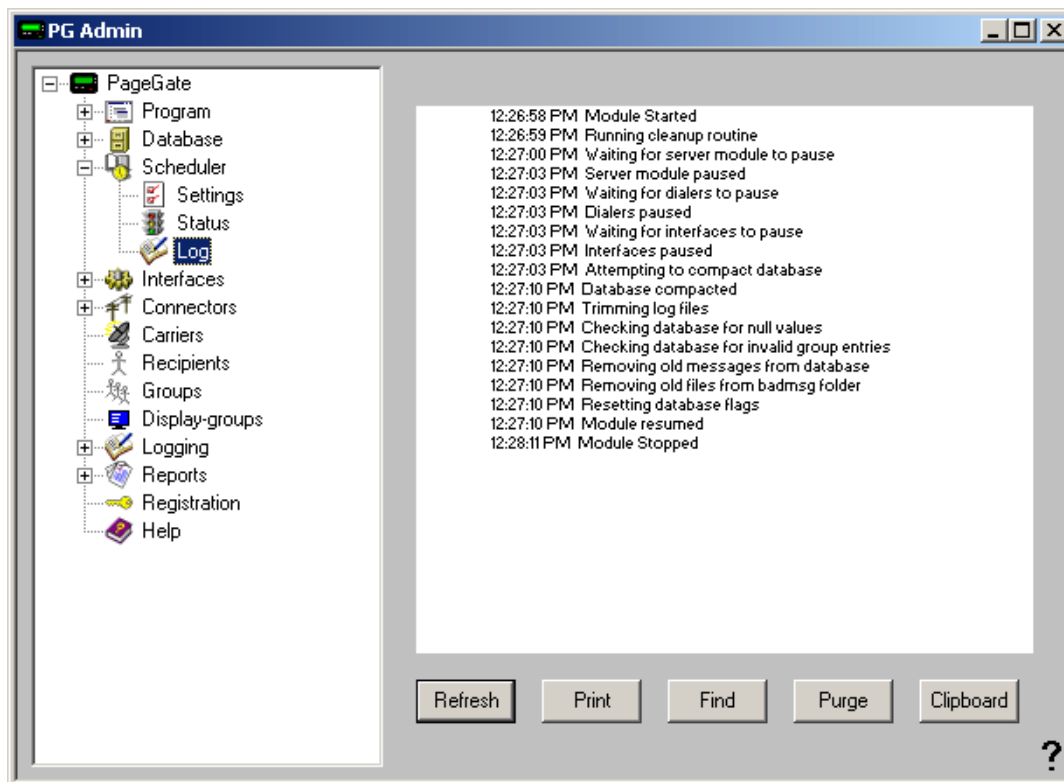
The status subsection of Scheduler will show you if the PageGate Scheduler is currently running or stopped. There are two ways to start the scheduler:

- 1) Restart the PageGate Server.
- 2) To manually stop or start the PageGate Scheduler, right click on the word Scheduler (shown right). When you do, it will come up with the Start and Stop options.

3.3.4.3 Log

Log

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



If logging is enabled, this log shows a summary of the events generated by the PageGate Scheduler. The Scheduler Log section of the Admin has five buttons:

Ref res h	Displays the most current entries in the global log.
Pri nt	Sends a copy of everything listed in the Scheduler Log to a printer.
Fin d	Allows you to search for a variable (such as a carrier or recipient name).
Pur ge	Deletes the entirety of the Scheduler Log.
Cli pbo ard	Copies the contents of the Scheduler Log to the Windows Clipboard, allowing it to be pasted into another application.

3.3.5 Interfaces

Interfaces

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Interfaces subsection of the PageGate Admin is found beneath the PageGate object (shown right) and contains settings and information that relate to the Interfaces of the PageGate Server.

By clicking on the + next to Interfaces, it will expand Interfaces' sub-sections:

- GetAscii
- GetMail
- GetSerial
- GetTap
- GUI Client
- GetWeb



3.3.5.1 GetAscii

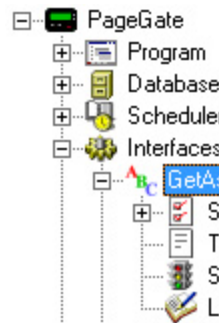
GetAscii

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The GetAscii subsection of the PageGate Admin is found beneath the Interfaces object (shown right) and contains settings and information that relate to the functionality and performance of the GetAscii module.

By clicking on the + next to GetAscii, it will expand the following sub-sections:

- Settings
- Status
- Log



In addition to the interface presented in the PageGate Admin, the GetAscii module comes with a command line interface, allowing other programs to pass

parameters to the GetAscii module to create messages. For more information, please see the Command Line Interface section of the manual.

NOTE: For more information regarding the fundamentals of Ascii, please see the "What is Ascii?" section of the manual.

3.3.5.1.1 What is Ascii?

What is Ascii?

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Ascii is, literally, text. What you're reading on the screen right now is ascii.

PageGate's GetAscii has two primary functions:

- It allows PageGate to monitor a directory for text (ascii) files. When any text files show up in that directory, the GetAscii module reads them into PageGate and attempts to turn them into messages to go out to a recipient or group of recipients.
- It also allows other programs to interface with PageGate. Most commonly used by computer monitoring programs such as ServersAlive! or HP Openview, this allows a third party program to pass parameters and variables directly to the GetAscii module for processing. For more information, please see the Command Line Interface section of the manual.

The standard Ascii layout is as follows:

```
<Recipient Name>  
<Sender's Name>  
<body of message>
```

In the above example, in the first line, you would put a recipient or group name.

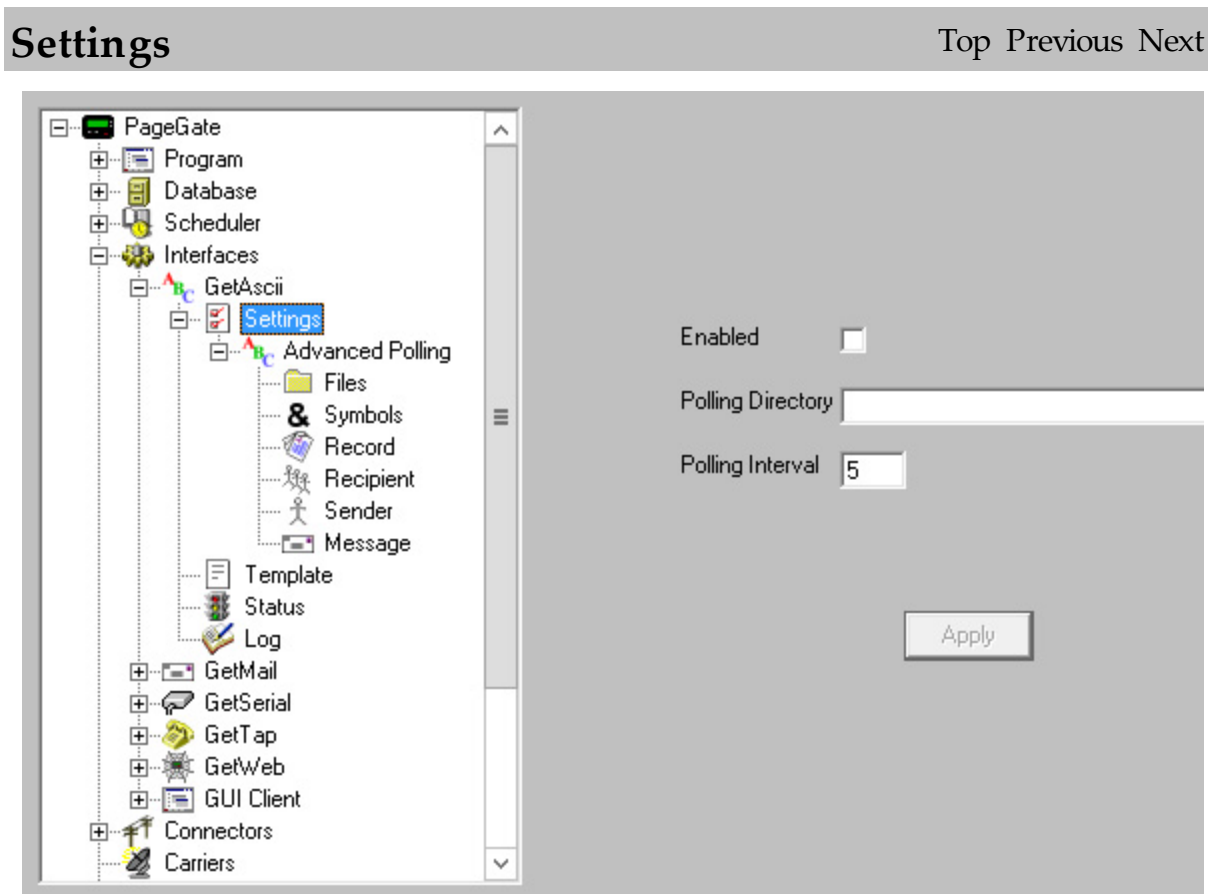
In the second line, whoever receives the message will see this line as the sender.

In the third line, the body of the message to be sent is entered. The message can exceed one line in length all the way up to the Max Chars you set in the recipient's settings.

The standard Ascii file name is 'filename.asc'. By default, any files placed in the GetAscii polling directory that have the extension asc will be processed by

PageGate.

3.3.5.1.2 Settings



In the base settings of the GetAscii module, you can specify a directory for the module to look within for ascii files. As shown in the image above, you can have this module Enabled or Disabled. If you choose Enabled, you must specify a valid directory within the Polling directory field. If a valid directory is not specified, PageGate will ask if you wish to create the directory.

Setting	Function
Enabled	When the Enabled checkbox is checked, it tells the PageGate server to run the GetAscii module. If the Enabled option is greyed out, please enable the master setting for GetAscii in the Program Settings.
Polling Directory	This field specifies the location PageGate will monitor for ascii files to be processed. It can be set to a local path (c:\ascii\, for

	example) or a UNC path (\\server\path\).
Polling Interval	The setting in this field determines how often the GetAscii module looks for new ascii files in the Polling Directory.

By clicking on the + next to Settings, it will reveal the Advanced Polling options. Please refer to the Advanced Polling section for more information.

3.3.5.1.2.1 Advanced Polling

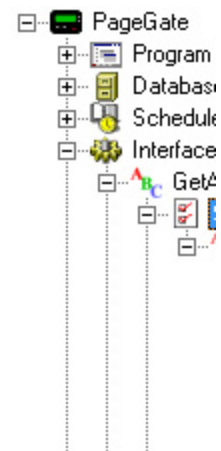
Advanced Polling

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Advanced Polling subsection of the GetAscii Module is found beneath the GetAscii - Settings object (shown right) and contains settings and information that relate to the more complex and custom capabilities of the GetAscii module..

By clicking on the + next to Advanced Polling, it will expand the GetAscii Module's sub-sections:

- Files
- Symbols
- Record
- Recipient
- Sender
- Message



Advanced Polling Notes

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

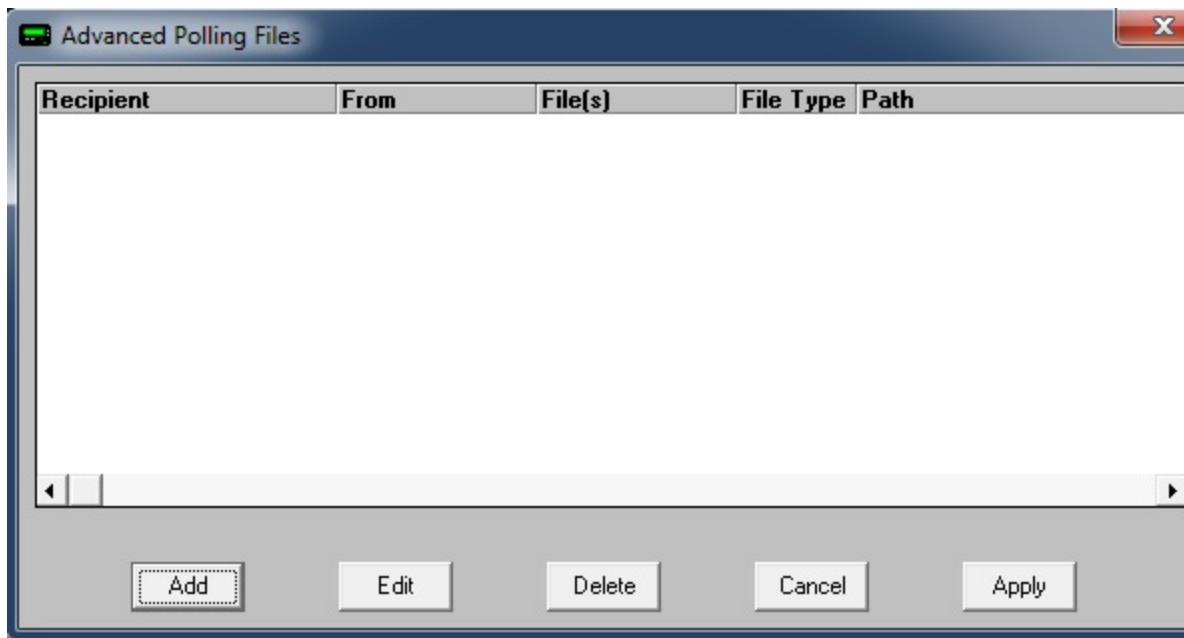
Single Character Wildcard	Matches any single character. The default Single Character Wildcard is ?
Multiple Character Wildcard	Matches any string of characters. The default Multiple Character Wildcard is *
End of Record Symbol	Matches the end of the file, or the end of the record (if a record has already been found). The Default End of Record Symbol is ~
Ascii Value	Designates that the next 3 characters are numbers and are the decimal

Delimiter	value of a character (i.e. \013 = carriage-return, \092 = backslash)
Start Pattern	The pattern of characters that, if found, designate the start of the data being looked for. If a match is found, the extracted data will start with the first character in the Start Pattern.
Start Offset	The number of characters to skip over at the beginning of the data, after a match has been found. Negative numbers can be used to include characters before the Start Pattern position (see special note below for -999 value)
End Pattern	The pattern of characters that, if found, designate the end of the data being looked for. If a match is found, the extracted data will end with the last character in the End Pattern string.
End Offset	The number of characters to include, past the end of the data, after a match has been found. Negative numbers can be used to skip characters before the End Pattern position (see special note below for -999 value)
Lookup Table	After valid data has been found, the Lookup Table feature can be used to change that data. Patterns are looked for, and then replaced with new text. The Single Character Wildcard, Multiple Character Wildcard, and Ascii Value Delimiter, can all be used for the Data In field (search pattern).

Note: the value -999 has special meaning, and is typically used in conjunction with the use of the Multiple Character Wildcard in the search strings.

If -999 is used as a Start Offset, an offset of one character past the string that matches the start pattern, is used. This will cause the number of characters that were found to match the Start Pattern, to be skipped, even though the actual number of characters in the Start Pattern matching string aren't know ahead of time.

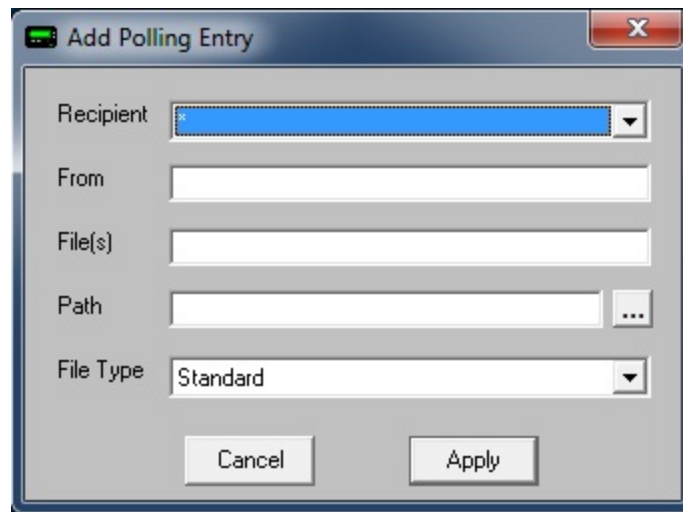
If -999 is used as an End Offset, an offset of one character before the string that matches the end pattern, is used. This will cause the number of characters that were found to match the End Pattern, to be skipped, even though the actual number of characters in the End Pattern matching string aren't know ahead of time.



The files sub-section of the Advanced Polling option is for determining additional polling directories, custom file types, and other information. As shown above, the five options are Add, Edit, Delete, Cancel, and Apply.

Option	Function
Add	Adds a new Advanced Polling rule.
Edit	Edits an existing Advanced Polling rule
Delete	Removes an existing Advanced Polling rule.
Cancel	Cancels all recent changes.
Apply	Applies new changes and rules.

To add an Advanced Polling Files option, click on the Add button. You should then receive this prompt:



Setting	Function
Recipient	By default, this field is set to all recipients (*). If the asterisk option (*) is used, the message's recipient and from fields are extracted from the polled file. If a recipient's name is used, any messages contained in the specified files described in the 'File(s)' and 'Path' fields are sent to this recipient.
From	This field is only used when a specific recipient or group is specified in the Recipient field. If a specific recipient is used in the recipient field above, the 'From' field becomes part of each message collected by this polling entry.
File(s)	This field is used to describe what files are polled by this entry. Wildcard characters (* and ?) may be used. For example, an entry of *.txt will poll all files that end with .txt whereas an entry of ?at will collect files like cat, bat, and rat, but not 'flat'.
Path	<p>This field specifies the location this GetAscii polling entry will monitor for ascii files to be processed. It can be set to a local path (c:\ascii\, for example) or a UNC path (\\server\path\). Wildcard characters are not valid in this field.</p> <p>This field has no bearing on the actual polling directory specified in the base settings of the GetAscii module.</p>
File Type	There are four options for the file type of each Advanced Polling rule:

Standard: The text file is in the standard ascii format (refer to the What is Ascii? section for more detail). This is option is usually used when files are in the standard ascii format, but aren't named with the standard .asc extension, or are in a directory other than the main GetAscii polling directory. When the Standard file type is selected, the other Advanced Polling options (Symbols, Record, Recipient, Sender, and Message) are not used.

Custom: When the Custom file type is selected, the other Advanced Polling options (Symbols, Record, Recipient, Sender, and Message) are used. Each text file must contain a single message, but the message information is not in the regular format and must be extracted from the text file using the Symbols, Record, Recipient, Sender, and Message options.

Adding: The ascii file specified by the File(s) field periodically has message information added to the end of the file. With this file type the GetAscii Interface will read in any new data added to the file and extract the message information using the Symbols, Record, Recipient, Sender, and Message options.

Changing: The ascii file changes periodically. Each time the file specified in the File(s) field is changed, the GetAscii Interface will attempt to extract message information from it using the Symbols, Record, Recipient, Sender, and Message options. This option is different from Adding because the Adding option only looks at the end of the file specified. The Changing option assumes the entire file will be modified, not appended to.

[Symbols](#)[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Setting	Function	
Single Character Wildcard	When searching for pattern matches in ascii files, this character can be used to stand in for any single character.	
Multiple Character Wildcard	When searching for pattern matches in ascii files, this character can be used to stand in for any character or group of characters.	
End of Record Symbol	This character stands for the end of the record. It is usually used as the ending pattern of the data being polled from the ascii file.	
Ascii Value Delimiter	This symbol is used to help represent characters that normally can't be typed. This character is always followed three numbers which represent the decimal value for a character. For example, this represents a carriage-return: \013	
Apply	Applies all changes made to the Symbols.	

Single Character Wildcard ?

Multiple Character Wildcard *

End Of Record Symbol ~

Ascii Value Delimiter \

Apply

Record

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Setting	Function	
Start Pattern	This is the pattern that determines the beginning of a data record within the ascii file being processed. In the image shown right, ???/??? would indicate that a date would be the beginning of the data record.	
Start Offset	This value determines where the actual data record starts. It does so by determining how many characters before or after the start pattern to begin. This field can be set to positive or negative values. For example, a value of -8 means that GetAscii will begin the data record 8	

Start Pattern ???/???

Start Offset 0

End Pattern \013

End Offset 0

Apply

	characters before the end of the start pattern. A value of 8 means that GetAscii will begin the data record 8 characters after the end of the start pattern.	
End Pattern	This value determines the end of a record. If this pattern is set to theEnd Of Record symbol, the end of the record will be assumed to be the end of the text file.	
End Offset	This value determines where the actual data record ends. It does so by determining how many characters before or after the end pattern to stop. This field can be set to positive or negative values. For example, a value of -8 means that GetAscii will end the data record 8 characters before the end of the end pattern. A value of 8 means that GetAscii will end the data record 8 characters after the end of the end pattern.	
Apply	Saves all changes made to the Record	

Recipient[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The screenshot shows a dialog box for configuring recipients. It has two radio buttons: 'Static Recipient' and 'Dynamic Recipient'. The 'Dynamic Recipient' option is selected. Below the radio buttons, there are four text input fields: 'Start Pattern' (containing '*'), 'Start Offset' (containing '0'), 'End Pattern' (containing '~'), and 'End Offset' (containing '0'). Below these fields is a checkbox labeled 'Use Lookup Table' which is unchecked. To the right of the checkbox is a button labeled 'Edit Table'. At the bottom of the dialog is a button labeled 'Apply'.

The Recipient portion of the Advanced Polling settings has two options:

The first option, Static Recipient, allows you to specify a single recipient or group that all files processed with the Advanced Polling options

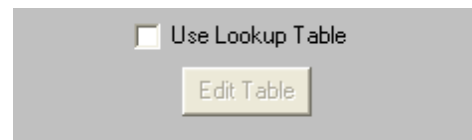
This screenshot shows the 'Static Recipient' option selected. Below the radio button is a text input field labeled 'Recipient' which has a dropdown arrow. A list is displayed below the field, containing the text 'developer', 'salesman', and 'tech'.

The second option, Dynamic Recipient, tells the GetAscii module to look for specific patterns that denote where the recipient information is located within the ascii file to be processed.

This screenshot shows the 'Dynamic Recipient' option selected. Below the radio button are four text input fields: 'Start Pattern' (containing '*'), 'Start Offset' (containing '0'), 'End Pattern' (containing '~'), and 'End Offset' (containing '0').

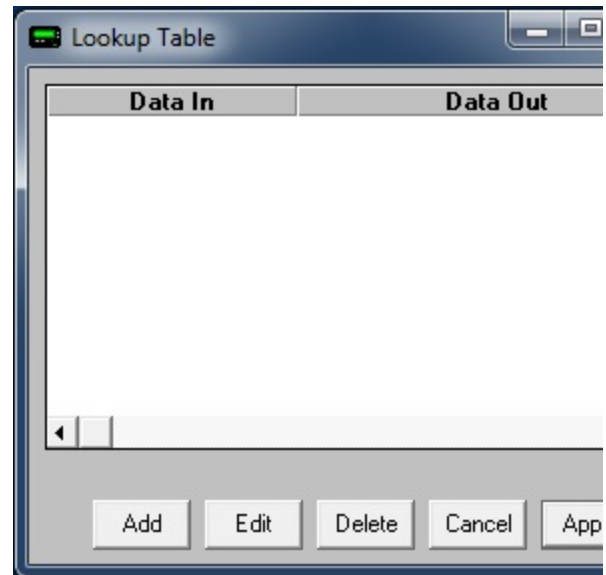
For information about the Use Lookup Table option, please see the Lookup Tables portion of the manual.

To use the lookup table function, place a check mark in "Use Lookup Table" and click on Edit Table.



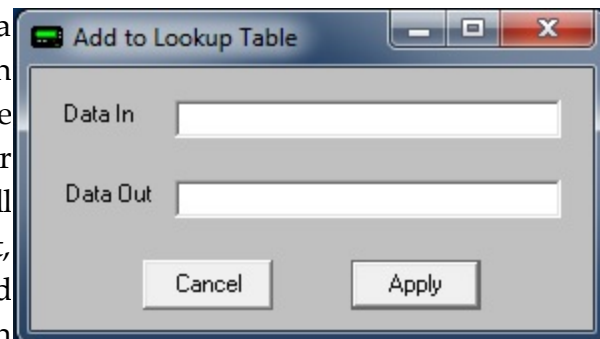
By clicking on Edit Table, you will be prompted with the dialog shown right. The lookup table option allows pre-set text to be substituted for the actual text found within the ascii file to be polled. This is especially useful if codes are used in the text.

For example, if the text within the ascii file to be polled contains numbers to signify what pager should get the message, the lookup table could have a list of these numbers and automatically replace the numbers with the the recipient name for successful processing.



As shown right, the five options are Add, Edit, Delete, Cancel, and Apply.

By clicking on Add in the Lookup Table dialog, you will be prompted for the Data In and Data Out variables. Type the search string into Data In and type the replacement string in Data Out. For example, if you wanted to replace all instances of the word apple with donut, you would type apple in the Data In field and donut in the Data Out field. Click on Apply to save your changes.

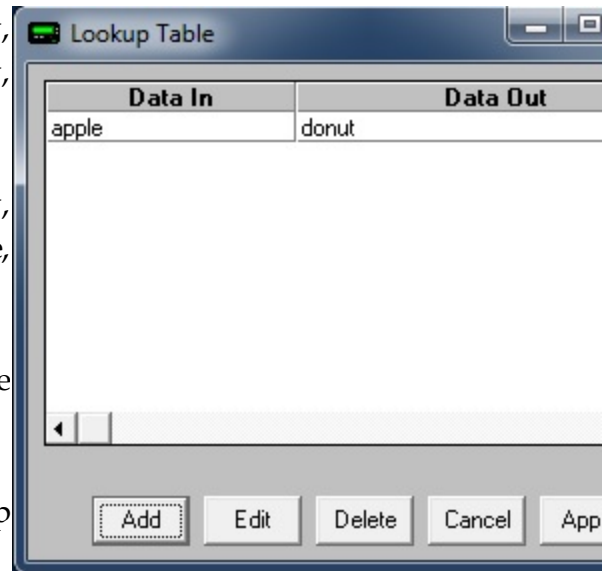


To edit an existing Lookup Table entry, highlight the entry you wish to modify, then click on Edit.

To remove an existing Lookup Table entry, highlight the entry you wish to remove, click click on Delete.

To cancel any recent changes to the Lookup Table, click on Cancel.

To save any recent changes to the Lookup Table, click on Apply.



Sender

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

☐ Static Sender

Sender

☒ Dynamic Sender

Start Pattern

Start Offset

End Pattern

End Offset

☐ Use Lookup Table

The Sender portion of the Advanced Polling settings has two options:

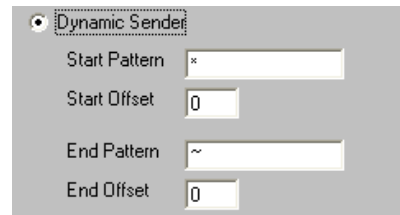
The first option, Static Sender, allows you to type in the name of the Sender. This information will be used for all messages processed by the Advanced Polling

☒ Static Sender

Sender

options.

The second option, Dynamic Sender, tells the GetAscii module to look for specific patterns that denote where the sender's information is located within the ascii file to be processed.

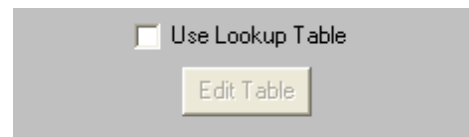
A configuration dialog for the 'Dynamic Sender' option. It has a radio button selected next to 'Dynamic Sender'. Below it are four input fields: 'Start Pattern' with the value 'x', 'Start Offset' with the value '0', 'End Pattern' with the value '~', and 'End Offset' with the value '0'.

For information about the Use Lookup Table option, please see the Lookup Tables portion of the manual.

Lookup Table

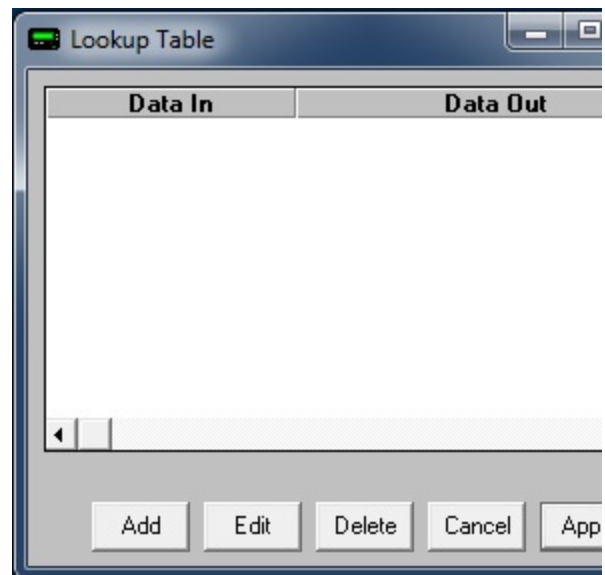
[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

To use the lookup table function, place a check mark in "Use Lookup Table" and click on Edit Table.

A section containing a checkbox labeled 'Use Lookup Table' which is currently unchecked. Below the checkbox is a button labeled 'Edit Table'.

By clicking on Edit Table, you will be prompted with the dialog shown right. The lookup table option allows pre-set text to be substituted for the actual text found within the ascii file to be polled. This is especially useful if codes are used in the text.

For example, if the text within the ascii file to be polled contains numbers to signify what pager should get the message, the lookup table could have a list of these numbers and automatically replace the numbers with the the recipient name for successful processing.

A dialog window titled 'Lookup Table'. It has two tabs: 'Data In' and 'Data Out'. The 'Data In' tab is currently selected and is empty. The 'Data Out' tab is also empty. At the bottom of the dialog are five buttons: 'Add', 'Edit', 'Delete', 'Cancel', and 'App'.

As shown right, the five options are Add, Edit, Delete, Cancel, and Apply.

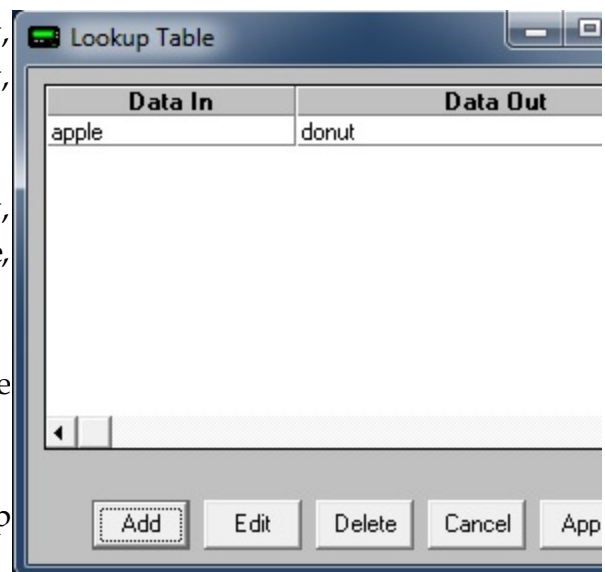
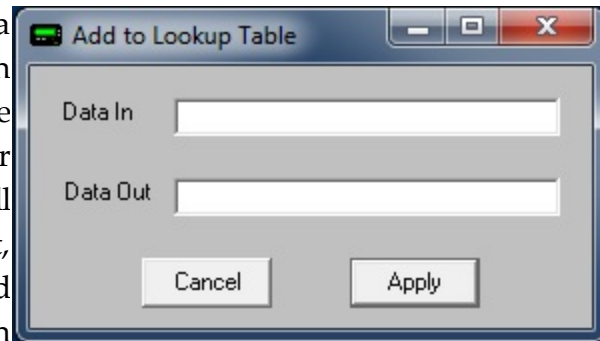
By clicking on Add in the Lookup Table dialog, you will be prompted for the Data In and Data Out variables. Type the search string into Data In and type the replacement string in Data Out. For example, if you wanted to replace all instances of the word apple with donut, you would type apple in the Data In field and donut in the Data Out field. Click on Apply to save your changes.

To edit an existing Lookup Table entry, highlight the entry you wish to modify, then click on Edit.

To remove an existing Lookup Table entry, highlight the entry you wish to remove, click click on Delete.

To cancel any recent changes to the Lookup Table, click on Cancel.

To save any recent changes to the Lookup Table, click on Apply.



Message

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The screenshot shows a configuration window with two radio buttons: "Static Message" and "Dynamic Message". The "Dynamic Message" option is selected. Below the radio buttons, there are four text input fields: "Message" (empty), "Start Pattern" (containing "*"), "Start Offset" (containing "0"), "End Pattern" (containing "~"), and "End Offset" (containing "0"). Below these fields is a checkbox labeled "Use Lookup Table" which is unchecked. At the bottom of the window are two buttons: "Edit Table" and "Apply".

The Message portion of the Advanced Polling settings has two options:

The first option, Static Message, allows you to type in the exact message to be sent.. This information will be used for all ascii files processed by the Advanced Polling options.

This screenshot shows the "Static Message" configuration option selected. It features a single text input field labeled "Message" which is currently empty.

The second option, Dynamic Message, tells the GetAscii module to look for specific patterns that denote where the message is located within the ascii file to be processed.

This screenshot shows the "Dynamic Message" configuration option selected. It includes four text input fields: "Start Pattern" (with "*"), "Start Offset" (with "0"), "End Pattern" (with "~"), and "End Offset" (with "0").

For information about the Use Lookup Table option, please see the Lookup Tables portion of the manual.

Lookup Table

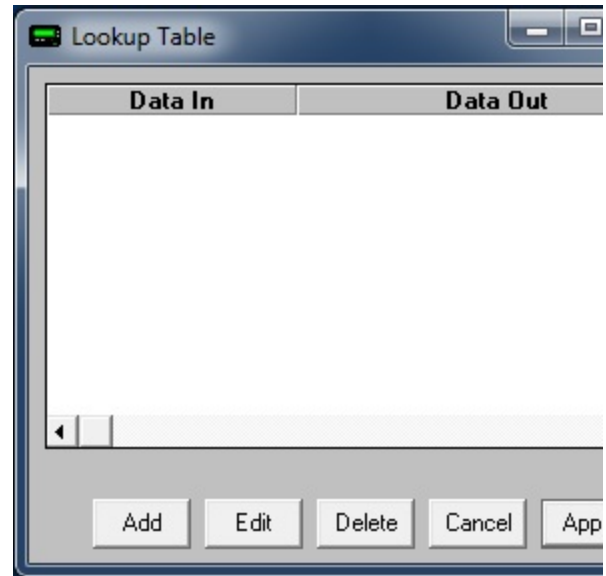
[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

To use the lookup table function, place a check mark in "Use Lookup Table" and click on Edit Table.

This screenshot shows a checkbox labeled "Use Lookup Table" which is currently unchecked. Below the checkbox is a button labeled "Edit Table".

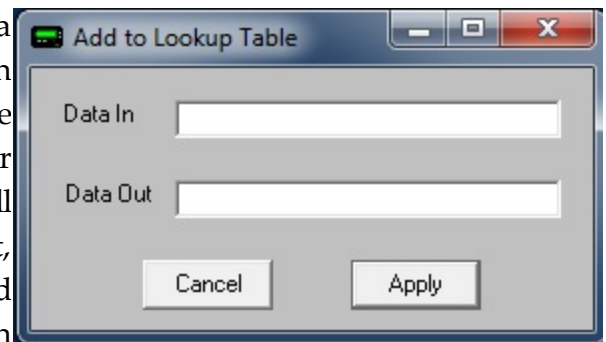
By clicking on Edit Table, you will be prompted with the dialog shown right. The lookup table option allows pre-set text to be substituted for the actual text found within the ascii file to be polled. This is especially useful if codes are used in the text.

For example, if the text within the ascii file to be polled contains numbers to signify what pager should get the message, the lookup table could have a list of these numbers and automatically replace the numbers with the the recipient name for successful processing.



As shown right, the five options are Add, Edit, Delete, Cancel, and Apply.

By clicking on Add in the Lookup Table dialog, you will be prompted for the Data In and Data Out variables. Type the search string into Data In and type the replacement string in Data Out. For example, if you wanted to replace all instances of the word apple with donut, you would type apple in the Data In field and donut in the Data Out field. Click on Apply to save your changes.

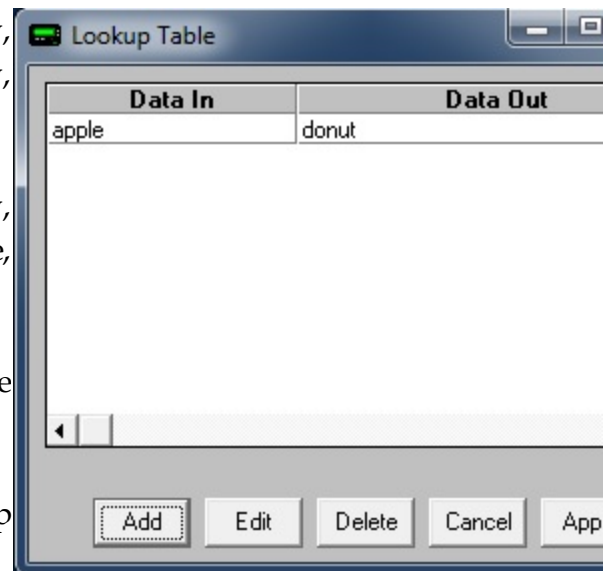


To edit an existing Lookup Table entry, highlight the entry you wish to modify, then click on Edit.

To remove an existing Lookup Table entry, highlight the entry you wish to remove, click click on Delete.

To cancel any recent changes to the Lookup Table, click on Cancel.

To save any recent changes to the Lookup Table, click on Apply.



3.3.5.1.3 Template

GetAscii Template

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Please see the Interface Templates portion of the manual.

3.3.5.1.4 Status

Status

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The status subsection of GetAscii will show you if the GetAscii module is currently running or stopped. There are two ways to start the module:

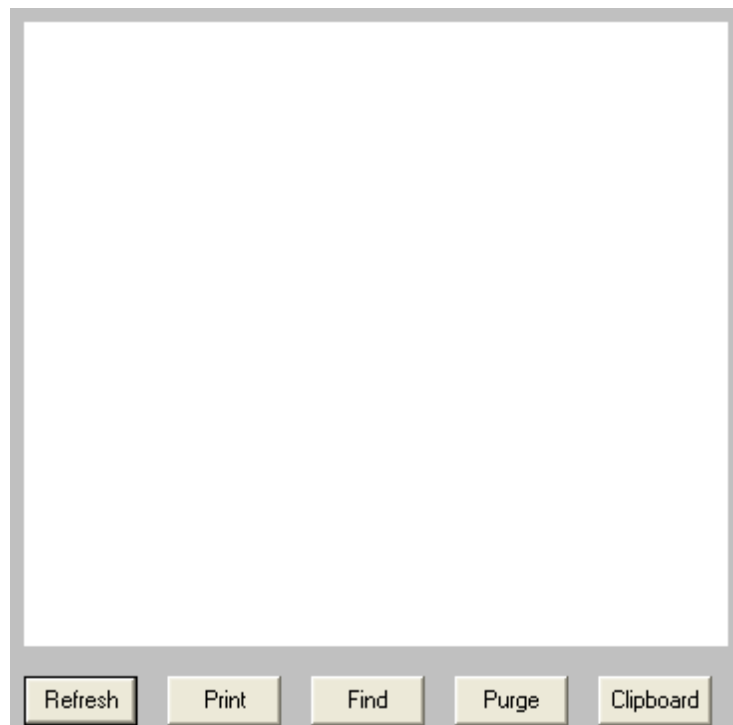
- 1) Restart the PageGate Server.
- 2) To manually stop or start the GetAscii module, right click on the word GetAscii under the Interfaces section. When you do, it will come up with the Start and Stop options.



3.3.5.1.5 Log

Log

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



If logging is enabled, this log shows a summary of the events generated by the GetAscii Module. The GetAscii Log section of the Admin has five buttons:

Refresh	Displays the most current entries in the global log.
Print	Sends a copy of everything listed in the Scheduler Log to a printer.
Find	Allows you to search for a variable (such as a carrier or recipient name).
Purge	Deletes the entirety of the GetAscii Log.
Clipboard	Copies the contents of the GetAscii Log to the Windows Clipboard, allowing it to be pasted into another application.

3.3.5.1.6 Command Line Interface

Command Line Interface

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Command Line Interface function of GetAscii can be used to send messages to PageGate from:

DOS Command Line	Messages can be sent from a DOS prompt
Windows Command Line	Messages can be sent from the Windows Run menu.
Third Party Applications	Messages can be sent from any application that can issue a command line command (shell command)
Custom Applications	This is a popular interface for developers who want an easy way to add paging to their application.

The most basic components of the Command Line interface are the sendpage.exe and sendpage32.exe files. These files are created in the Polling Directory specified in the base settings of the GetAscii module.

The difference between the sendpage.exe and sendpage32.exe files is that the sendpage.exe is intended to be run from a DOS Command Line or by 16-bit applications.

The sendpage32.exe is a 32-bit program. This means that it to execute it from within some 32-bit applications that are unable to run 16-bit programs. This also means that it may be unable to be executed from some 16-bit applications.

An advantage of using sendpage32.exe over sendpage.exe is that sendpage32.exe may be able to accept more characters on it's command line. Due to a DOS/Windows limitation, sendpage.exe can only accept 128 characters.

The syntax and structure of the command line is as follows:

```
sendpage.exe <recipient> <sender> <message>
```

In the example above, <recipient> should be replaced with the intended recipient's name. This **must** match the recipient field.

<sender> should be replaced with who is sending the message and should never be left blank.

<message> should be replaced with the actual message text and should never be left blank.

3.3.5.2 GetMail

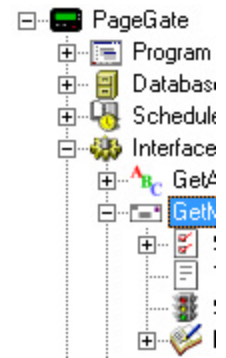
GetMail

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The GetMail subsection of the PageGate Admin is found beneath the Interfaces object (shown right) and contains settings and information that relate to the functionality and performance of the GetMail module.

By clicking on the + next to GetMail, it will expand the following sub-sections:

- Settings
- Status
- Log



3.3.5.2.1 Overview

Overview

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

PageGate has email functionality built directly into the GetMail module. The GetMail module enables PageGate to act as an email to pager gateway. When acting as an email to pager gateway, PageGate can send the from field, subject line, and body of an email message directly to a pager or other wireless messaging device.

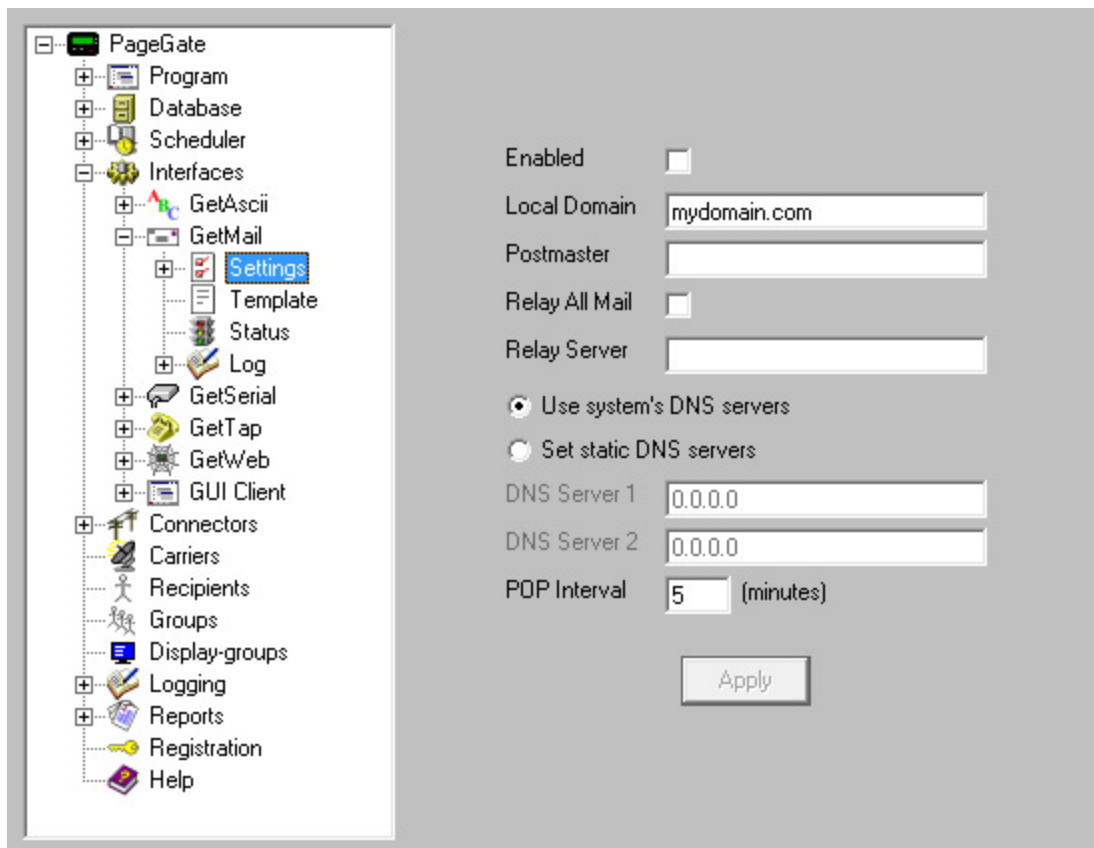
Note: Attachments such as graphics, etc. are ignored.

Optionally, a copy of each message received by PageGate (on any of its interfaces) can be forwarded to an additional email address, for each recipient.

3.3.5.2.2 Settings

Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



Setting	Function
Enabled	When the Enabled checkbox is checked, it tells the PageGate server to run the GetMail module. If the Enabled option is greyed out, please enable the master setting for GetMail in the Program Settings.
Local Domain	<p>This is a multi-purpose field. If the GetMail module is only being configured to send or check email, this field needs to be the sending domain. For example, if your email address was support@notepage.com, you would put notepage.com in the Local Domain as that is the domain the messages are being sent from.</p> <p>If the GetMail module is being configured to function as a POP3 server, the Local Domain needs to be set to the domain used by PageGate when receiving email. This is an internet domain name, not a Microsoft networking domain. Only email with an address in this domain will be accepted</p>

	by PageGate. This setting must be a valid domain name for to work properly (Note: an IP address can be used here instead of a domain name, if email is addressed to match. This is commonly done during testing when a domain name has not yet been assigned to this machine).
Postmaster	The Postmaster setting needs to be set to a valid email address. This email address is sent all warnings, alerts, and bad messages generated by the GetMail module. Leaving this field blank will drop all messages that would normally go to the postmaster. The Postmaster setting is also used when no valid Sender's Information is present in an outbound email message.
Relay All Mail	This option should only be checked if port 25 is not open on your network. To determine whether port 25 is open or closed on your network, please run a Port Scan.
Relay Server	This field allows you to specify a relay server for SMTP messages to be routed through. This option should only be used if port 25 is not open on your network. To determine whether port 25 is open or closed on your network, please run a Port Scan.
DNS Server 1	This field allows you to specify the primary DNS server for SMTP delivery and is only valid if port 25 is open on your network. To determine whether port 25 is open or closed on your network, please run a Port Scan.
DNS Server 2	This field allows you to specify the secondary DNS server for SMTP delivery and is only valid if port 25 is open on your network. To determine whether port 25 is open or closed on your network, please run a Port Scan.
POP Interval	If any of the GetMail Module's POP functions are used, this setting determines how often (in minutes) their processes occur.

By clicking the + next to Settings, it will expand the three sub-sections: Ad-Hoc, Domain POP, and DUN

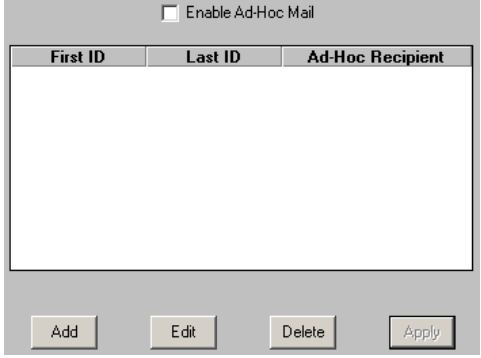
3.3.5.2.2.1 AdHoc

AdHoc

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

PageGate can handle Ad-Hoc email in two ways, both of which can be used separately or together:

- The first method is to accept email addressed to the ID/PIN number that the message should use for delivery (i.e. 1234567@pagingserver.com).
- The second method is to have the Ad-Hoc Email function accept incoming email with the ID/PIN numbers of the intended destination device on the subject line.



The screenshot shows a window titled "Enable Ad-Hoc Mail". At the top, there is a checkbox labeled "Enable Ad-Hoc Mail". Below this is a table with three columns: "First ID", "Last ID", and "Ad-Hoc Recipient". The table is currently empty. At the bottom of the window, there are four buttons: "Add", "Edit", "Delete", and "Apply".

For detailed information regarding the first method, please refer to the Method 1 sub-section of the Ad-Hoc documentation.

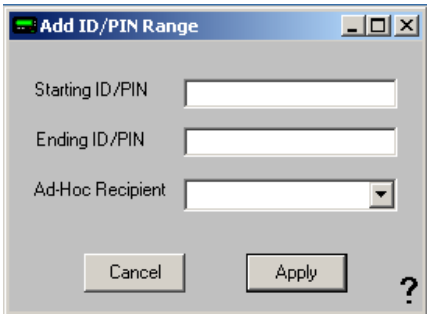
For detailed information regarding the second method, please refer to the Method 2 sub-section of the Ad-Hoc documentation.

Method 1

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

To configure the Ad-Hoc GetMail function to accept messages addressed to the device you wish to contact:

- 1) Create a new recipient and set its Type to Ad-Hoc.
- 2) Make sure that GetMail is checked under the Enabled Services section of the recipient.
- 3) Select the carrier that messages addressed to your paging recipients should be sent to via the Ad-Hoc function.
- 4) Once the Recipient has been configured, put a check



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add ID/PIN Range". It contains three input fields: "Starting ID/PIN", "Ending ID/PIN", and "Ad-Hoc Recipient" (which is a dropdown menu). At the bottom, there are two buttons: "Cancel" and "Apply". A question mark icon is located in the bottom right corner.

in "Enable Ad-Hoc Mail".

- 5) Click on the Add button.
- 6) Enter the Starting ID/PIN.
- 7) Enter the Ending ID/PIN.
- 8) Select an Ad-Hoc Recipient from the drop-down menu.
- 9) Click on Apply.

To use this method with email, simply address an email message to the PageGate Server's Local Domain with an ID/PIN number (within the range set in steps 6 and 7 above) as the part of the email address before the @ (i.e. 1234567@mypagegateserver.com).

Method 2

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

To set up the GetMail module to accept email with the ID/PIN numbers on the subject line of incoming email:

- 1) Create a new recipient and set its Type to 'Ad-Hoc'.
- 2) Make sure that GetMail is checked under the Enabled Services section of the recipient.
- 3) Select the carrier that messages addressed to this recipient should be sent to.

To use this new ad-hoc recipient account via email, send email addressed to the ad-hoc recipient (recipientname@localdomain.com) and in the subject line enter one or more ID/PIN numbers (separated by spaces or commas).

PageGate will then use the carrier associated with this ad-hoc recipient to deliver a copy of the email message to each ID/PIN number on the subject line

of the email.

3.3.5.2.2.2 Domain POP

Domain POP

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

PageGate can collect all email for an entire domain from a single mailbox. Most Internet Service Providers have the ability to put all email addressed to your domain into a single POP mailbox. This is commonly known as 'Domain POP Mail' or 'Mailbagging'.

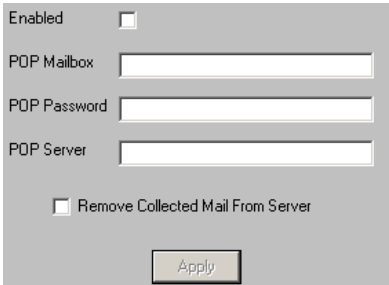
It works well with Dial-Up Internet connections or Internet connections that don't have a static IP address.

PageGate will try to collect mail from the mailbox according to the POP Interval. Once the messages have been retrieved, PageGate will sort them into local mailboxes that must be set up.

This setup can be used to give the appearance of having a dedicated, in-house mail server to both the workstations on your local area network and the Internet.

To configure the Domain POP section of PageGate:

- 1) Obtain a registered domain name. This can generally be done by contacting your Internet Service Provider or a Domain Hosting Site.
- 2) Have the host of your registered domain name set up mailbagging (domain pop mail)
- 3) If you will be using Dial-Up Networking to connect to the Internet, see the DUN section of the manual.
- 4) Check Enabled in the Domain POP section of the GetMail Settings.
- 5) Enter the name of the mailbox your ISP has configured. Note: Do not include the @domain.com part in the 'POP Mailbox' field.



The screenshot shows a configuration window for Domain POP. It has a title bar and a light gray background. The settings are as follows:

- Enabled:** A checkbox that is currently unchecked.
- POP Mailbox:** A text input field.
- POP Password:** A text input field.
- POP Server:** A text input field.
- Remove Collected Mail From Server:** A checkbox that is currently unchecked.
- Apply:** A button located at the bottom right of the window.

- 6) Enter the password to access the mailbox in the POP Password field.
- 7) Enter the name of the mail server in the POP Server field. Note: The POP Server is the portion of the address after the @ symbol. Do not include the @ symbol.
- 8) If you want PageGate to remove collected messages from the Domain POP Email Account, put a check in "Remove Collected Mail From Server".
- 9) Click on Apply.
- 10) Set up one or more recipients in PageGate. By default, the recipient's name will be the name of their email address.

3.3.5.2.2.3 DUN

DUN

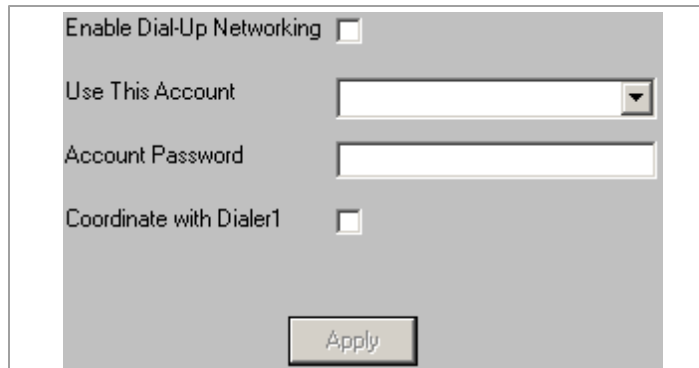
[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

DUN is an acronym for Dial-Up Networking.

PageGate can use the Dial-Up Networking function of Windows to connect to the Internet for collecting email. A Dial-Up Networking Connection must first be setup within the operating system in order for this to work.

When the DUN portion of the GetMail Settings is enabled, the POP Interval setting will be used to determine how often PageGate will connect to the Internet to collect email. After PageGate is done receiving messages from the email account(s), it will automatically disconnect from the Internet and wait for the next POP Interval.

If the Dial-Up Networking account is already connected when the POP Interval happens, PageGate will use the current connection but will not disconnect when finished. Basically, PageGate assumes that another application is controlling the Dial-Up session and will not interfere with it.



Setting	Function
Enable Dial-Up Networking	This option enables and disables the Dial-Up Network portion of PageGate's GetMail module.
Use This Account	An existing Dial-Up networking connection must be configured in Windows before this setting can be used. Select a Dial-Up networking connection from the drop-down list.
Account Password	Enter the password required by the selected Dial-Up Networking connection.
Coordinate with Connector1	If you don't have access to multiple modems and require the primary Connector to function in tandem with the Dial-Up Networking portion of PageGate, place a check here.

3.3.5.2.3 Template

GetMail Template

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Please see the Interface Templates portion of the manual.

3.3.5.2.4 Status

Status

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The status subsection of GetMail will show you if the GetMail module is currently running or stopped. There are two ways to start the module:

- 1) Restart the PageGate Server.



- 2) To manually stop or start the GetMail module, right click on the word GetMail under the Interfaces section. When you do, it will come up with the Start and Stop options.

3.3.5.2.5 Log

Log

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Please see the GetMail portion of the Logging documentation.

3.3.5.3 GetSerial

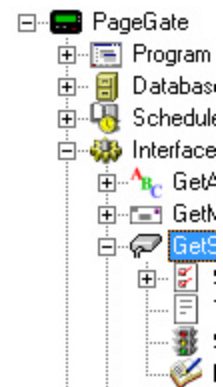
GetSerial

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The GetSerial subsection of the PageGate Admin is found beneath the Interfaces object (shown right) and contains settings and information that relate to the functionality and performance of the GetSerial module.

By clicking on the + next to GetSerial, it will expand the following sub-sections:

- Settings
- Status
- Log



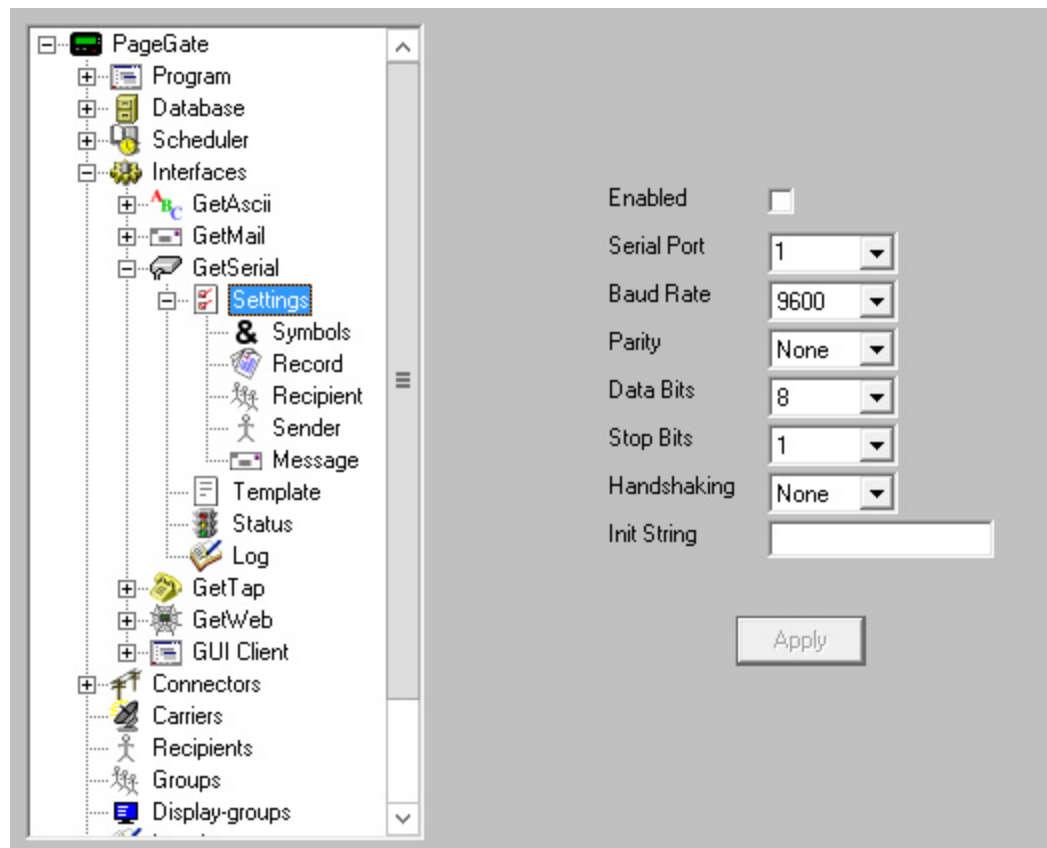
In addition to the interface presented in the PageGate Admin, the GetAscii module comes with a command line interface, allowing other programs to pass parameters to the GetAscii module to create messages. For more information, please see the Command Line Interface section of the manual.

NOTE: For more information regarding the fundamentals of Ascii, please see the "What is Ascii?" section of the manual.

3.3.5.3.1 Settings

Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



Setting	Function
Enabled	When the Enabled checkbox is checked, it tells the PageGate server to run the GetSerial module. If the Enabled option is greyed out, please enable the master setting for GetSerial in the Program Settings.
Serial Port	This field determines the Communications (COM) Port the GetSerial module will monitor for incoming data.
Baud Rate	This setting must match the Baud Rate the sending device uses.
Parity	This setting must match the Baud Rate the sending device uses.
Data Bits	This setting must match the Baud Rate the sending device uses.
Stop Bits	This setting must match the Baud Rate the sending device uses.
Handshaking	If the sending device uses handshaking for flow control, GetSerial must mirror the handshaking method (Xon/Xoff or RTS). If the sending device does not use handshaking, this field must be set to None.

Init String	Init strings are not typically used with Serial Connections but may be used if a modem is attached to the same COM port specified in the Serial Port setting.
-------------	---

By clicking on the + next to Settings, the following sub-sections are expanded:

Symbols, Record, Recipient, Sender, and Message

3.3.5.3.1.1 Symbols

Symbols

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Setting	Function	
Single Character Wildcard	When searching for pattern matches in ascii files, this character can be used to stand in for any single character.	
Multiple Character Wildcard	When searching for pattern matches in ascii files, this character can be used to stand in for any character or group of characters.	
End of Record Symbol	This character stands for the end of the record. It is usually used as the ending pattern of the data being polled from the ascii file.	
Ascii Value Delimiter	This symbol is used to help represent characters that normally can't be typed. This character is always followed three numbers which represent the decimal value for a character. For example, this represents a carriage-return: \013	
Apply	Applies all changes made to the Symbols.	

Single Character Wildcard
Multiple Character Wildcard
End Of Record Symbol
Ascii Value Delimiter

Apply

3.3.5.3.1.2 Record

Record[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Setting	Function	
Start Pattern	This is the pattern that determines the beginning of a data record within the data being processed. In the image shown right, ??/??/?? would indicate that a date would be the beginning of the data record.	
Start Offset	This value determines where the actual data record starts. It does so by determining how many characters before or after the start pattern to begin. This field can be set to positive or negative values. For example, a value of -8 means that GetSerial will begin the data record 8 characters before the end of the start pattern. A value of 8 means that GetSerial will begin the data record 8 characters after the end of the start pattern.	
End Pattern	This value determines the end of a record. If this pattern is set to theEnd Of Record symbol, the end of the record will be assumed to be the end of the data stream.	
End Offset	This value determines where the actual data record ends. It does so by determining how many characters before or after the end pattern to stop. This field can be set to positive or negative values. For example, a value of -8 means that GetSerial will end the data record 8 characters before the end of the end pattern. A value of 8 means that GetSerial will end the data record 8 characters after the end of the end pattern.	
Apply	Saves all changes made to the Record	

Start Pattern

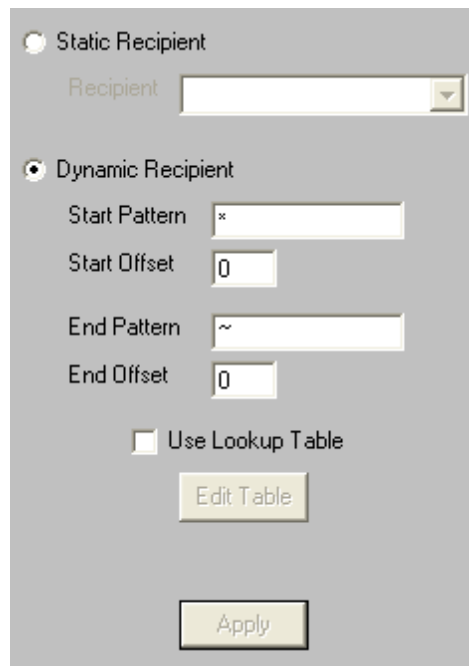
Start Offset

End Pattern

End Offset

3.3.5.3.1.3 Recipient

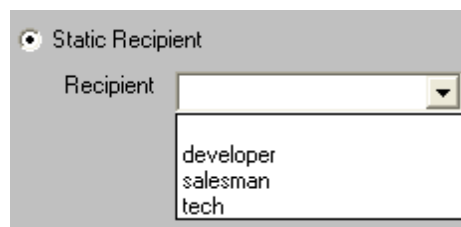
Recipient

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The screenshot shows the 'Recipient' settings dialog box. It has two radio buttons: 'Static Recipient' and 'Dynamic Recipient'. The 'Dynamic Recipient' option is selected. Below the radio buttons, there are four text input fields: 'Start Pattern' (containing '*'), 'Start Offset' (containing '0'), 'End Pattern' (containing '~'), and 'End Offset' (containing '0'). There is a checkbox labeled 'Use Lookup Table' which is unchecked. Below the checkbox is a button labeled 'Edit Table'. At the bottom of the dialog is a button labeled 'Apply'.

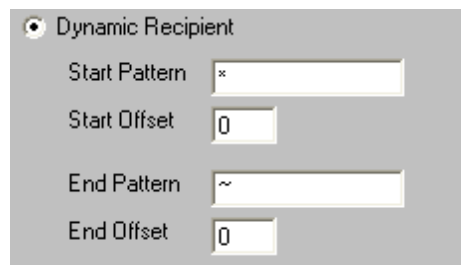
The Recipient portion of the GetSerial Settings settings has two options:

The first option, Static Recipient, allows you to specify a single recipient or group that all data processed by the GetSerial module.



This screenshot shows the 'Static Recipient' option selected. Below the radio button is a dropdown menu labeled 'Recipient'. The dropdown is open, showing a list of recipients: 'developer', 'salesman', and 'tech'.

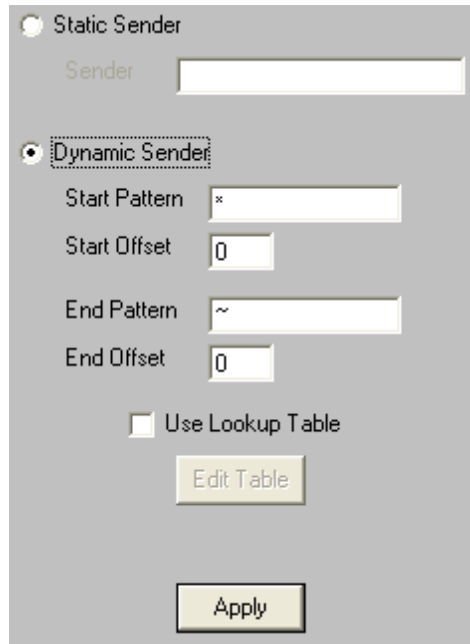
The second option, Dynamic Recipient, tells the GetSerial module to look for specific patterns that denote where the recipient information is located within the incoming data from the serial port.



This screenshot shows the 'Dynamic Recipient' option selected. Below the radio button are four text input fields: 'Start Pattern' (containing '*'), 'Start Offset' (containing '0'), 'End Pattern' (containing '~'), and 'End Offset' (containing '0').

For information about the Use Lookup Table option, please see the Lookup Tables portion of the manual.

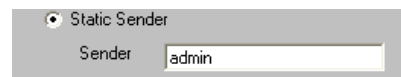
3.3.5.3.1.4 Sender

Sender[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The screenshot shows the 'Sender' configuration window. It has two radio buttons: 'Static Sender' and 'Dynamic Sender'. The 'Dynamic Sender' option is selected. Below it, there are four input fields: 'Start Pattern' with a value of '*', 'Start Offset' with a value of '0', 'End Pattern' with a value of '~', and 'End Offset' with a value of '0'. There is a checkbox labeled 'Use Lookup Table' which is unchecked. Below the checkbox is a button labeled 'Edit Table'. At the bottom of the window is a button labeled 'Apply'.

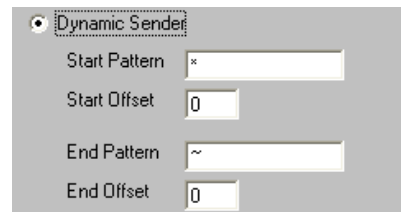
The Sender portion of the GetSerial Settings has two options:

The first option, Static Sender, allows you to type in the name of the Sender. This information will be used for all messages processed by the GetSerial Module.



This screenshot shows the 'Static Sender' configuration. The 'Static Sender' radio button is selected. Below it, the 'Sender' field contains the text 'admin'.

The second option, Dynamic Sender, tells the GetSerial module to look for specific patterns that denote where the sender's information is located within incoming data stream.

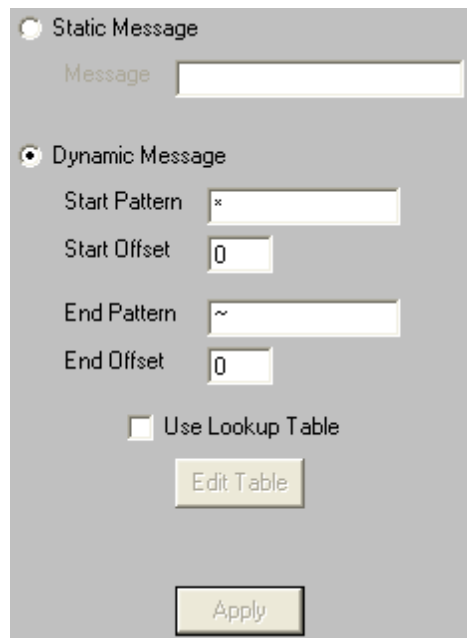


This screenshot shows the 'Dynamic Sender' configuration. The 'Dynamic Sender' radio button is selected. Below it, there are four input fields: 'Start Pattern' with a value of '*', 'Start Offset' with a value of '0', 'End Pattern' with a value of '~', and 'End Offset' with a value of '0'.

For information about the Use Lookup Table option, please see the Lookup Tables portion of the manual.

3.3.5.3.1.5 Message

Message[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



Static Message

Message

Dynamic Message

Start Pattern

Start Offset

End Pattern

End Offset

☐ Use Lookup Table

[Edit Table](#)

[Apply](#)

The Message portion of the GetSerial Settings has two options:

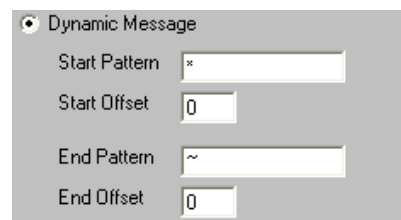
The first option, Static Message, allows you to type in the exact message to be sent.. This information will be used for pages generated by the GetSerial module.



Static Message

Message

The second option, Dynamic Message, tells the GetSerial Module to look for specific patterns that denote where the message is located within the data stream.



Dynamic Message

Start Pattern

Start Offset

End Pattern

End Offset

For information about the Use Lookup Table option, please see the Lookup Tables portion of the manual.

3.3.5.3.2 Template

GetSerial Template

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Please see the Interface Templates portion of the manual.

3.3.5.3.3 Status

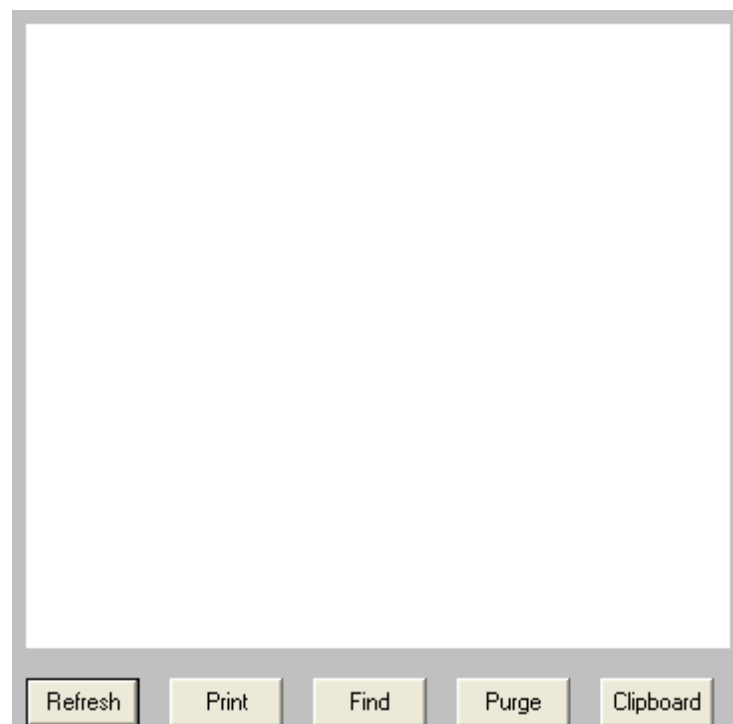
Status[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The status subsection of GetSerial will show you if the GetSerial module is currently running or stopped. There are two ways to start the module:

- 1) Restart the PageGate Server.
- 2) To manually stop or start the GetSerial module, right click on the word GetSerial under the Interfaces section. When you do, it will come up with the Start and Stop options.



3.3.5.3.4 Log

Log[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

If logging is enabled, this log shows a summary of the events generated by the GetSerial Module. The GetSerial Log section of the Admin has five buttons:

Refresh	Displays the most current entries in the global log.
Print	Sends a copy of everything listed in the GetSerial Log to a printer.
Find	Allows you to search for a variable (such as a carrier or recipient name).
Purge	Deletes the entirety of the GetSerial Log.
Clipboard	Copies the contents of the GetSerial Log to the Windows Clipboard, allowing it to be pasted into another application.

3.3.5.4 GetTap

GetTap

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The GetTap subsection of the PageGate Admin is found beneath the Interfaces object (shown right) and contains settings and information that relate to the functionality and performance of the GetTap module.

By clicking on the + next to GetTap, it will expand the following sub-sections:

- Settings
- Status
- Log



3.3.5.4.1 Overview

Overview

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The GetTap Interface is used to accept incoming messages via the TAP protocol. The GetTap interface accepts these message in one of two ways. It can accept the messages over a serial connection or it can accept incoming messages through a modem connected to the PageGate PC.

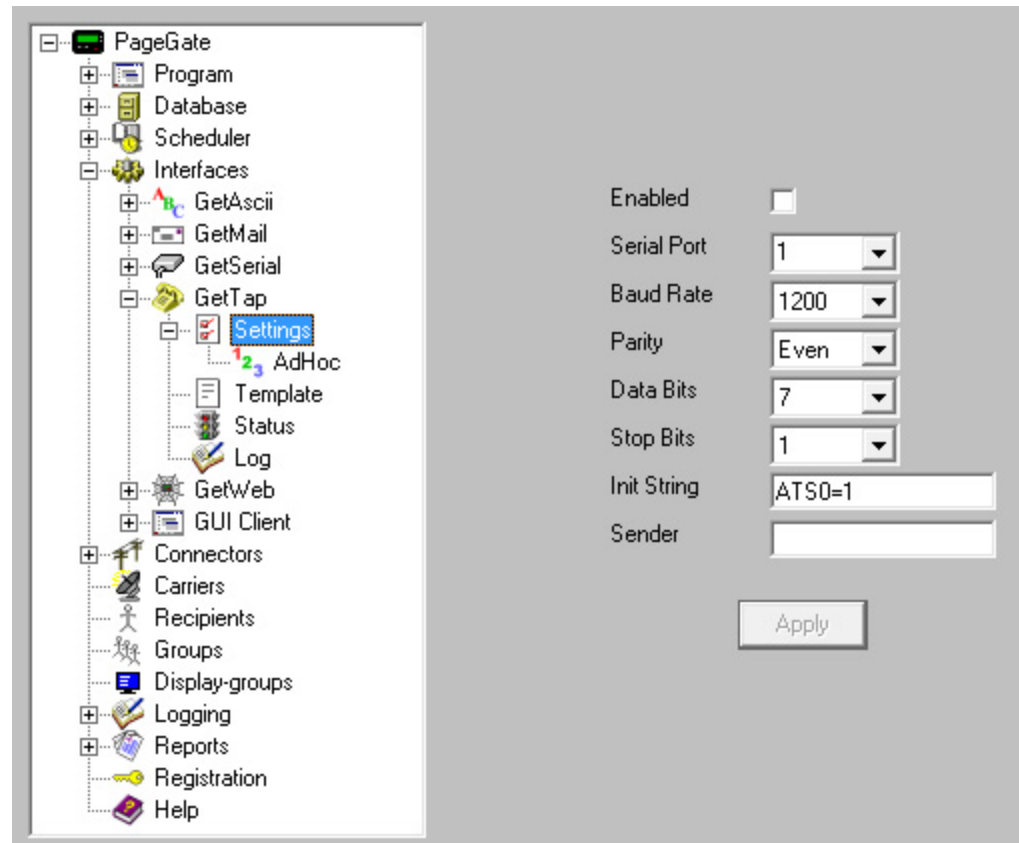
The TAP protocol is the most widely used text messaging protocol for serial and dialup connections. The GetTap Interface enables PageGate to accept in text messages from many sources and dispatch the messages back out to a different source.

Also, PageGate can act as a messaging gateway for TAP clients (such as NotePager32 and NotePager Pro), simplifying setup, logging, and providing a single connection for sending messages to a wide variety of carriers.

3.3.5.4.2 Settings

Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



Setting	Function
Enabled	When the Enabled checkbox is checked, it tells the PageGate server to run the GetTap module. If the Enabled option is greyed out, please enable the master setting for GetTap in the Program Settings.
Serial Port	This field determines the Communications (COM) Port the GetTap module will monitor for incoming data. This field can be set to use the COM port of a modem or a serial port.
Baud Rate	Choose the baud rate at which incoming connections will be established. By default, the baud rate is 1200.

Parity	Choose the parity with which incoming connections will be established. By default, the parity is even.
Data Bits	Choose the data bits the incoming connections will be established with. By default, the data bits is 7.
Stop Bits	Choose the stop bits the incoming connections will be established with. By default, the stop bits is 1.
Init String	<p>The init string is a set of commands sent to the modem to configure it for incoming calls. The init string also turns certain modem connection features on and off. For example, most systems using the TAP protocol communicate at 1200 baud with no error correction or data compression. By default, the Init String field is set to ATS0=1 - this init string resets the modem to factory defaults and sets the modem to answer on the first ring.</p> <p>If you specified a Serial Port connected directly to a serial cable, instead of a modem, please set the Init String field to the word 'direct' (without the quotes).</p>

3.3.5.4.2.1 AdHoc

AdHoc[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

- 1) Create a new recipient and set its Type to Ad-Hoc.
- 2) Make sure that GetAscii is checked under the Enabled Services section of the recipient.
- 3) Select the carrier that messages addressed to your paging recipients should be sent to via the Ad-Hoc function.
- 4) Once the Recipient has been configured, put a check in "Enable Ad-Hoc Tap".
- 5) Click on the Add button.

- 6) Enter the Starting ID/PIN.
- 7) Enter the Ending ID/PIN.
- 8) Select an Ad-Hoc Recipient from the drop-down menu.
- 9) Click on Apply.

3.3.5.4.3 Template

GetTAP Template

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Please see the Interface Templates portion of the manual.

3.3.5.4.4 Status

Status

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The status subsection of GetTap will show you if the GetTap module is currently running or stopped. There are two ways to start the module:

- 1) Restart the PageGate Server.
- 2) To manually stop or start the GetTap module, right click on the word GetTap under the Interfaces section. When you do, it will come up with the Start and Stop options.

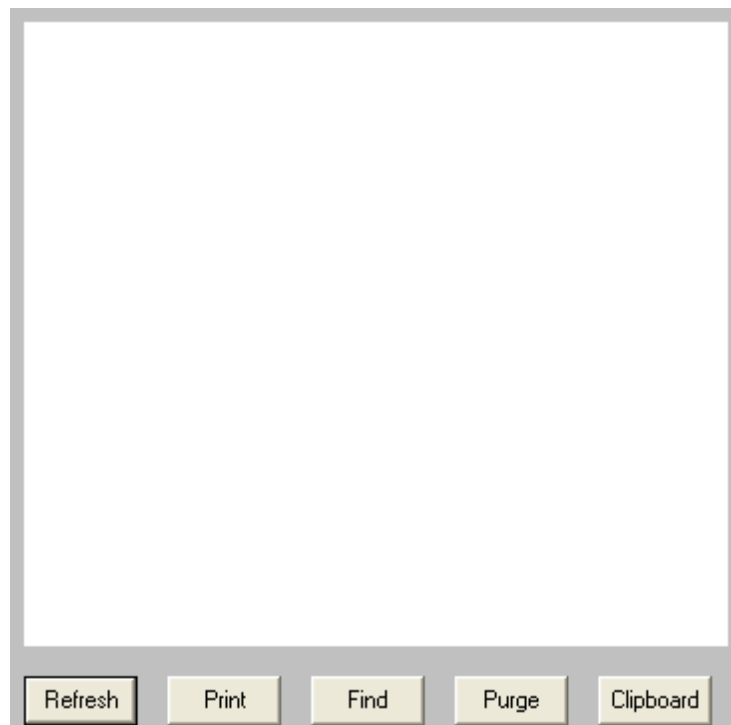


The screenshot shows a web interface for the GetTap service. It has a label 'Service' followed by a text box containing 'GetTap'. Below that is a label 'Status' followed by a text box containing 'Stopped' in red text. At the bottom of the form is a button labeled 'Refresh'. Below the button, there is a small note: 'Services can take up to 1 minute to start or stop.'

3.3.5.4.5 Log

Log

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



If logging is enabled, this log shows a summary of the events generated by the GetTap Module. The GetTap Log section of the Admin has five buttons:

Refresh	Displays the most current entries in the global log.
Print	Sends a copy of everything listed in the GetTap Log to a printer.
Find	Allows you to search for a variable (such as a carrier or recipient name).
Purge	Deletes the entirety of the GetTap Log.
Clipboard	Copies the contents of the GetTap Log to the Windows Clipboard, allowing it to be pasted into another application.

3.3.5.5 GetWeb

GetWeb

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The GetWeb subsection of the PageGate Admin is found beneath the Interfaces object (shown right) and contains settings and information that relate to the functionality and performance of the GetWeb module.

By clicking on the + next to GetWeb, it will expand the following sub-sections:

- Settings
- Status
- Log



3.3.5.5.1 Overview

Overview

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The GetWeb module enables PageGate to receive messages from a web page. There are two hosting options available with the GetWeb module:

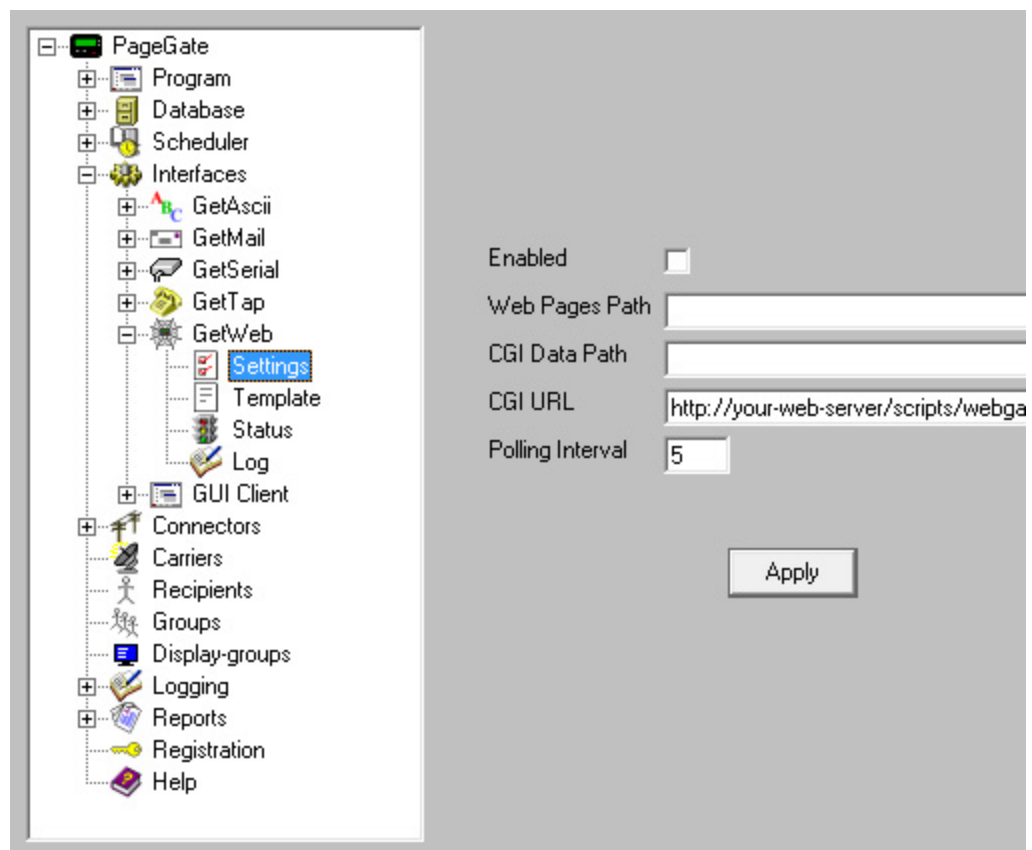
- As long as you have an in-house web server, you can host an Internet based paging site.
- If you don't have an in-house web server or don't want to give the rest of the world access to your paging website, you can host an intranet based paging site from any system that can run Internet Information Services (IIS), Apache, or any other website manager.

A CGI program (webgate.exe) is included with GetWeb to be used with the web server. The webgate.exe file is a Windows CGI program and therefore can only be used with Windows based web servers.

3.3.5.5.2 Settings

Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



Setting	Function
Enabled	When the Enabled checkbox is checked, it tells the PageGate server to run the GetWeb module. If the Enabled option is greyed out, please enable the master setting for GetWeb in the Program Settings.
Web Pages Path	This field allows you to set the location where the GetMail Module will automatically generate web pages for recipients and groups. Generally, on IIS Systems, this field will be set to c:\inetpub\wwwroot\
CGI Data Path	This field allows you to set the location where the GetMail Module will look for messages generated by the webgate.exe file. Generally, on IIS Systems, this field will be set to c:\inetpub\scripts\
CGI URL	The CGI URL field allows you to specify where the webgate.exe is seen from the outside world. In combination with GetWeb template files, this setting eliminates the need to manually edit templates to update the 'form action' line.

Polling
Interval

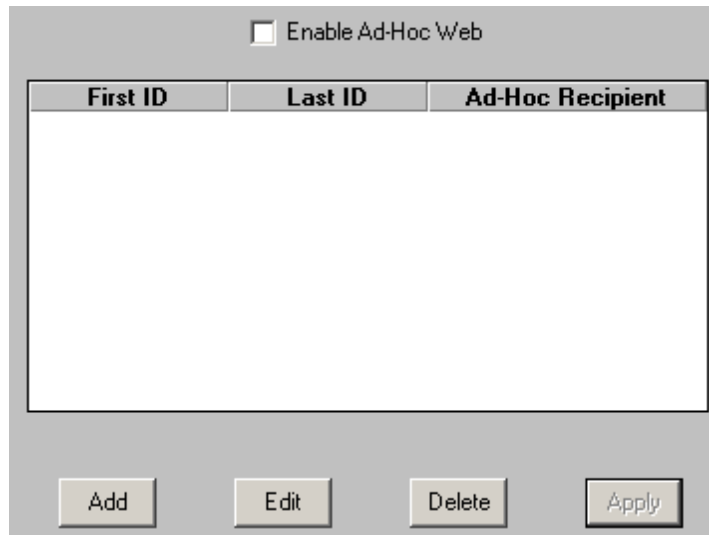
The setting in this field determines how often the GetWeb module looks for new messages in the CGI Data Path.

By clicking the + next to Settings, it will expand the Ad-Hoc sub-section.

3.3.5.5.2.1 Ad-Hoc

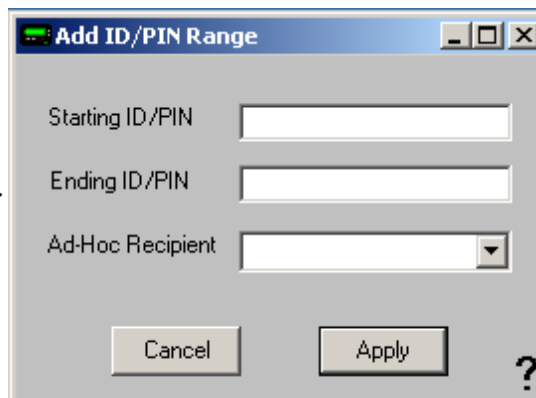
Ad-Hoc

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



To configure the Ad-Hoc GetWeb function to accept a range of ID/PIN numbers and redirect them to a carrier configured in your copy of PageGate:

- 1) Click on the Add button.
- 2) Enter the Starting ID/PIN.
- 3) Enter the Ending ID/PIN.
- 4) Select an Ad-Hoc Recipient from the drop-down menu.
- 5) Click on Apply.



3.3.5.5.3 Template

GetWeb Template

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Please see the Interface Templates portion of the manual.

3.3.5.5.4 Status

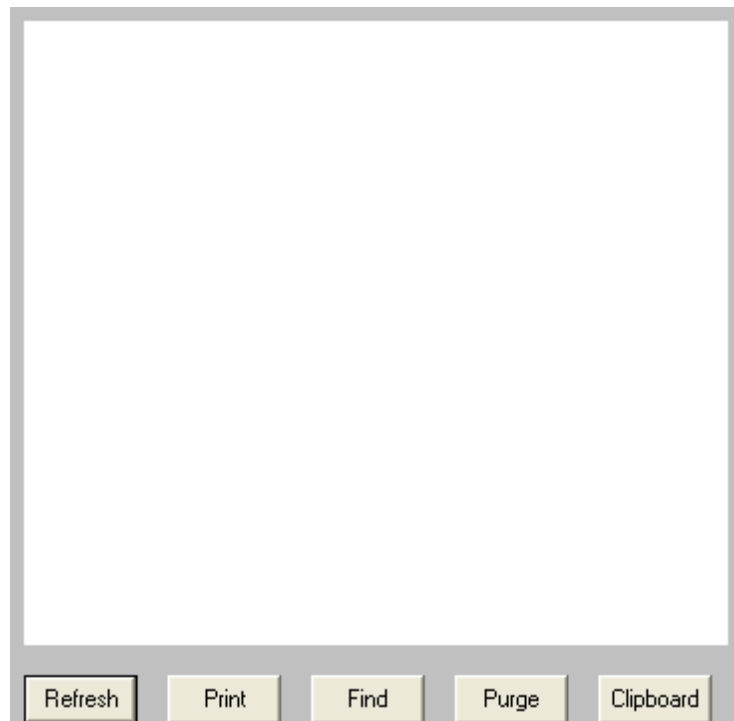
Status[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The status subsection of GetWeb will show you if the GetWeb module is currently running or stopped. There are two ways to start the module:

- 1) Restart the PageGate Server.
- 2) To manually stop or start the GetWeb module, right click on the word GetWeb under the Interfaces section. When you do, it will come up with the Start and Stop options



3.3.5.5.5 Log

Log[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

If logging is enabled, this log shows a summary of the events generated by the GetWeb Interface. The GetWeb Log section of the Admin has five buttons:

Refresh	Displays the most current entries in the global log.
Print	Sends a copy of everything listed in the GetWeb Log to a printer.
Find	Allows you to search for a variable (such as a carrier or recipient name).
Purge	Deletes the entirety of the GetWeb Log.
Clipboard	Copies the contents of the GetWeb Log to the Windows Clipboard, allowing it to be pasted into another application.

3.3.5.6 GUI Client

GUI Client

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The GUI Client subsection of the PageGate Admin is found beneath the Interfaces object (shown right) and only controls whether or not the Interface is Enabled or Disabled.

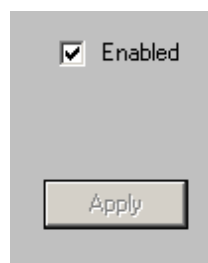
By clicking on the + next to GUI Client, it will expand the following sub-sections:

- Settings
- Status
- Log



3.3.5.6.1 Settings

Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The only setting for the GUI Client contained within the PageGate Admin is whether the GUI Client module is Enabled or Disabled. By default, the GUI Client is set to Enabled and the PageGate Server will give the Interface functionality.

To disable the GUI Client Interface, uncheck Enabled and click on Apply.

3.3.5.6.2 Template

GUI Client Template

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Please see the Interface Templates portion of the manual.

3.3.5.6.3 Status

Status

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The status subsection of GUI Client will show you if the GUI Client module is currently running or stopped.

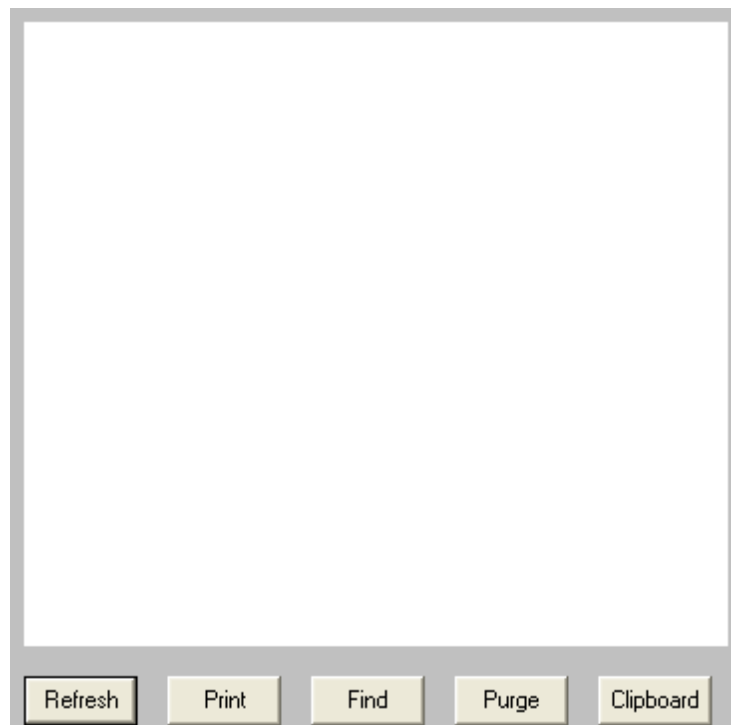
Due to the fact that the GUI Client is not actively controlled by the PageGate Admin, the PageGate Admin has no direct control over the GUI Client's functions and settings and cannot be stopped or started from the PageGate Admin.



3.3.5.6.4 Log

Log

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



If logging is enabled, this log shows a summary of the events generated by the GUI Client Interface. The GUI Client Log section of the Admin has five buttons:

Refresh	Displays the most current entries in the global log.
Print	Sends a copy of everything listed in the GUI Client Log to a printer.
Find	Allows you to search for a variable (such as a carrier or recipient name) .
Purge	Deletes the entirety of the GUI Client Log.
Clipboard	Copies the contents of the GUI Client Log to the Windows Clipboard, allowing it to be pasted into another application.

3.3.6 Connectors

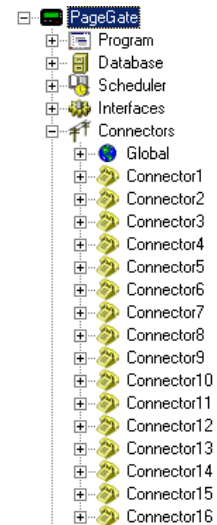
Connectors

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Connectors subsection of the PageGate Admin is found beneath the PageGate object (shown right) and contains settings and information that relate to the Connectors of the PageGate Server.

By clicking on the + next to Connectors, it will expand Connectors' sub-sections:

- Global
- Connector1
- Connector2
- Connector3
- Connector4
- Connector5
- Connector6
- Connector7
- Connector8
- Connector9
- Connector10
- Connector11
- Connector12
- Connector13
- Connector14
- Connector15
- Connector16
- Connector16



3.3.6.1 Global

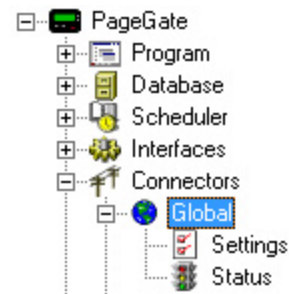
Global

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Global subsection of the Connectors is found beneath the Connectors object (shown right) and contains settings and information that relate to the global connection settings of the PageGate Server.

By clicking on the + next to Global, it will expand the following sub-sections:

- Settings
- Status



3.3.6.1.1 Settings

Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Polling Interval	<input type="text" value="5"/>	(sec.)
Dial Threshold	<input type="text" value="20"/>	
Retries	<input type="text" value="3"/>	
Retry Interval	<input type="text" value="30"/>	(sec.)

Setting	Function
Polling Interval	This field determines how often the Connectors check for messages scheduled by the Scheduler.
Dial Threshold	The Dial Threshold is the number of messages any one Connector can have in queue before passing off any excess messages to the next Connector in the line. For example, if both Connector1 and Connector2 are enabled and Connector1 is given 30 messages to handle, it will begin processing the first 20 and give the next 10 to Connector2 for processing.
Retries	This determines the number of attempts the Connectors will make when delivering a message. If a message cannot be delivered after the specified number of retries, it is marked bad.

Retry Interval	This field determines how long each Connector waits between successive retries.
Apply	This button saves any changes recently made to the Global Settings of the Connectors.

3.3.6.1.2 Status

Status

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Status subsection of the Global Connectors will show you the current status of all Connectors currently enabled. If a Connector is stopped and needs to be restarted, there are two ways to do so:

- 1) Restart the PageGate Server.
- 2) To manually stop or start any Connector module, right click on the word ConnectorX under the Connectors section. When you do, it will come up with the Start and Stop options.



3.3.6.2 Connectors

Connectors

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Connectors aren't limited to using a modem, they can use both dialing and internet based protocols. It entirely depends on how you configure your Carriers. Each connector allows one connection to a carrier at any given time. One connector cannot connect to two carriers simultaneously. To do that, you would need two connectors.

PageGate comes with the capacity to run sixteen connectors, so if you have all sixteen connectors configured, PageGate can make sixteen simultaneous connections.

The Connectors are located as a subsection of the Connectors object (shown right) and contains settings and information that relate to the behavior and settings for each Connector..

By clicking on the + next to any given Connector, the Connector's sub-sections are:

- Settings
- 2-Way
- Template
- Status
- Log



3.3.6.2.1 Settings

Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Dialer	Connector1
Init String	(auto)
Dialing Prefix	
Dedicated Carrier	(none)
Serial Port	1
Direct Connect	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="button" value="Apply"/>	

Setting	Function
Dialer	This field tells you which Connector's settings you're currently viewing.
Init String	If this Connector has been configured to use a modem, this Connector will require an initialization string to use the modem. Init strings needed to connect to a particular carrier can be set under the carrier object. This setting can be used to help support the use of different modems on a single PageGate server.

Dialing Prefix	If the phone line connected to the modem this Connector is configured to use requires a dialing prefix, enter it here.
Dedicated Carrier	This field allows you to specify that this Connector can only handle messages from one carrier. This setting preempts the dialer threshold.
Serial Port	This setting is only used if the Connector needs to be configured to use a modem, cellular modem or send data through a direct serial connection. This setting is irrelevant for the online protocols. This field should reflect the COM port the Connector will need to send information through.
Direct Connect	This option should only be checked if the selected Connector is going to send information through a direct RS-232 (serial) connection.
Apply	This button saves all modifications made to the Connector settings.

3.3.6.2.2 Template

Connector Template

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Please see the Templates portion of the manual.

3.3.6.2.3 2-Way

2-Way

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

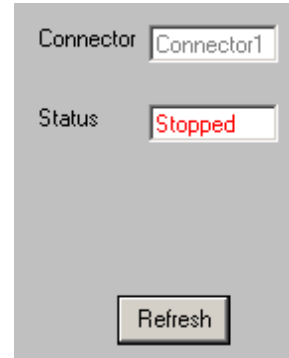
Setting	Function
Enable GSM-AT Replies	If this option is selected, the Connector will periodically poll the Cellular Modem for any received messages.
Reply Recipient	If there are any messages waiting to be read in from the Cellular Modem, those messages will go to whatever Recipient or Group is selected from the Dropdown.
Apply	This button saves all modifications made to the 2-Way settings.

3.3.6.2.4 Status

Status[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Status subsection of each Connector module will show you the current status of the selected connector. To view the status of all Connectors simultaneously, please refer to the Global Status section. If a connector is stopped and needs to be restarted, there are two ways to do so:

- 1) Restart the PageGate Server.
- 2) To manually stop or start a Connector module, right click on the word ConnectorX (where X is the number of the Connector) under the Connectors section. When you do, it will come up with the Start and Stop options.

A screenshot of the 'Status' subsection for a connector. It features a label 'Connector' followed by a text box containing 'Connector1'. Below this, a label 'Status' is followed by a text box containing 'Stopped' in red text. At the bottom of the panel is a 'Refresh' button.

3.3.6.2.5 Log

Log[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)A screenshot of the 'Log' subsection. It consists of a large, empty rectangular frame. At the bottom of the frame is a horizontal bar containing five buttons: 'Refresh', 'Print', 'Find', 'Purge', and 'Clipboard'.

If logging is enabled, this log shows a summary of the events generated by the Connector Module selected. The Connector Log section of the Admin has five buttons:

Refresh	Displays the most current entries in the global log.
Print	Sends a copy of everything listed in the Connector Log to a printer.
Find	Allows you to search for a variable (such as a carrier or recipient name).
Purge	Deletes the entirety of the Connector Log.
Clipboard	Copies the contents of the Connector Log to the Windows Clipboard, allowing it to be pasted into another application.

3.3.7 Carriers

Carriers

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Carriers are the companies that own the towers and antennae that communicate with wireless devices (pagers, phones, etc).

In order for PageGate to deliver a text message to a wireless device, the message needs to be sent to the carrier. The carrier then accepts the message into their internal network and delivers it to the device. A few commonly known carriers are: Verizon, Cingular, Nextel, and Alltel.

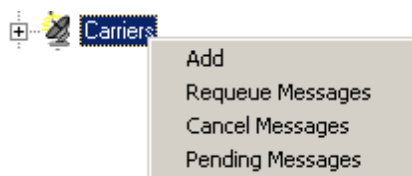
In PageGate, a Carrier must be created for each of company you want to message.

3.3.7.1 Overview

Overview

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

As with most functions within the PageGate Admin, most of the Carrier functions are contained within the Context Menu:



To access the Context Menu, simply Right Click on the word Carriers.

Within the Context Menu, there are five options (shown above):

- Add
- Requeue Messages
- Cancel Messages
- Pending Messages

3.3.7.2 Protocols

Protocols

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

A protocol is a method of delivery for SMS text messages. Not every carrier supports every protocol, we try to keep an up to date list of which protocols a carrier supports at NotePage's website (<http://www.notepage.net/support.htm>).

PageGate supports eight different protocols for delivering text messages to paging and cell phone carriers: FAX, GSM-AT, RawSerial, RawTCP, SMTP, SNPP, TAP, TONE, UCP, and WCTP

FAX is used to send a fax using a modem connected to the local server.

FaxSrv is used to send a fax using a Microsoft Fax Server, either on the local server or on another system on the same network.

File is used to write messages to a directory as text files.

GSM-AT is used when PageGate is connected directly to a wireless modem or mobile phone.

HTTP GET allows PageGate's connectors to issue a GET request to a webserver, and pass parameters (names and values) to it. The parameters are set using a template, and can include things such as the message text, sender name, static text, etc. The HTTPPOST protocol is typically the preferred method to send data to web servers, but the GET method is supported for web servers that don't have provisions to accept POST methods.

HTTP POST allows PageGate's connectors to issue a POST command to a webserver. It can pass name/value pairs to the webserver as part of the POST data. The post data is set using a template, and can include things such as the message text, sender name, static text, etc. The HTTPPOST protocol can be used to fill in webpage forms or to send data to a webserver that has an API for accepting data via POST commands.

RawSerial is used to transmit "Raw" text data to a serial port or modem.

RawTCP is used to transmit "Raw" text data to an internet based host.

SMTP is used to send text messages to carriers over the internet using the email protocol.

SNPP and WCTP are paging protocols designed to use the internet for delivery.

TAP and UCP are used to send text messages to a carrier by connecting to a carrier's modem terminals. Note: Some carriers don't support TAP with their numeric only pagers.

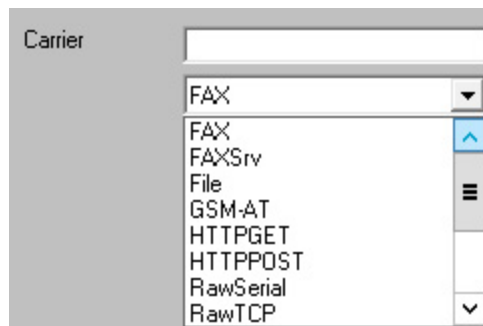
TONE is used to send numeric messages to a carrier by sending touch tones.

3.3.7.3 Adding a Carrier

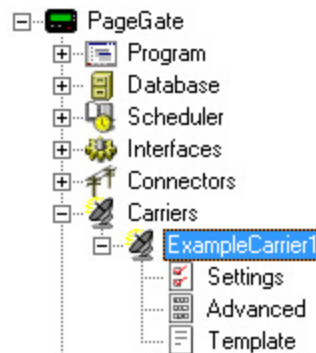
Adding a Carrier

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The process for adding a carrier is fairly simple, though some of the options you have when adding a carrier can be quite complex. To bring up the menu to add a carrier, simply Right Click on the word Carriers in the PageGate Admin, then left click add or hit Ctrl+N on your keyboard and select the New Carrier option.



Once a carrier has been added to the PageGate Admin, you will see it appear beneath the Carriers section of the Admin.



Each carrier has three sub-sections: Settings, Template, and Advanced.

If you need to set up a carrier that requires a password, you must first create a carrier. After the carrier has been added, Edit the Advanced Settings of the Carrier.

Due to the fact that each protocol has a different group of required settings, please see the following sections:

- Creating a FAX Carrier
- Creating a File Carrier
- Creating an HTTP GET Carrier
- Creating an HTTP POST Carrier
- Creating a GSM-AT Carrier
- Creating a RawSerial Carrier

- Creating a RawTCP Carrier
- Creating an SMTP Carrier
- Creating an SNPP Carrier
- Creating a TAP Carrier
- Creating a TONE Carrier
- Creating a UCP Carrier
- Creating a WCTP Carrier

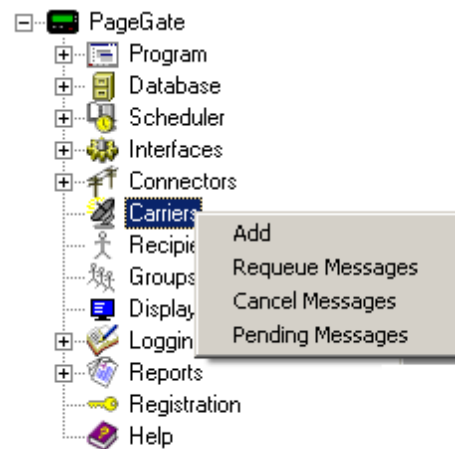
3.3.7.3.1 Creating a FAX Carrier

Creating a FAX Carrier

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

NOTE: While not absolutely required, we would recommend creating a Faxing Template for any FAX Carriers you create.

- 1) Open the PageGate Admin.
- 2) Right click on Carriers
- 3) Left click Add.
- 4) Name the Carrier what it needs to be (Office, Home, BobFax, etc).
- 5) Set the Protocol to FAX.
- 6) Click on the dropdown arrow next to Init String and set it to: (auto)
- 7) Set the Fax Class field to match the Class of the receiving Fax machine. Most Fax machines can negotiate Fax Class 2 connections, which is the



default. If you find that you're having trouble connecting to your Fax machine, please try one of the other listed Fax Classes.

- 8) Set the Max Chars to the maximum number of characters you wish to be sent in a single facsimile transmission.
- 9) Click on Apply to add the carrier to your Carriers list.

3.3.7.3.2 Creating a FAXSrv Carrier

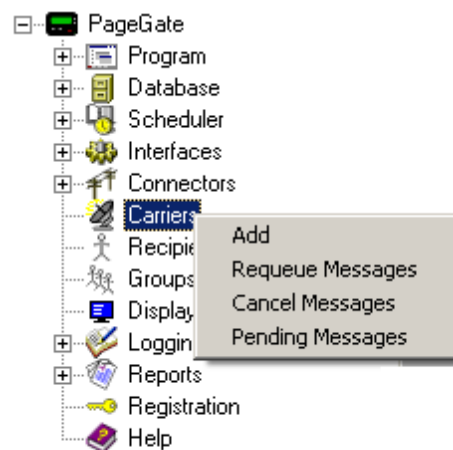
Creating a FAXSrv Carrier

Top Previous Next

NOTE: This protocol was only designed to work with a Microsoft Fax Server and, as such, this protocol should only ever reference a Microsoft Fax Server.

For more information on precisely how to configure a Microsoft Fax Server, please visit the Microsoft Technet Documentation here: <http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/jj134193.aspx>

- 1) Open the PageGate Admin.
- 2) Right click on Carriers
- 3) Left click Add.
- 4) Name the Carrier what it needs to be (Primary, OfficeFax, BobFax, etc).
- 5) Set the Protocol to FAXSrv.
- 6) In the Server field, enter the UNC Path to your Microsoft Fax Server. If the Microsoft Fax Server is installed on the same system that the PageGate server is installed on,



leave this field completely blank. Do not use the Local Loopback address.

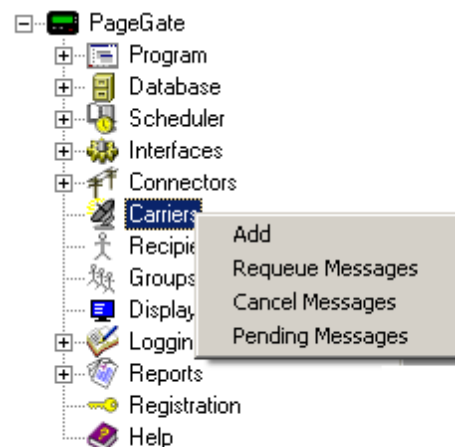
- 7) Set the Max Chars to the maximum number of characters you wish to be sent in a single facsimile transmission.
- 8) Click on Apply to add the carrier to your Carriers list.

3.3.7.3.3 Creating a File Carrier

Creating a File Carrier

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

- 1) Open the PageGate Admin.
- 2) Right click on Carriers
- 3) Left click Add.
- 4) Name the Carrier what it needs to be (FileServer, Integration, etc).



- 5) Set the Protocol to File.
- 6) Set the File Path to the directory you wish the messages to be written to.
- 7) Click on the dropdown arrow next to Extension to select the file extension PageGate should assign to the files written:



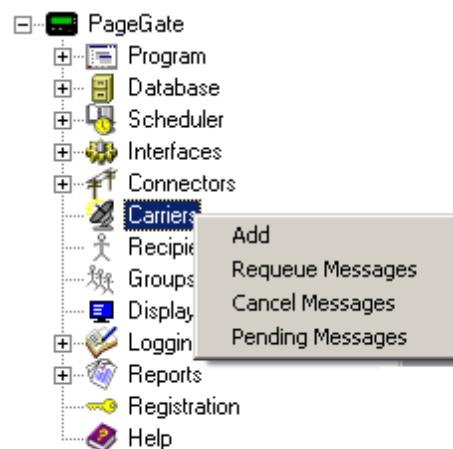
- 8) Set the Max Chars to the maximum number of characters you wish to be written in each file.
- 9) Click on Apply to add the carrier to your Carriers list.

3.3.7.3.4 Creating a GSM-AT Carrier

Creating a GSM-AT Carrier

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

- 1) Open the PageGate Admin.
- 2) Right click on Carriers
- 3) Left click Add.
- 4) Name the Carrier what it needs to be (GSM1, GSM2, etc).
- 5) Set the Protocol to GSM-AT.
- 6) Set the baud rate, parity, data bits, and stop bits to the GSM Device's specifications.



NOTE: The industry standard for most GSM

Devices is as follows:

Baud Rate: 115200

Parity: None

Data Bits: 8

Stop Bits: 1

- 7) Click in the init string field, not on the dropdown, and type in:
AT+CSQ

- 8) Set the Max Chars to the maximum number of characters you wish to be sent in a transmission.

- 9) Click on Apply to add the carrier to your Carriers list.

Carrier:

Protocol:

Baud Rate:

Parity:

Data Bits:

Stop Bits:

Init String:

Max Chars:

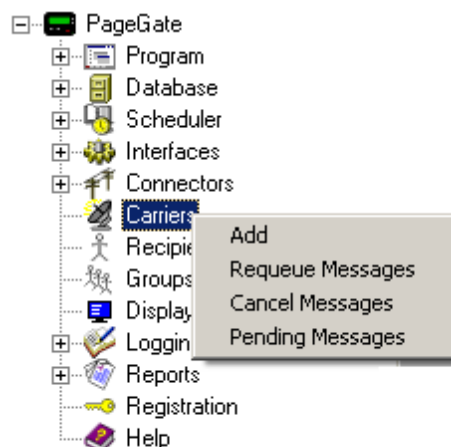
3.3.7.3.5 Creating an HTTP GET Carrier

Creating an HTTP GET Carrier

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

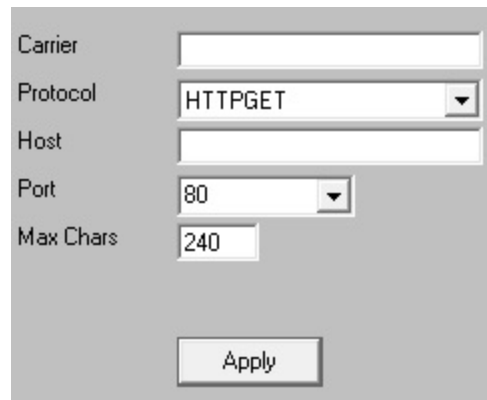
NOTE: You must configure a template for this carrier to function properly.

- 1) Open the PageGate Admin.
- 2) Right click on Carriers
- 3) Left click Add.
- 4) Name the Carrier what it needs to be (WebServer,



Integration, etc).

- 5) Set the Protocol to HTTPGET.
- 6) Set the Host to the URL for the CGI GET statement.
- 7) Set the port. If the port needs to be set to something other than 80, click inside the port field and type the value in.
- 8) Set the Max Chars to the maximum number of characters you wish to be written in each file.
- 9) Click on Apply to add the carrier to your Carriers list.



The screenshot shows a configuration window with the following fields:

- Carrier:
- Protocol:
- Host:
- Port:
- Max Chars:
- Apply:

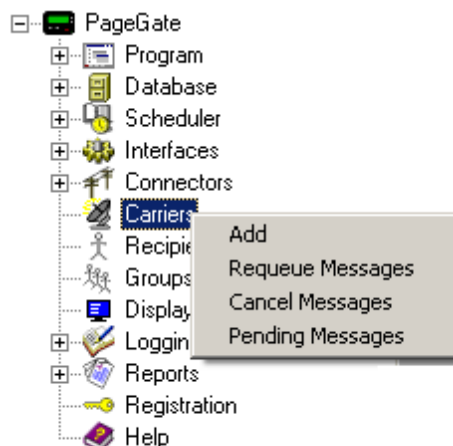
3.3.7.3.6 Creating an HTTP POST Carrier

Creating an HTTP POST Carrier

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

NOTE: You must configure a template for this carrier to function properly.

- 1) Open the PageGate Admin.
- 2) Right click on Carriers
- 3) Left click Add.
- 4) Name the Carrier what it needs to be (WebServer, Integration, etc).
- 5) Set the Protocol to HTTPPOST.
- 6) Set the Host to the URL for the CGI POST statement.
- 7) Set the port. If the port needs to be set to something other than 80, click inside the port field and type the value in.
- 8) Set the Max Chars to the maximum number of characters you wish to be written in each file.
- 9) Click on Apply to add the carrier to

A screenshot of the 'Carrier' configuration dialog box. It contains the following fields and controls:

- 'Carrier': A text input field.
- 'Protocol': A dropdown menu currently set to 'HTTPPOST'.
- 'Host': A text input field.
- 'Port': A dropdown menu currently set to '80'.
- 'Max Chars': A text input field containing the value '240'.
- 'Apply': A button at the bottom right of the dialog.

your Carriers list.

3.3.7.3.7 Creating a Raw Serial Carrier

Creating a RawSerial Carrier

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

1) Open the PageGate Admin.

2) Right click on Carriers

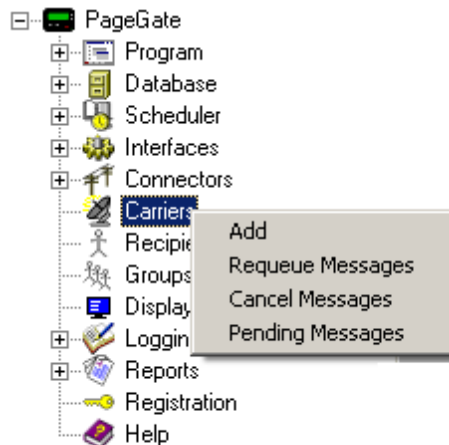
3) Left click Add.

4) Name the Carrier what it needs to be (Site1, Site2, etc).

5) Set the Protocol to RawSerial.

6) Set the baud rate, parity, data bits, and stop bits to match the host's settings.

7) Leave the Init String field blank unless the connecting system requires special formatting. If the connecting

A screenshot of the 'Carrier' configuration dialog box. It contains the following fields and controls: 'Carrier' (text input), 'Protocol' (dropdown menu showing 'RawSerial'), 'Phone Number' (text input), 'Baud Rate' (dropdown menu showing '9600'), 'Parity' (dropdown menu showing 'None'), 'Data Bits' (dropdown menu showing '8'), 'Stop Bits' (dropdown menu showing '1'), 'Init String' (text input), and 'Max Chars' (text input showing '1024'). An 'Apply' button is located at the bottom right.

system does
require special
formatting,
please discuss the
formatting
requirements
with them and fill
out the field
based on their
recommendation.

8) Set the Max
Chars to the
maximum
number of
characters you
wish to be sent in
a transmission.

9) Click on Apply to
add the carrier to
your Carriers list.

3.3.7.3.8 Creating a Raw TCP Carrier

Creating a RawTCP Carrier

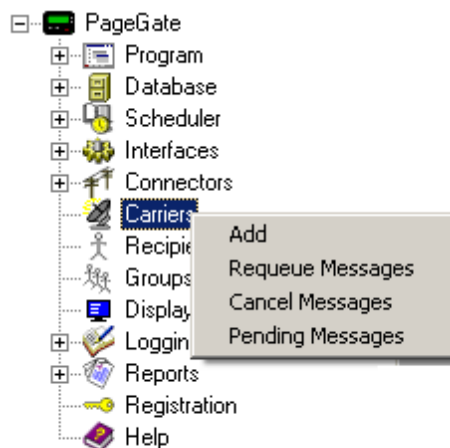
[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

1) Open the
PageGate
Admin.

2) Right click on
Carriers

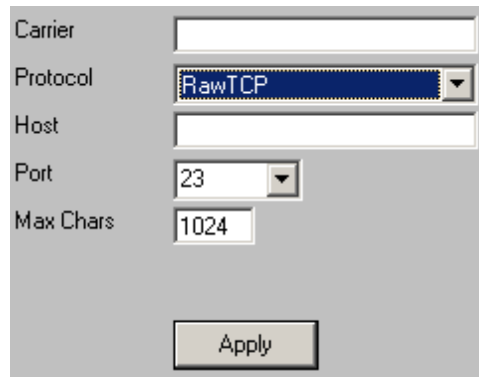
3) Left click Add.

4) Name the Carrier



what it needs to be (Site1, Site2, etc).

- 5) Set the Protocol to RawTCP.
- 6) In the Host field, type the host to which the data will be transmitted.
- 7) Type in the port over which data is to be sent or leave the port at 23.
- 8) Set the Max Chars to the maximum number of characters the TCP host can receive.
- 9) Click on Apply to add the carrier to your Carriers list.



Carrier

Protocol: RawTCP

Host

Port: 23

Max Chars: 1024

Apply

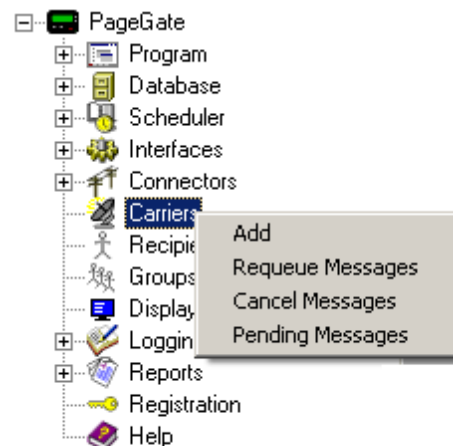
3.3.7.3.9 Creating an SMTP Carrier

Creating an SMTP Carrier

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

NOTE: Some components of the SMTP Protocol are controlled in the Global or Carrier Template Settings.

- 1) Open the PageGate Admin.
- 2) Right click on Carriers
- 3) Left click Add.



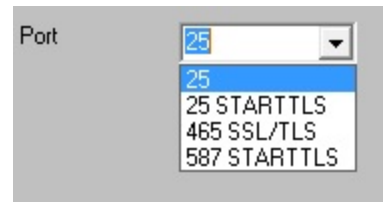
- 1) Name the Carrier what it needs to be (T-Mobile, Cingular, Verizon, etc).
- 2) Set the Protocol to SMTP.
- 3) The Carrier Domain field will insert whatever you type in after the information specified in ID/PIN field of the Recipient's settings. For example, if you've entered vtext.com as the Carrier Domain and a Recipient has an ID/PIN value of 7818290500, any time that recipient is messaged, PageGate will actually deliver the message to 7818290500@vtext.com

Enter the suffix of the devices you wish to send to. For example, for Verizon, you would use vtext.com or for AT&T you would use txt.att.net. For a full list of known Carrier Domains, please visit our support site: <http://www.notepage.net/smtp.htm>

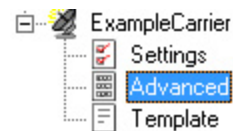
- 4) Set the Max Chars to the maximum

number of characters that should be sent in each SMTP message. If these messages are intended for celphones, set this value to 160.

- 1) Click on the dropdown arrow and select the Port.
- 2) Click on Apply.



Select the Advanced sub-section of the Carrier.



- 1) First select whether you would like SMTP/Email transactions for this carrier to be delivered via direct DNS connection request or by relaying these messages through an available SMTP server.
- 2) If relaying through a mail server that requires authentication credentials, please enter them in the username and password field.
- 3) Click on Apply.

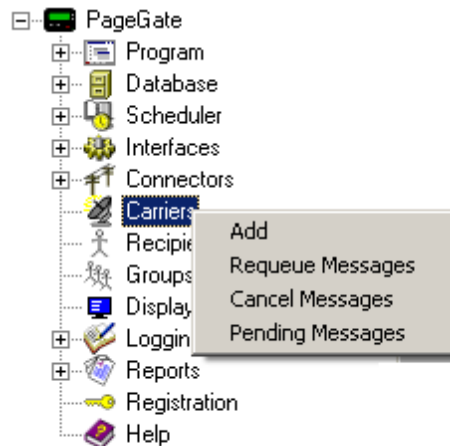
A screenshot of the 'Advanced' settings page for a carrier. It contains several fields: 'Failover' is a dropdown menu set to '(none)'; 'Username' and 'Password' are text input fields; 'Priority' is a text input field set to '100'; there are two radio buttons for delivery method, with 'Deliver directly to destination server' selected; and a 'Relay Server' text input field. At the bottom is an 'Apply' button.

3.3.7.3.10 Creating an SNPP Carrier

Creating an SNPP Carrier

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

- 1) Open the PageGate Admin.
- 2) Right click on Carriers
- 3) Left click Add.
- 4) Name the Carrier what it needs to be (Sprint, Metrocall, Host1, etc).
- 5) Set the Protocol to SNPP.
- 6) Type in the SNPP host you need to contact. You can find a list of SNPP Hosts in the Support section of our website:
<http://www.notepage.net/snpp.htm>
- 7) The Port field should always be set to 444 for SNPP carriers. Do not change this field unless your host requires a different port.

A screenshot of the Carrier configuration form. It contains fields for Carrier (text), Protocol (dropdown menu with 'SNPP' selected), Host (text), Port (dropdown menu with '444' selected), and Max Chars (text field with '240'). An 'Apply' button is at the bottom.

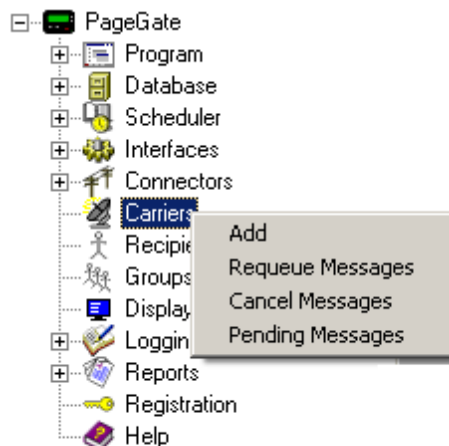
- 8) Set the Max Chars to the maximum number of characters the SNPP host can receive.
- 9) Click on Apply to add the carrier to your Carriers list.
- 10) If you need to add authentication credentials to this carrier, please see the Configuring Authentication Credentials portion of the manual.

3.3.7.3.11 Creating a TAP Carrier

Creating a TAP Carrier

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

- 1) Open the PageGate Admin.
- 2) Right click on Carriers
- 3) Left click Add.
- 4) Name the Carrier what it needs to be (T-Mobile, Cingular, Verizon, etc).
- 5) Set the Protocol to TAP.
- 6) In the phone number field, you'll need to enter the phone number for one of the TAP Terminals hosted by the carrier. You can find a list of TAP Terminal phone numbers at the following location: <http://www.notepage.net/tap-phone-numbers.htm>
- 7) Set the baud rate, parity, data bits, and stop bits to

A screenshot of the 'Carrier' configuration dialog box. It contains the following fields and controls: 'Carrier' (text input), 'Protocol' (dropdown menu set to 'TAP'), 'Phone Number' (text input), 'Baud Rate' (dropdown menu set to '1200'), 'Parity' (dropdown menu set to 'Even'), 'Data Bits' (dropdown menu set to '7'), 'Stop Bits' (dropdown menu set to '1'), 'Init String' (text input), and 'Max Chars' (text input set to '240'). An 'Apply' button is located at the bottom right.

the carrier's specifications.

NOTE: If the carrier doesn't specify these settings, the industry standard is as follows:

Baud Rate: 1200

Parity: Even

Data Bits: 7

Stop Bits: 1

8) Click on the dropdown arrow next to Init String and set it to: (auto)

9) Set the Max Chars to the maximum number of characters that this carrier's devices can receive.

10) Click on Apply to add the carrier to your Carriers list.

11) If you need to add

authentication
credentials to this
carrier, please see
the Configuring
Authentication
Credentials
portion of the
manual.

3.3.7.3.12 Creating a TONE Carrier

Creating a TONE Carrier

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

1) Open the PageGate Admin.

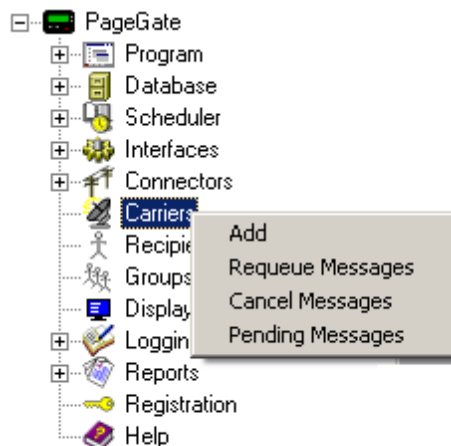
2) Right click on Carriers

3) Left click Add.

4) Name the carrier what it needs to be (Pagersystem, hospital, technumber, etc)

5) Click on the dropdown arrow next to Init String and set it to: (auto)

6) Set the Max Chars to the maximum number of numeric tones that can be sent in one message. Typically, you will NOT want to change



Carrier	<input type="text"/>
Protocol	<input type="text" value="TONE"/>
Init String	<input type="text"/>
Max Chars	<input type="text" value="10"/>
Wait String	<input type="text" value=".,@"/>
<input type="button" value="Apply"/>	

this field.

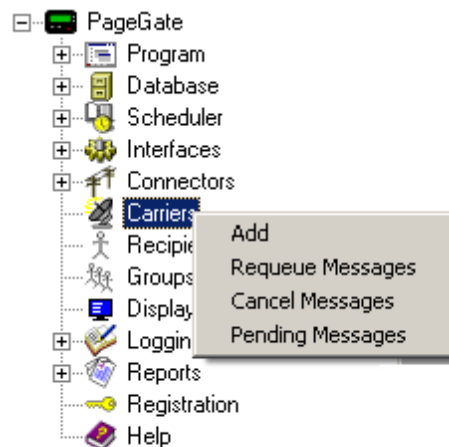
- 7) Set the Wait String to the appropriate string to tell your modem to wait before transmitting the tones. By default, this field is set to a value of ",,@" - Wait for 6 seconds before transmitting any tones.
- 8) Click on Apply to add this carrier to your Carriers list.

3.3.7.3.13 Creating a UCP Carrier

Creating a UCP Carrier

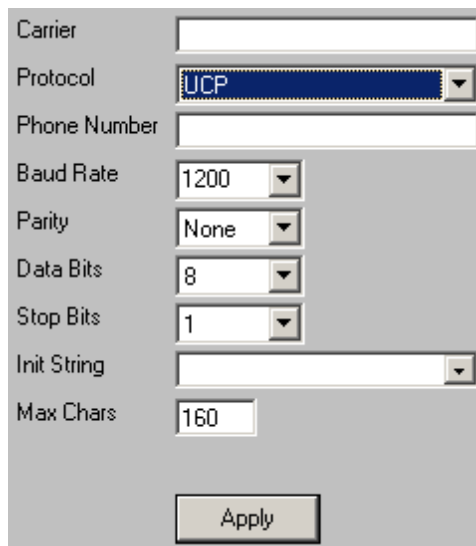
[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

- 1) Open the PageGate Admin.
- 2) Right click on Carriers
- 3) Left click Add.
- 4) Name the Carrier what it needs to be (T-Mobile, Cingular, Verizon, etc).
- 5) Set the Protocol to UCP.



6) In the phone number field, you'll need to enter the phone number for your carrier's UCP Host.

7) Set the baud rate, parity, data bits, and stop bits to the carrier's specifications.



The screenshot shows a configuration window with the following fields and values:

Field	Value
Carrier	
Protocol	UCP
Phone Number	
Baud Rate	1200
Parity	None
Data Bits	8
Stop Bits	1
Init String	
Max Chars	160

An "Apply" button is located at the bottom right of the dialog.

NOTE: If the carrier doesn't specify these settings, the industry standard for UCP is as follows:

Baud Rate: 1200

Parity: None

Data Bits: 8

Stop Bits: 1

8) Click on the dropdown arrow next to Init String and set it to: (auto)

9) Set the Max Chars to the maximum number of

characters that
this carrier's
devices can
receive.

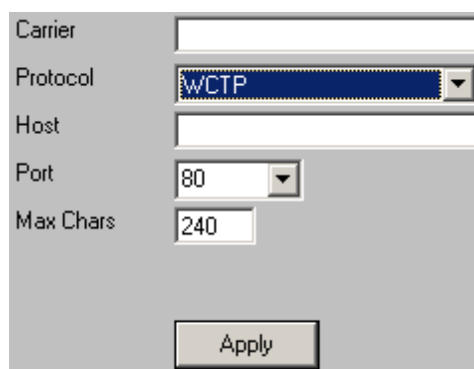
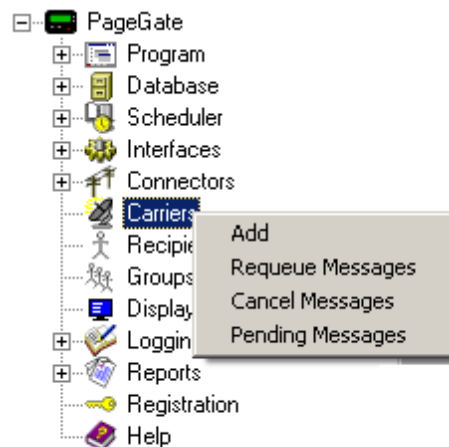
- 10) Click on Apply
to add the carrier
to your Carriers
list.

3.3.7.3.14 Creating a WCTP Carrier

Creating a WCTP Carrier

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

- 1) Open the PageGate Admin.
- 2) Right click on Carriers
- 3) Left click Add.
- 4) Enter the name of the recipient's wireless Carrier (AT&T, Arch Wireless, Host1, etc.)
- 5) Set the Protocol to WCTP.
- 6) Type in the WCTP host you need to contact. You can find a list of WCTP Hosts in the Support section of our website:



[http://
www.notepage.net/
wctp.htm](http://www.notepage.net/wctp.htm)

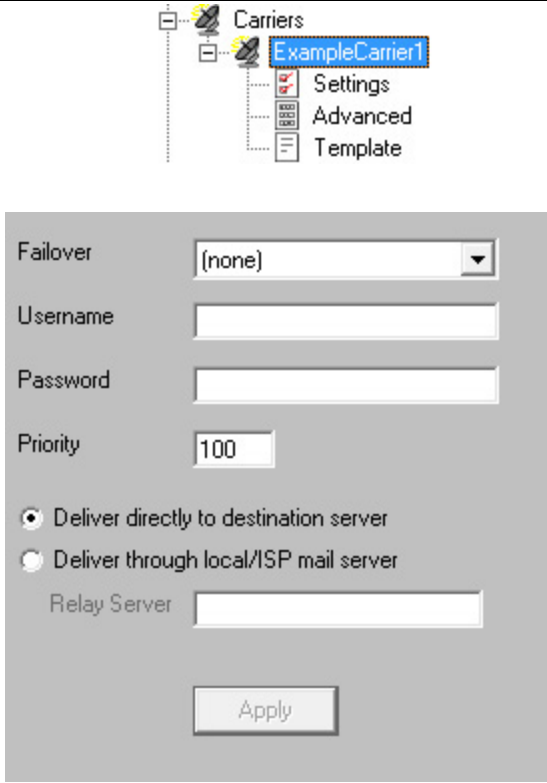
- 7) The Port field should always be set to 80 for WCTP carriers. Do not change this field unless your host requires a different port
- 8) Set the Max Chars to the maximum number of characters the WCTP host can receive.
- 9) Click on Apply to add the carrier to your Carriers list.
- 10) If you need to add authentication credentials to this carrier, please see the Configuring Authentication Credentials portion of the manual.

3.3.7.3.15 Configuring Authentication Credentials

Configuring Authentication Credentials

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Some hosts and connection methods require that you authenticate your traffic. Which is to say, some carriers and connection methods require that you provide a username and password in order to send your messages. To do this:

<ol style="list-style-type: none">1) Open the PageGate Admin.2) Click on the + next to Carriers.3) Click on the + next to the Carrier that needs the authentication credentials.4) Click on the Advanced sub-section.5) Enter any required authentication credentials in the Username and Password fields, if you're using an SMTP based carrier, or just the Password, if you're using a TAP, WCTP or SNPP carrier.	
--	---

3.3.7.3.16 Template

Carrier Template

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

See the Templates portion of the manual.

3.3.7.4 Template

Carrier Template

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

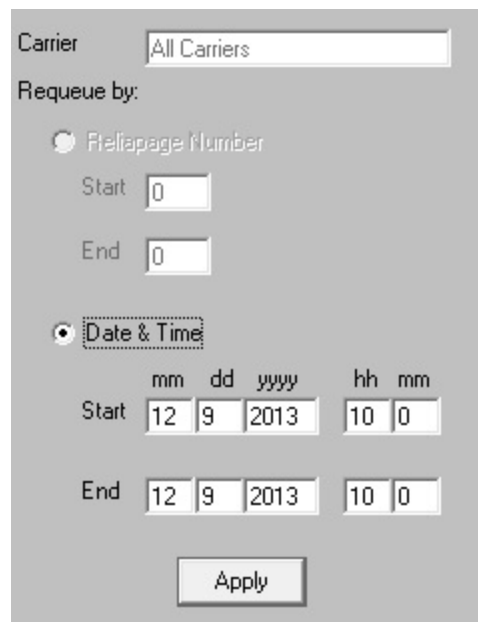
See the Templates portion of the manual.

3.3.7.5 Requeue Messages

Requeue Messages

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

When using the Requeue Messages context menu option, you will receive a screen like this:



The dialog box for requeueing messages. It features a 'Carrier' dropdown menu set to 'All Carriers'. Below this is a 'Requeue by:' section with two radio buttons: 'Reliepage Number' and 'Date & Time'. The 'Date & Time' option is selected. Under 'Reliepage Number', there are 'Start' and 'End' input fields, both containing '0'. Under 'Date & Time', there are 'Start' and 'End' input fields, each divided into 'mm', 'dd', 'yyyy', 'hh', and 'mm' sub-fields. The 'Start' date is 12/9/2013 at 10:00, and the 'End' date is also 12/9/2013 at 10:00. An 'Apply' button is at the bottom.

The Requeue Messages option, when used at the base Carriers tree, allows you to resend any message previously sent to All Carriers, which sends a message to All Recipients.

If the Reliepage option is enabled for recipients, you can select a range of Reliepage messages to resend.

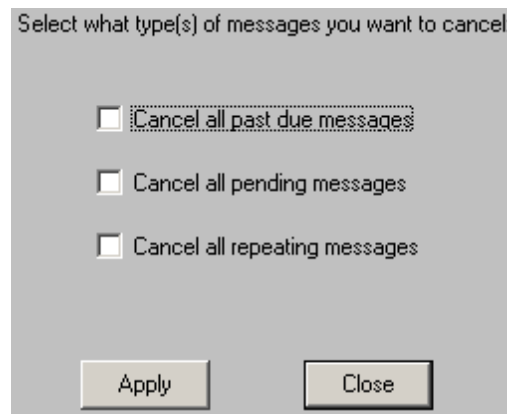
Also, a date and time range of messages for all carriers can be resent.

3.3.7.6 Cancel Messages

Cancel Messages

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

When using the Cancel Messages context menu option, you will receive a screen like this:



The Cancel Messages option, when used at the base Carriers tree, allows you to cancel three types of messages to All Carriers:

- Past Due
- Pending
- Repeating Messages.

Past Due messages are Repeating Messages that should have gone out but haven't and can possibly interfere with the schedule of messages waiting to be sent.

Pending messages are any messages in the queue currently waiting to be sent.

Repeating messages are Scheduled Messages that repeat based on variables passed by the PageGate Client. For more information, please see the PageGate Client section of the manual.

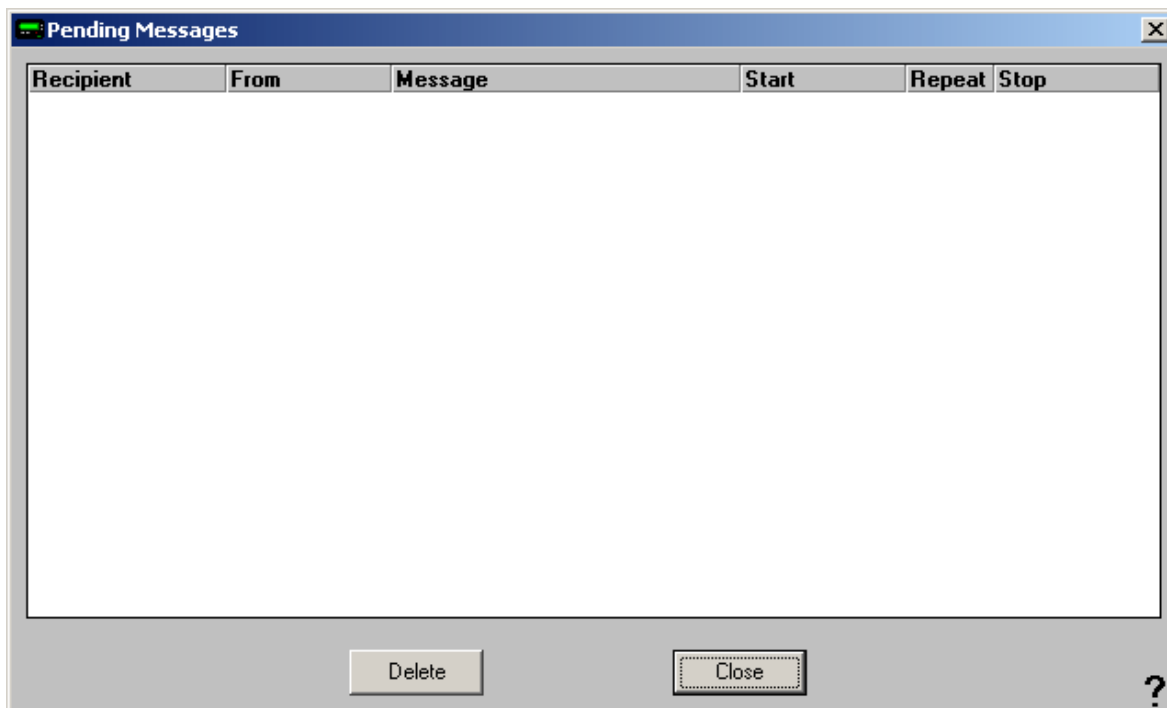
For example, if you have a message set to repeat every hour, choosing the Cancel Repeating Messages option will stop that message from ever happening again. Choosing Cancel Past Due Messages will cancel any previous repeating messages that failed to go out but will not prevent future repeating messages from being sent.

3.3.7.7 Pending Messages

Pending Messages

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

When using the Pending Messages context menu option, you will see a dialog like this:



When used at the base Carriers tree, this dialog will display the current Pending Messages for All Carriers.

As shown above, it will display the following information for each Pending Message:

Intended recipient, sender, content of the message, when the message is to be sent, whether the message will repeat or be sent only once, and when the message will stop being sent.

Any message displayed in this dialog may be highlighted and deleted via the Delete button.

Left clicking on Close will close this dialog.

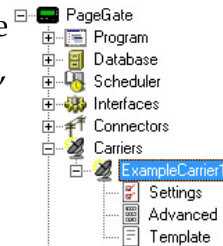
3.3.7.8 Editing a Carrier

Editing a Carrier

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

To modify an existing carrier, click on the + next to the carrier's name. By clicking on the + next to the carrier's name, it should expand three sub-sections:

- Settings
- Template
- Advanced



Clicking on Settings will take you to a screen that looks identical to the initial carrier setup screen. You can modify the protocol and any of the carrier's options there.

Clicking on Advanced will take you to a screen where you can specify other variables. This section's layout and options will change depending on the protocol specified in the carrier.

A screenshot of the 'Advanced' settings screen for a carrier. The screen is divided into two columns. The left column contains: 'Failover' (dropdown menu showing '(none)'), 'Priority' (text input '100'), 'Password' (password field), 'Msg Limit' (text input '0'), and 'Max PIN Length' (text input '0'). The right column contains: 'Failover' (dropdown menu showing '(none)'), 'Username' (text input), 'Password' (password field), 'Priority' (text input '100'), two radio buttons for 'Deliver directly to destination server' (selected) and 'Deliver through local/ISP mail server', and a 'Relay Server' (text input). An 'Apply' button is at the bottom center.

Setting	Function
Failover	Failover is the ability of PageGate to send an undeliverable message to an alternate host. For example, some carriers support multiple TAP terminals. Other carriers support both SNPP and WCTP hosts. If you configure multiple TAP Terminals or hosts for one carrier, you can specify a failover. The failover settings at the carrier level is used to redirect all the pending messages to another carrier when the original carrier can't be contacted.
Priority	This field will set the priority of the carrier. The priority determines the order in which messages are handled. This value may be set from 1 to 100, where 1 is the highest priority and 100 is the lowest priority.
Username	There are some carriers that require a username to have messages successfully accepted. If the carrier requires a username, type the username in this field.
Password	There are some carriers that require a password to have messages successfully accepted. If the carrier requires a password, type the password in this field.
Msg Limit	The message limit field specifies the number of messages than can be queued for this carrier at once. For example, if a carrier can only receive 10 messages at a time, enter 10 in this field.
Max PIN Length	This field is used to limit the number of digits accepted from a recipient's ID/PIN field for this carrier (extra digits are stripped of the beginning).
Drop non-printable characters	Certain characters such as carriage returns and some international characters cannot be read by a carrier. Check this option to have those characters automatically removed from any queued message.
Apply	This button saves any changes made to a carrier's Advanced Settings.

3.3.8 Recipients

Recipients

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Put plainly, a recipient is any device or email address that can receive a message. By

adding recipients, you enable PageGate to send these recipients messages.

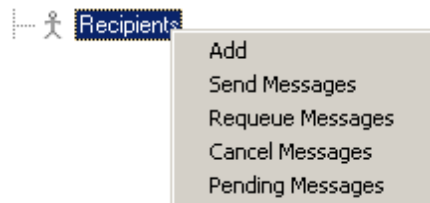
Each recipient **MUST** be tied to an existing Carrier within PageGate. For more information regarding Adding a Carrier to PageGate, please see the Adding a Carrier portion of the manual.

3.3.8.1 Overview

Overview

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

As with most functions within the PageGate Admin, most of the Recipient functions are contained within the Context Menu:



To access the Context Menu, simply Right Click on the word Recipients.

Within the Context Menu, there are five options (shown above):

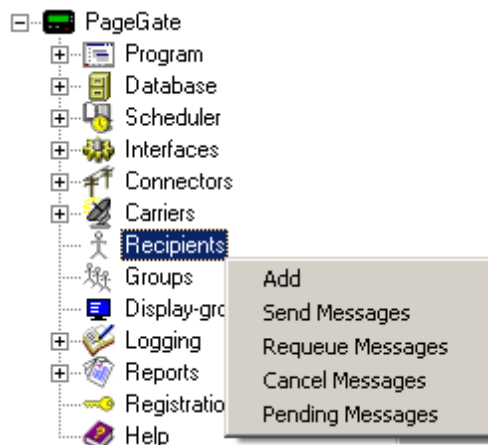
- Add
- Send Messages
- Requeue Messages
- Cancel Messages
- Pending Messages

3.3.8.2 Adding a Recipient

Adding a Recipient

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The process for adding a Recipient is fairly simple, though some of the options you have when adding a Recipient can be quite complex. To bring up the menu to add a Recipient, simply Right Click on the word Recipients in the PageGate Admin, then left click add or hit Ctrl+N on your keyboard and select the New Recipient option.



When adding a recipient, you will be presented with this screen:

 A screenshot of the Recipient configuration dialog box. It contains the following fields and controls:

- Full Name: A text input field.
- Recipient: A text input field.
- Enabled Services: A section with five checkboxes: GetAscii, GetMail, GetSerial, GetTap, and GetWeb. The GUI Client checkbox is checked.
- Type: A dropdown menu set to 'Normal'.
- Carrier: A dropdown menu set to 'ExampleCarrier'.
- Failover: A dropdown menu set to '(none)'.
- ID / PIN: A text input field.
- Max Chars: A text input field set to '240'.
- Apply: A button at the bottom.

NOTE: Many of the Recipient settings in previous versions of PageGate, such as Alpha and Drop non-printable characters, are now controlled by the Template system.

Setting	Function
Full Name	This field is what is displayed in the GUI Client and paging websites.
Recipient	This field is only referenced internally by the program. In the GetAscii module, for example, it is the Recipient field, NOT the Full Name field, that is referenced for messaging purposes.

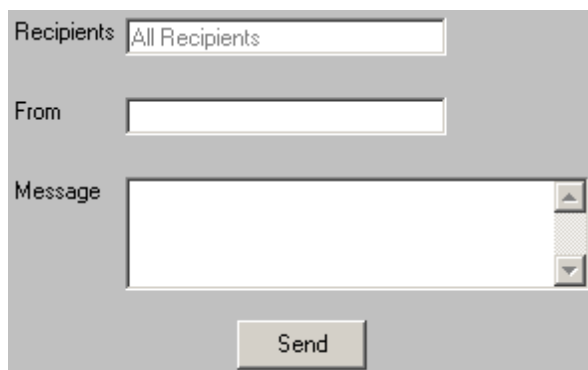
Enabled Services	<p>The list of PageGate modules that are enabled and available are listed here. Modules that are not highlighted are not available. Modules not checked are not enabled for this recipient. For example, if the GetAscii module isn't enabled for your recipient, the GetAscii module will not be able to send this recipient any messages.</p> <p>If an Interface is not available and it should be, please make sure that the Interface is enabled both in the Program Settings and in the Interface Settings.</p>
Type	Typically, this field should be set to Normal. There are, however, four options that can be set. Please see the Recipient Type section of the manual for more information.
Carrier	This field can only be set to a carrier within the PageGate Admin. This field should be set to the carrier this recipient is tied to. For example, if you are trying to contact a Verizon device, you would need to create a Carrier called Verizon, then set this Recipient's carrier to Verizon.
Failover	If a message is not able to be delivered to this recipient, the message will be automatically redirected to whatever recipient you specify here.
ID/PIN or Email Addr	Enter the ID, PIN or Email address of the pager, cell phone, wireless device, or email account to be contacted.
Apply	Apply saves all recently made changes to a recipient's settings.

3.3.8.3 Send Messages

Send Messages

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

When using the Send Messages context menu option, you will receive a screen like this:

A screenshot of a web-based dialog box titled "Send Messages". It has three input fields: "Recipients" with a dropdown menu showing "All Recipients", "From" with an empty text box, and "Message" with a large empty text area and vertical scrollbars. At the bottom center is a "Send" button.

The Send Messages option, when used at the base Recipients tree, allows you to send a message to All Recipients. Simply enter information into the From and Message fields and click Send.

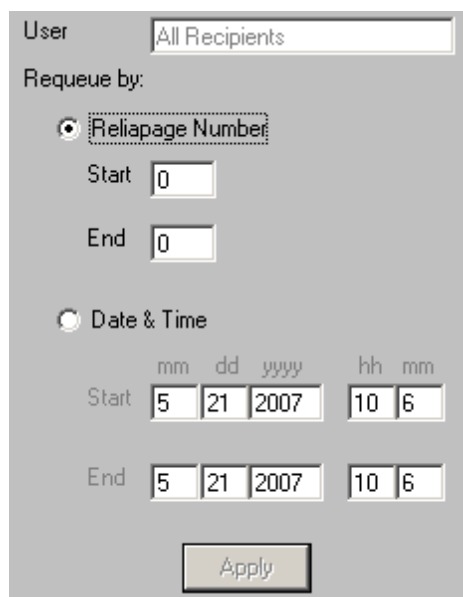
To select an individual recipient to send a message to, please see the Recipient Context Menu Options.

3.3.8.4 Requeue Messages

Requeue Messages

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

When using the Requeue Messages context menu option, you will receive a screen like this:

A screenshot of a web-based dialog box titled "Requeue Messages". It has a "User" dropdown menu showing "All Recipients". Below it is the "Requeue by:" section with two radio button options: "Reliepage Number" (selected) and "Date & Time". Under "Reliepage Number", there are "Start" and "End" input boxes, both containing the value "0". Under "Date & Time", there are "Start" and "End" input boxes, each containing a date and time in mm/dd/yyyy hh:mm format (e.g., 5/21/2007 10:06). At the bottom center is an "Apply" button.

The Requeue Messages option, when used at the base Recipients tree,

allows you to resend any message previously sent to All Recipients.

If the Reliabase option is enabled for recipients, you can select a range of Reliabase messages to resend.

Also, a date and time range of messages for all recipients can be resent.

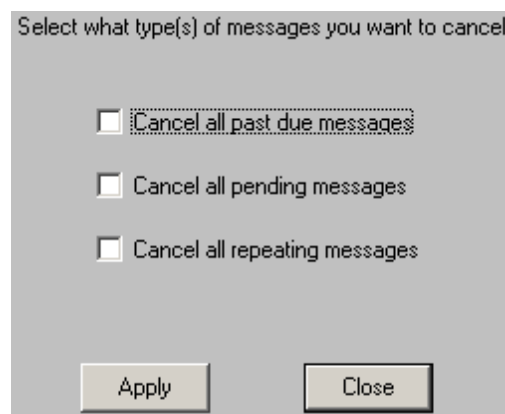
To requeue messages for an individual recipient, please see the Recipient Context Menu Options.

3.3.8.5 Cancel Messages

Cancel Messages

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

When using the Cancel Messages context menu option, you will receive a screen like this:



Select what type(s) of messages you want to cancel:

☐ Cancel all past due messages

☐ Cancel all pending messages

☐ Cancel all repeating messages

Apply Close

The Cancel Messages option, when used at the base Recipients tree, allows you to cancel three types of messages to All Recipients: Past Due, Pending, and Repeating Messages.

Past Due messages are Repeating Messages that should have gone out but haven't and can possibly interfere with the schedule of messages waiting to be sent.

Pending messages are any messages in the queue currently waiting to be sent.

Repeating messages are Scheduled Messages that repeat based on variables passed by the PageGate Client. For more information, please see the PageGate Client section of the manual.

For example, if you have a message set to repeat every hour, choosing the Cancel Repeating Messages option will stop that message from ever happening again. Choosing Cancel Past Due Messages will cancel any previous repeating messages that failed to go out but will not prevent future repeating messages from being sent.

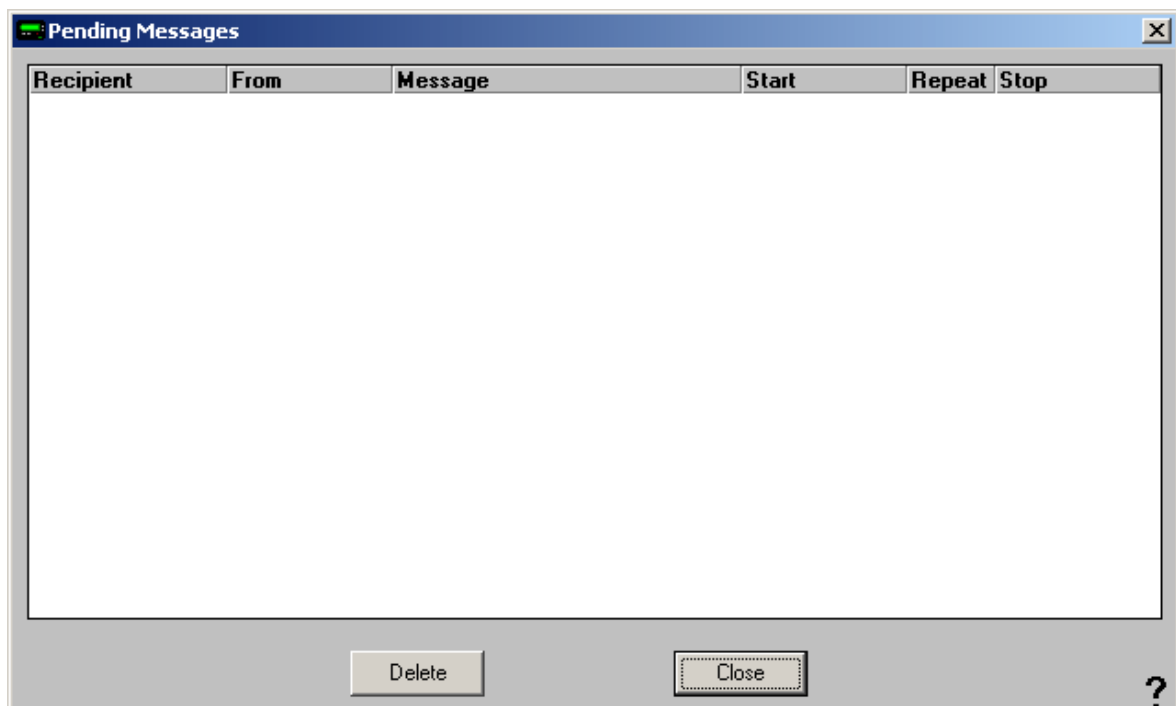
To Cancel messages for an individual recipient, please see the Recipient Context Menu Options.

3.3.8.6 Pending Messages

Pending Messages

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

When using the Pending Messages context menu option, you will see a dialog like this:



When used at the base Recipients tree, this dialog will display the current Pending Messages for all recipients.

As shown above, it will display the following information for each Pending Message:

Intended recipient, sender, content of the message, when the message is to be sent, whether the message will repeat or be sent only once, and when the message will stop being sent.

Any message displayed in this dialog may be highlighted and deleted via the Delete button.

Left clicking on Close will close this dialog.

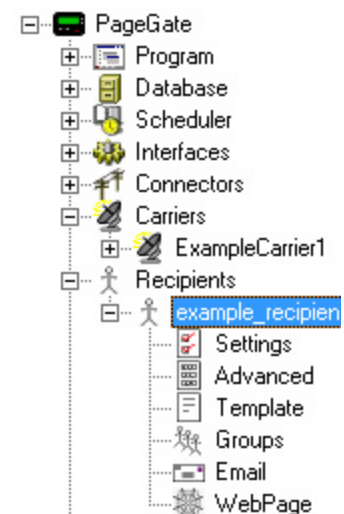
3.3.8.7 Recipient Settings

Recipient Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

After a recipient has been added, you can click on the + next to the Recipient's name (shown right) to reveal the following options:

- Settings
- Advanced
- Template
- Groups
- Email
- WebPage



3.3.8.7.1 Context Menu Options

Context Menu Options

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

As with most functions within the PageGate Admin, most of the Recipient functions are contained within the Context Menu:

To access the Context Menu, Right Click on the Individual Recipient's



name.

Within the Context Menu,
there are five options
(shown above):

- Send Message
- Requeue Messages
- Cancel Messages
- Pending Messages
- Rename
- Delete

3.3.8.7.1.1 Send Message

Send Message

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

When using the Send Messages context menu option, you will receive a screen like this:

A screenshot of a web-based form titled "Send Message". The form has a light gray background. It contains three input fields: "Recipient" with the text "example_recipient", "From" which is empty, and "Message" which is a large text area. Below the "Message" field is a "Send" button.

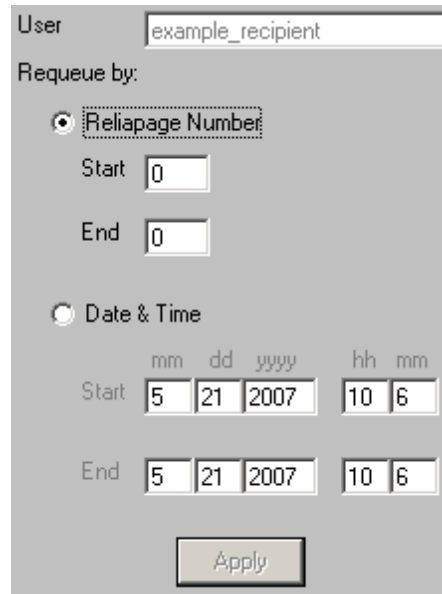
The Send Message option, when used on an individual Recipient, allows you to send a message to a single recipient. Simply enter information into the From and Message fields and click Send.

3.3.8.7.1.2 Requeue Message

Requeue Message

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

When using the Requeue Messages context menu option, you will receive a screen like this:



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Requeue Messages". At the top, there is a "User" field with the value "example_recipient". Below it, the "Requeue by:" section has two radio button options. The first option, "Reliepage Number", is selected. It includes "Start" and "End" fields, both containing the value "0". The second option, "Date & Time", is unselected. It includes "Start" and "End" fields, each with sub-fields for "mm", "dd", "yyyy", "hh", and "mm". The "Start" date is 5/21/2007 at 10:06, and the "End" date is also 5/21/2007 at 10:06. At the bottom of the dialog is an "Apply" button.

The Requeue Messages option, when used on an individual Recipient, allows you to resend any message previously sent to the selected recipient.

If the Reliepage option is enabled for recipients, you can select a range of Reliepage messages to resend.

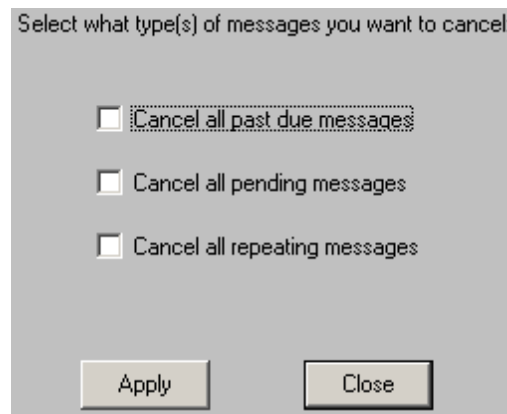
Also, a date and time range of messages for all recipients can be resent.

3.3.8.7.1.3 Cancel Message

Cancel Message

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

When using the Cancel Messages context menu option, you will receive a screen like this:



The Cancel Messages option, when used on an individual Recipient, allows you to cancel three types of messages to the individual recipient: Past Due, Pending, and Repeating Messages.

Past Due messages are Repeating Messages that should have gone out but haven't and can possibly interfere with the schedule of messages waiting to be sent.

Pending messages are any messages in the queue currently waiting to be sent.

Repeating messages are Scheduled Messages that repeat based on variables passed by the PageGate Client. For more information, please see the PageGate Client section of the manual.

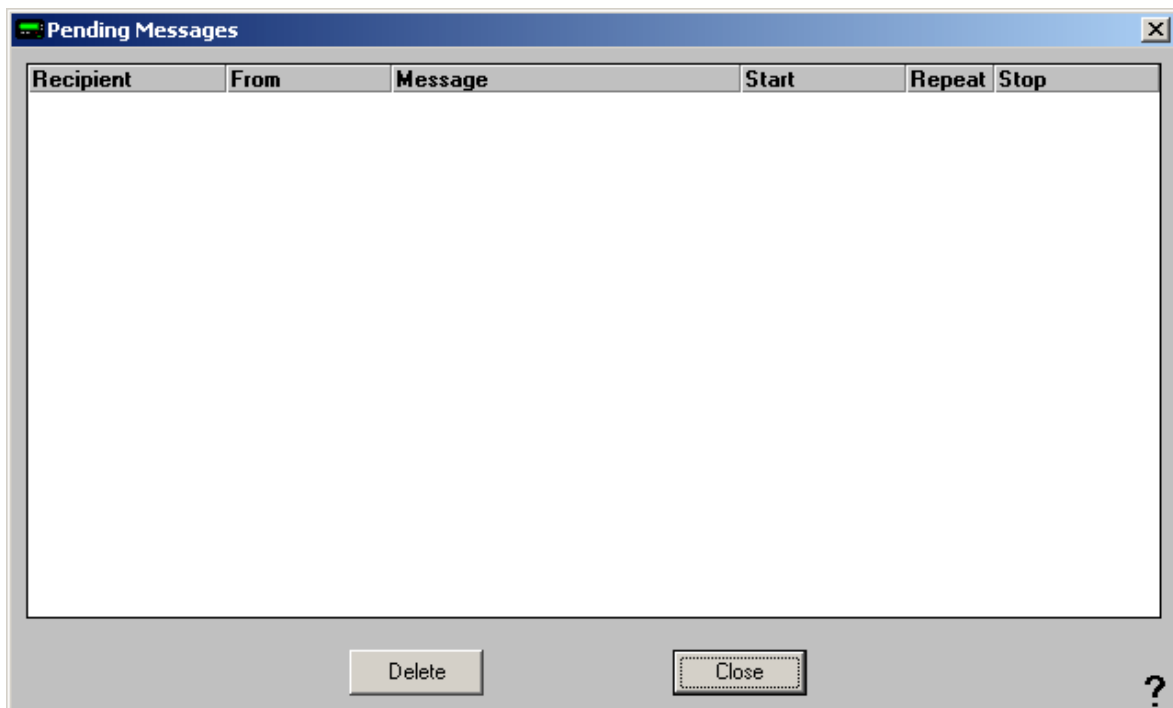
For example, if you have a message set to repeat every hour, choosing the Cancel Repeating Messages option will stop that message from ever happening again. Choosing Cancel Past Due Messages will cancel any previous repeating messages that failed to go out but will not prevent future repeating messages from being sent.

3.3.8.7.1.4 Pending Message

Pending Message

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

When using the Pending Messages context menu option, you will see a dialog like this:



When on an individual Recipient, this dialog will display the currently Pending Messages only for the selected recipient.

As shown above, it will display the following information for each Pending Message:

Intended recipient, sender, content of the message, when the message is to be sent, whether the message will repeat or be sent only once, and when the message will stop being sent.

Any message displayed in this dialog may be highlighted and deleted via the Delete button.

Left clicking on Close will close this dialog.

3.3.8.7.1.5 Rename

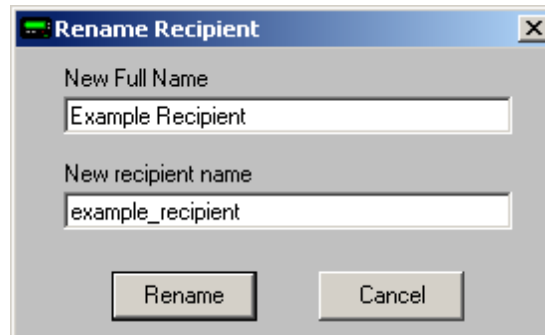
Rename

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

NOTE: Modifications to a recipient's name are not picked up by the global PageGate Server's processes until the services are cycled. Any time you make a modification to a recipient's name, be sure to stop and start the PageGate service so the change can

propagate out to the sub-modules.

When using the Rename context menu option, you will see a dialog like this:



The Rename function, as its name indicates, allows you to give a recipient a new Full Name or Recipient Name.

The Full Name is the field displayed to end users in the PageGate Client Interface.

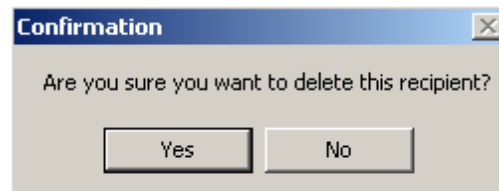
The Recipient Name is the field used internally by all other PageGate Interfaces.

3.3.8.7.1.6 Delete

Delete

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

When using the Delete context menu option, you will see a dialog like this:

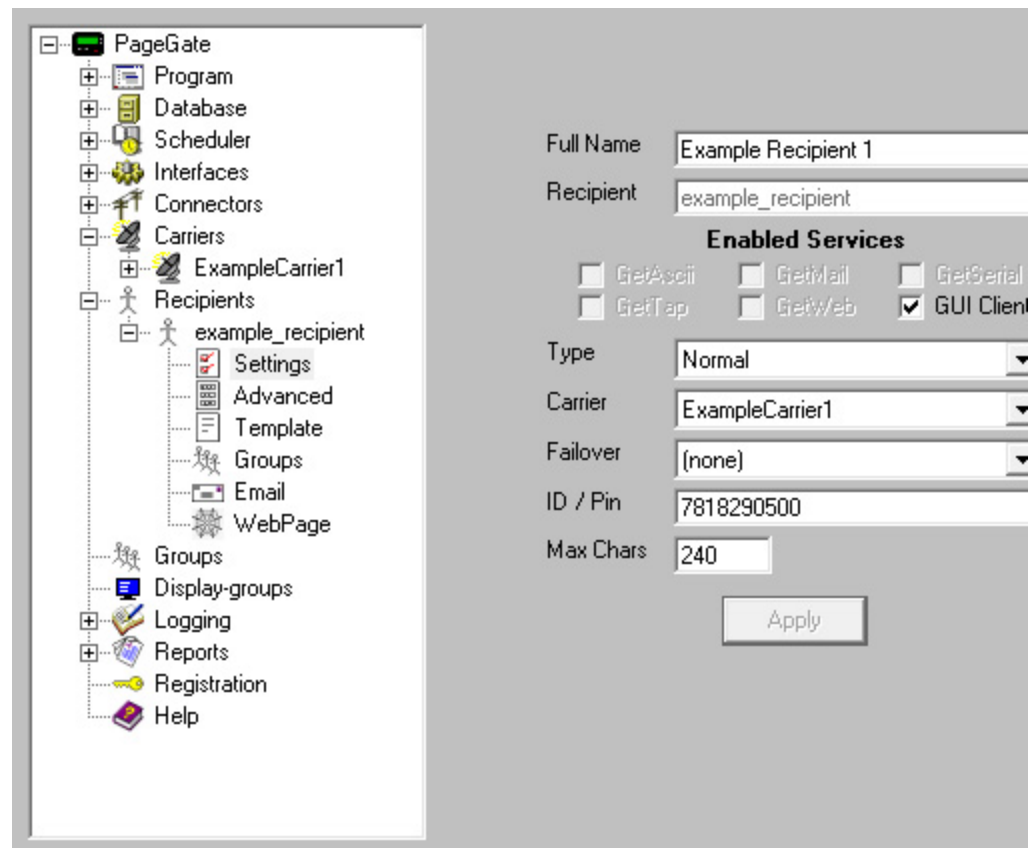


The Delete function, as its name indicates, permanently removes a recipient from the Recipients list.

3.3.8.7.2 Settings

Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



Setting	Function
Full Name	This field is what is displayed in the GUI Client and paging websites.
Recipient	After a recipient has been added, the Recipient field cannot be modified within the settings of the recipient. To modify the Recipient name, please Right Click on the recipient's name in the left hand column and select the Rename option.
Enabled Services	<p>The list of PageGate modules that are enabled and available are listed here. Modules that are not highlighted are not available. Modules not checked are not enabled for this recipient. For example, if the GetAscii module isn't enabled for your recipient, the GetAscii module will not be able to send this recipient any messages.</p> <p>If an Interface is not available and it should be, please make sure that the Interface is enabled both in the Program Settings and in</p>

	the Interface Settings.
Type	Typically, this field should be set to Normal. There are, however, four options that can be set. Please see the Recipient Type section of the manual for more information.
Carrier	This field can only be set to a carrier within the PageGate Admin. This field should be set to the carrier this recipient is tied to. For example, if you are trying to contact a Nextel device, you would need to create a Carrier called Nextel, then set this Recipient's carrier to Nextel.
Failover	If a message is not able to be delivered to this recipient, the message will be automatically redirected to whatever recipient you specify here.
ID/PIN	Enter the ID, PIN, or Email address of the pager, cell phone, wireless device, or email account to be contacted.
Max Chars	The number of characters PageGate will send to this recipient from a message. If this number is greater than the Max Characters setting for the carrier, the message will be broken up into multiple messages (according to the carrier's max character settings), numbered, and sent
Apply	Apply saves all recently made changes to a recipient's settings.

3.3.8.7.3 Advanced

Advanced[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Setting	Function
Comment1 - Comment4	These four fields data fields that are stored in each recipient. If the GUI Client Interface is used, the information in these fields can be viewed by the users and the recipient lists can be filtered by this information.
Manager	If the GUI Client Security has been enabled, this is the user that has

	administrative privileges to edit this recipient.
Priority	This field will set the priority of the Recipient. Priority determines the order in which messages are handled. This value may be set from 1 to 100, where 1 is the highest priority and 100 is the lowest priority.
Hold Messages	Set this field to when the program should start holding messages in queue for this recipient.
Start Holding at	Set this field to when the program should start holding messages in queue for this recipient.
Stop Holding at	Set this field to when the program should send all held messages to this recipient.
Apply	This button saves all recent changes made to a Recipient's Advanced Settings.

3.3.8.7.4 Template

Recipient Template

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

See the Templates portion of the manual.

3.3.8.7.5 Groups

Groups

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The screenshot shows a web interface for managing recipient groups. It is divided into two main sections: 'Non-member' and 'Member'. The 'Non-member' section contains a list box with two entries: 'example_group_1' and 'example_group_2'. The 'Member' section is currently empty. At the bottom of the interface, there is an 'Apply' button.

The groups sub-section of the Recipient allows you to specify which groups this recipient is a member of.

To add this recipient to the member list of a group, simply click on the name of

the group under the "Non-member" category.

To remove this recipient from the member list of a group, simply click on the name of the group under the "Member" category.

3.3.8.7.6 Email

Email

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

NOTE: To access the Email sub-section of a Recipient, the GetMail Interface **must** be enabled.

Mailbox Name

Forward Copy To

☐ Enable POP Access to Messages

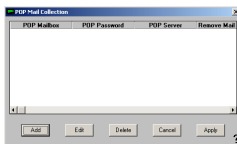
POP Password

Setting	Function
Mailbox Name	By default, the email address of a PageGate recipient is the same as the recipient's name. This can be changed by entering a different mailbox name here. This option should only be changed if PageGate is going to be hosting mailboxes.
Forward Copy To	If an email address is entered into this field, any message queued for this recipient will also be forwarded to the specified email address.
Enabled POP Access to Messages	If PageGate is going to be hosting mailboxes for a domain and you wish those mailboxes to be accessible by programs such as Outlook, Outlook Express, Incredimail, The Bat!, etc, please a check in this box.
POP Password	This option is only available when "Enable POP Access to

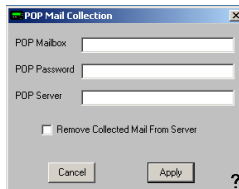
	Messages" is enabled. This field set the password to check the email address tied to this recipient.
POP Mail Collection	Click on this button to access the POP Mail Collection options.
Email Aliases	This option is only available when "Enable POP Access to Messages" is enabled. Click the Email Aliases button to add, edit, or remove an Email Alias.
Apply	This button saves any recent changes to the Email section of the Recipient.

3.3.8.7.6.1 POP Mail Collection

POP Mail Collection

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)


The POP Mail Collection function of the Email sub-section of the Recipient settings allows you to have PageGate check an email address for this recipient. All email found in that mailbox will then be redirected to the recipient. To configure the POP Mail Collection, click Add.



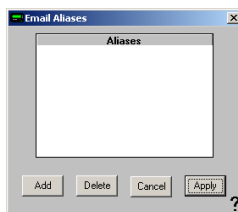
Setting	Function
POP Mailbox	The mailbox PageGate needs to check. Some servers require the full email address to be entered here while others will accept the prefix by itself.
POP Password	Enter the password to check the email address here.
POP Server	Enter the POP3 server for the email address.
Remove Collected Mail From Server	Enable this option if you want all email pulled from the email address removed from the mail host.
Cancel	Discards all recent changes to this POP Mail Collection rule.
Apply	Saves all recent changes to this POP Mail Collection rule.

3.3.8.7.6.2 Email Aliases

Email Aliases

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Each PageGate recipient can accept messages from more than one local email address. These additional names are called 'aliases'. For example, if you wanted a PageGate recipient to receive all messages addressed to jeremy@localdomain.com, jermey@localdomain.com, and jremey@localdomain.com, you would set the additional information in this section.



Button	Function
Add	This button allows you to add an alias. When you click on this button, you will be prompted to enter the name of the new alias.
Delete	Highlight an existing alias and click on Delete to remove that alias.
Cancel	Clicking this button will remove all recent changes to the Email aliases.
Apply	Clicking this button will save all recent changes to the Email aliases.

3.3.8.7.7 Web Page

Web Page

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

NOTE: To access the WebPage sub-section of a Recipient, the GetWeb Interface **must** be enabled.

Template File [dropdown]

Text1 [text box]
 Text2 [text box]
 Text3 [text box]
 Text4 [text box]
 Text5 [text box]
 Text6 [text box]
 Text7 [text box]
 Text8 [text box]
 Text9 [text box]
 Text10 [text box]

Image1 [text box]
 Image2 [text box]
 Image3 [text box]
 Image4 [text box]
 Image5 [text box]

☐ Custom Page ☐ Full Names

Apply

Setting	Function
Template File	<p>A custom web page could be written for each recipient but this approach may be overwhelming for a large-scale installation. PageGate allows you to use our template files to automatically create web pages recipients.</p> <p>Choose a template file from the drop-down list (template files belong in the 'templates' directory beneath the Web Pages Path directory).</p>
Text1 - Text10	Type what you wish to appear for each section of text in the template. For example, Text1 corresponds to the title, so you might want to type "Paging Website" in Text1.
Image1 - Image5	Type the name of the image to be referenced by the selected template.
Custom Page	Enable this option if you aren't using one of our templates or have modified one of our templates and have saved it under a different name.
Full Names	Enable this option if you wish the Recipients' full names to appear on the webpage.
Apply	This button saves any recent changes to the WebPage section of the Recipient.

3.3.9 Groups

Groups

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

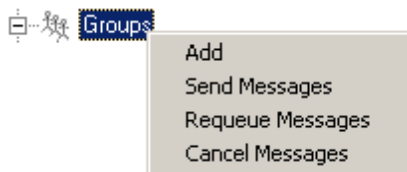
Groups are a collection of recipients tied together under one name. It can make things a bit easier if specific recipients will need to be messaged repeatedly because you can simply send to one name instead of selecting every recipient each time.

3.3.9.1 Overview

Overview

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

As with most functions within the PageGate Admin, most of the Group functions are contained within the Context Menu:



To access the Context Menu, simply Right Click on the word Groups.

Within the Context Menu, there are five options (shown above):

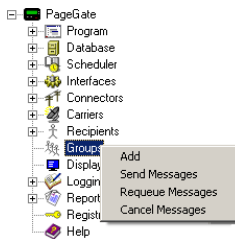
- Add
- Send Messages
- Requeue Messages
- Cancel Messages

3.3.9.2 Adding a Group

Adding a Group

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The process for adding a Group is fairly simple, though some of the options you have when adding a Group can be quite complex. To bring up the menu to add a Group, simply Right Click on the word Recipients in the PageGate Admin, then left click add or hit Ctrl+N on your keyboard and select the New Group option.



When adding a group, you will be presented with this screen:

Setting	Function
Description	This field is what is displayed in the GUI Client and paging websites.
Group	This field is only referenced internally by the program. In the GetAscii module, for example, it is the Group field NOT the Description field that is referenced for messaging purposes.
Enabled Services	<p>The list of PageGate modules that are enabled and available are listed here. Modules that are not highlighted are not available. Modules not checked are not enabled for this group. For example, if the GetAscii module isn't enabled for your group, the GetAscii module will not be able to send this group any messages.</p> <p>If an Interface is not available and it should be, please make sure that the Interface is enabled both in the Program Settings and in the Interface Settings.</p>
On-Call Group	This option should only be enabled if the members of this group should only be paged at certain times or on certain days of the week. Please refer to the On-Call Settings for further information.
On-Call Schedule	This option is only available when On-Call Group is checked. Clicking on this button will allow you to configure a time and date schedule for when the members of this group can and cannot be messaged.
Apply	Apply saves all recently made changes to a Group's settings.

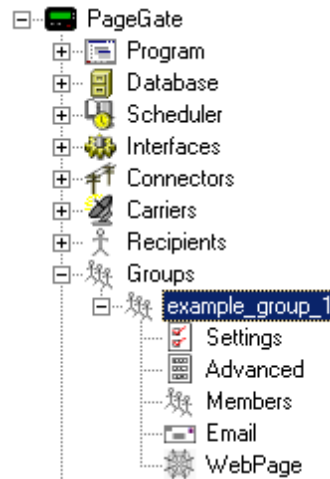
3.3.9.3 Group Settings

Group Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

After a group has been added, you can click on the + next to the Group's name (shown right) to reveal the following options:

- Settings
- Advanced
- Members
- Email
- WebPage

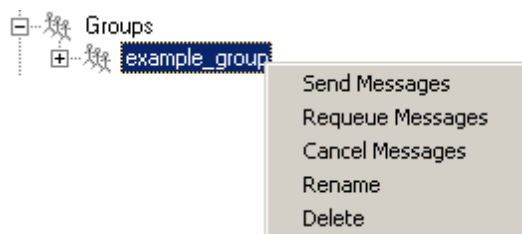


3.3.9.3.1 Context Menu Options

Context Menu Options

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

As with most functions within the PageGate Admin, most of the Group functions are contained within the Context Menu:



To access the Context Menu, simply Right Click on the Individual Group's name.

Within the Context Menu, there are five options (shown above):

- Send Message
- Requeue Messages
- Cancel Messages

- Rename
- Delete

3.3.9.3.1.1 Send Message

Send Message

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

When using the Send Messages context menu option, you will receive a screen like this:

A screenshot of a web form titled "Send Message". The form has a light gray background. It contains three input fields: "Group" with the text "example_group", "From" which is empty, and "Message" which is a large text area. Below these fields is a "Send" button.

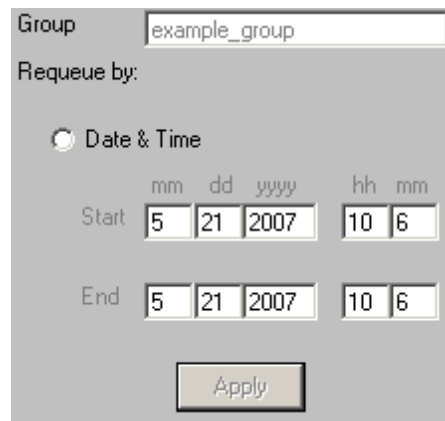
The Send Message option, when used on an individual Group, allows you to send a message to a single group. Simply enter information into the From and Message fields and click Send.

3.3.9.3.1.2 Requeue Messages

Requeue Messages

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

When using the Requeue Messages context menu option, you will receive a screen like this:



Group: example_group

Requeue by:

☐ Date & Time

Start: mm dd yyyy hh mm
5 21 2007 10 6

End: mm dd yyyy hh mm
5 21 2007 10 6

Apply

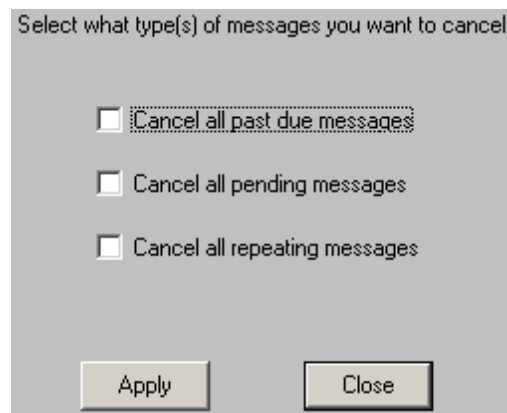
The Requeue Messages option, when used on an individual Group, allows you to resend any message previously sent to the selected group by selecting a date and time range.

3.3.9.3.1.3 Cancel Messages

Cancel Messages

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

When using the Cancel Messages context menu option, you will receive a screen like this:



Select what type(s) of messages you want to cancel:

☐ Cancel all past due messages

☐ Cancel all pending messages

☐ Cancel all repeating messages

Apply Close

The Cancel Messages option, when used on an individual group, allows you to cancel three types of messages to the selected group: Past Due, Pending, and Repeating Messages.

Past Due messages are Repeating Messages that should have gone out but haven't and can possibly interfere with the schedule of messages waiting to be sent.

Pending messages are any messages in the queue currently waiting to be sent.

Repeating messages are Scheduled Messages that repeat based on variables passed by the PageGate Client. For more information, please see the PageGate Client section of the manual.

For example, if you have a message set to repeat every hour, choosing the Cancel Repeating Messages option will stop that message from ever happening again. Choosing Cancel Past Due Messages will cancel any previous repeating messages that failed to go out but will not prevent future repeating messages from being sent.

To Cancel messages for an individual recipient, please see the Group Context Menu Options.

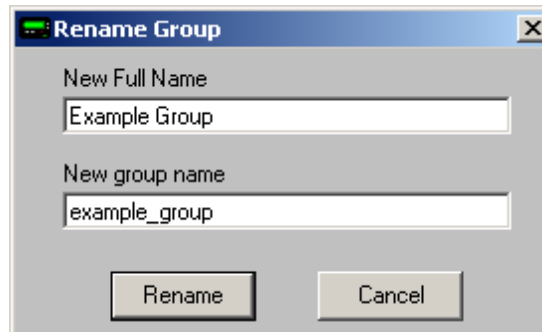
3.3.9.3.1.4 Rename

Rename

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

NOTE: Modifications to a group's name are not picked up by the global PageGate Server's processes until the services are cycled. Any time you make a modification to a group's name, be sure to stop and start the PageGate service so the change can propagate out to the sub-modules.

When using the Rename context menu option, you will see a dialog like this:

A screenshot of a Windows-style dialog box titled "Rename Group". It contains two text input fields. The first field is labeled "New Full Name" and contains the text "Example Group". The second field is labeled "New group name" and contains the text "example_group". At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "Rename" and "Cancel".

The Rename function, as its name indicates, allows you to give a recipient a new Full Name or Group Name.

The Full Name is the field displayed to end users in the PageGate Client Interface.

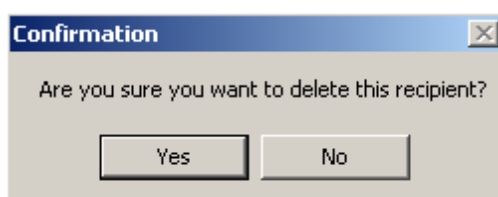
The Group Name is the field used internally by all other PageGate Interfaces.

3.3.9.3.1.5 Delete

Delete

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

When using the Delete context menu option, you will see a dialog like this:

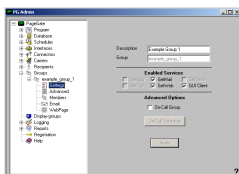


The Delete function, as its name indicates, permanently removes a group from the Groups list.

3.3.9.3.2 Settings

Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



Setting	Function
Description	This field is what is displayed in the GUI Client and paging websites.
Group	After a group has been added, the Group field cannot be modified within the settings of the group. To modify the Group name, please Right Click on the group's name in the left hand column and select the Rename option.
Enabled Services	The list of PageGate modules that are enabled and available are listed here. Modules that are not highlighted are not available. Modules not checked are not enabled for this group. For example, if the GetAscii module isn't enabled for your group, the GetAscii

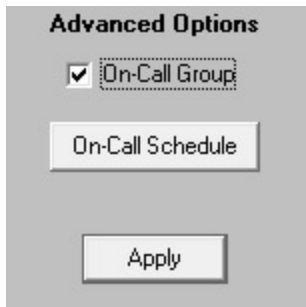
	<p>module will not be able to send this group any messages.</p> <p>If an Interface is not available and it should be, please make sure that the Interface is enabled both in the Program Settings and in the Interface Settings.</p>
On-Call Group	This option should only be enabled if the members of this group should only be paged at certain times or on certain days of the week. Please refer to the On-Call Settings for further information.
On-Call Schedule	This option is only available when On-Call Group is checked. Clicking on this button will allow you to configure a time and date schedule for when the members of this group can and cannot be messaged.
Apply	Apply saves all recently made changes to a recipient's settings.

3.3.9.3.3 On-Call Schedule

On-Call Schedule

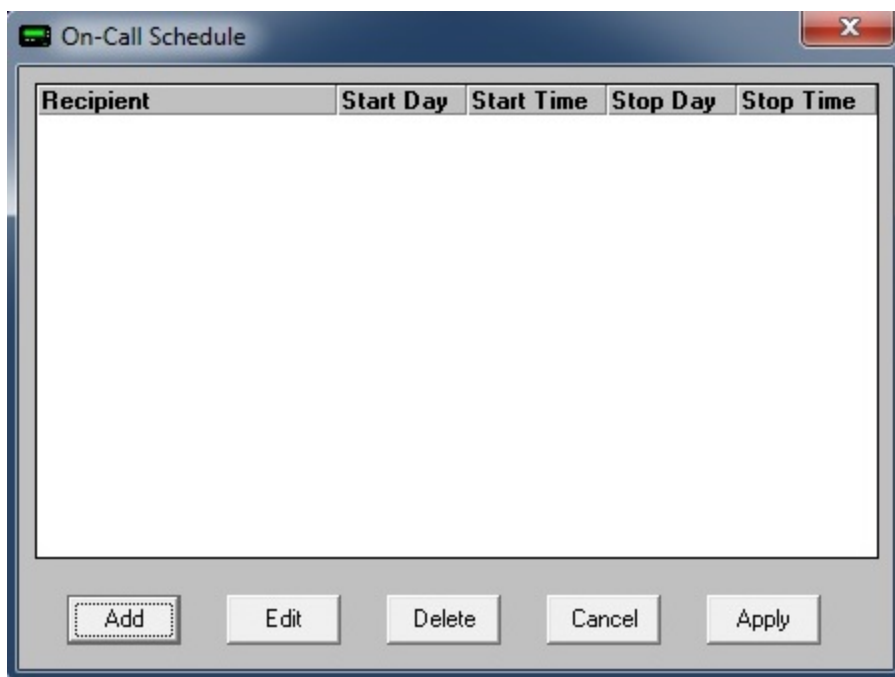
[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

NOTE: This option is only available when On-Call Group is checked.



The image shows a dialog box titled "Advanced Options". Inside, there is a checked checkbox labeled "On-Call Group". Below this checkbox is a button labeled "On-Call Schedule". At the bottom of the dialog is an "Apply" button.

Clicking on the On-Call Schedule button will present this dialog:



As shown above, the five options are Add, Edit, Delete, Cancel, and Apply.

Option	Function	
Add	<p>This option will add a new line to the On-Call Schedule and will present the dialog shown to the right.</p> <p>You'll need to specify a recipient or group that this schedule applies to, then select the day and time range you want this entry to apply for.</p>	
Edit	If you highlight an entry in the On-Call Schedule, you can click this button to edit the entry's settings.	
Delete	If you highlight an entry in the On-Call Schedule, this button will remove it from the table.	

Cancel 1	Click this button to Cancel out of the On-Call Schedule screen and undo any changes you've made.	
Apply	Click this button to Apply the settings of the On-Call Schedule.	

3.3.9.3.4 Advanced

Advanced[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Setting	Function
Comment1 - Comment4	These four fields data fields that are stored in each group. If the GUI Client Interface is used, the information in these fields can be viewed by the users and the group lists can be filtered by this information.
Manager	If the GUI Client Security has been enabled, this is the user that has administrative privileges to edit this group.
Hold Messages	If this option is selected, messages will be scheduled but not processed for this group during a specified time.
Start Holding at	Set this field to when the program should start holding messages in queue for this group.
Stop Holding at	Set this field to when the program should send all held messages to this group.
Apply	This button saves all recent changes made to a Group's Advanced Settings.

3.3.9.3.5 Members

Members		Top Previous Next
Non-members	Members	
<div>example_recipient</div>		
<div>Apply</div>		

The Members sub-section of a Group allows you to specify which Recipients are a member of the selected group.

To add a member to the member list of this group, simply click on the name of the Recipient under the "Non-members" category.

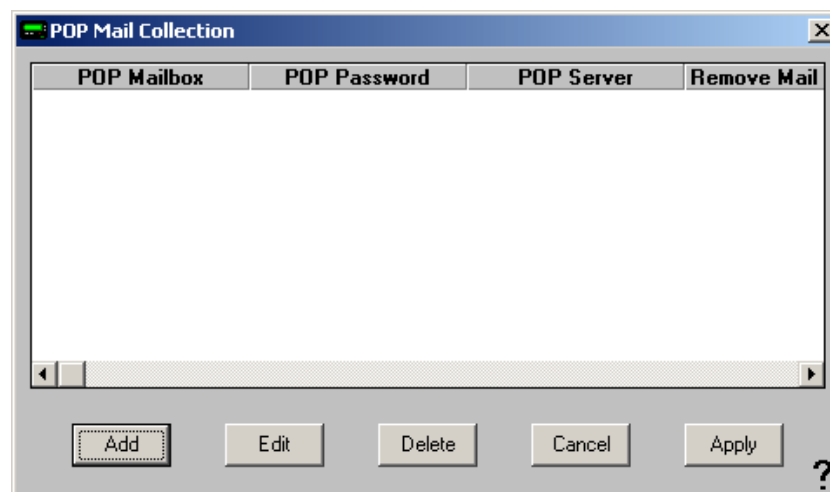
To remove a member from the member list of this group, simply click on the name of the member under the "Members" category.

3.3.9.3.6 Email

Email	Top Previous Next
<p>NOTE: To access the Email sub-section of a Group, the GetMail Interface must be enabled.</p>	
<div>Mailbox Name <input type="text" value="example_group_1"/></div> <div>Forward Copy To <input type="text"/></div> <div><input type="checkbox"/> Enable POP Access to Messages</div> <div>POP Password <input type="text"/></div> <div><div>POP Mail Collection</div><div>Email Aliases</div><div>Apply</div></div>	

Setting	Function
Mailbox Name	By default, the email address of a PageGate group is the same as the group's name. This can be changed by entering a different mailbox name here. This option should only be changed if PageGate is going to be hosting mailboxes.
Forward Copy To	If an email address is entered into this field, any messages queued for this group will also be forwarded to the specified email address.
Enabled POP Access to Messages	If PageGate is going to be hosting mailboxes for a domain and you wish those mailboxes to be accessible by programs such as Outlook, Outlook Express, Incredimail, The Bat!, etc, please a check in this box.
POP Password	This option is only available when "Enable POP Access to Messages" is enabled. This field set the password to check the email address tied to this recipient.
POP Mail Collection	Click on this button to access the POP Mail Collection options.
Email Aliases	This option is only available when "Enable POP Access to Messages" is enabled. Click the Email Aliases button to add, edit, or remove an Email Alias.
Apply	This button saves any recent changes to the Email section of the Group.

3.3.9.3.6.1 POP Mail Collection

POP Mail Collection[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The POP Mail Collection function of the Email sub-section of the Group settings allows you to have PageGate check an email address for this group. All email found in that mailbox will then be redirected to the group. To configure the POP Mail Collection, click Add.

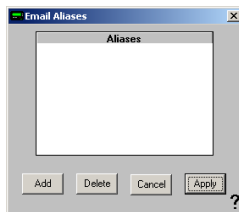
Setting	Function
POP Mailbox	The mailbox PageGate needs to check. Some servers require the full email address to be entered here while others will accept the prefix by itself.
POP Password	Enter the password to check the email address here.
POP Server	Enter the POP3 server for the email address.
Remove Collected Mail From Server	Enable this option if you want all email pulled from the email address removed from the mail host.
Cancel	Discards all recent changes to this POP Mail Collection rule.
Apply	Saves all recent changes to this POP Mail Collection rule.

3.3.9.3.6.2 Email Aliases

Email Aliases

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Each PageGate group can accept messages from more than one local email address. These additional names are called 'aliases'. For example, if you wanted a PageGate recipient to receive all messages addressed to group1@localdomain.com, 1group@localdomain.com, and gourp@localdomain.com, you would set the additional information in this section.



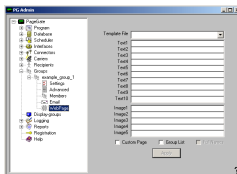
Button	Function
Add	This button allows you to add an alias. When you click on this button, you will be prompted to enter the name of the new alias.
Delete	Highlight an existing alias and click on Delete to remove that alias.
Cancel	Clicking this button will remove all recent changes to the Email aliases.
Apply	Clicking this button will save all recent changes to the Email aliases.

3.3.9.3.7 WebPage

WebPage

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

NOTE: To access the WebPage sub-section of a Group, the GetWeb Interface **must** be enabled.



Setting	Function
Template File	A custom web page could be written for each group but this approach may be overwhelming for a large-scale installation. PageGate allows you to use our template files to automatically create web pages based on your groups.

	Choose a template file from the drop-down list (template files belong in the 'templates' directory beneath the Web Pages Path directory).
Text1 - Text10	Type what you wish to appear for each section of text in the template. For example, Text1 corresponds to the title, so you might want to type "Paging Website" in Text1.
Image1 - Image5	Type the name of the image to be referenced by the selected template.
Custom Page	Enable this option if you aren't using one of our templates or have modified one of our templates and have saved it under a different name.
Group List	Enable this option if you only want the Member's List of this group to be displayed in the webpage. This is a good way to limit what users can and cannot be paged from the paging website.
Full Names	Enable this option if you wish the Recipients' full names to appear on the webpage.
Apply	This button saves any recent changes to the WebPage section of the Recipient.

3.3.9.4 Send Messages

Send Messages

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

When using the Send Messages context menu option, you will receive a screen like this:

The Send Messages option, when used at the base Groups tree, allows you to send a message to All Groups. Simply enter information into the From and Message fields and click Send.

To select an individual recipient to send a message to, please see the

Group Context Menu Options.

3.3.9.5 Requeue Messages

Requeue Messages

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

When using the Requeue Messages context menu option, you will receive a screen like this:



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Requeue Messages". At the top, there is a "Group" dropdown menu set to "All Groups". Below it is the label "Requeue by:". Under this label, there is a radio button labeled "Date & Time" which is selected. Below the radio button, there are two rows of date and time input fields. The first row is labeled "Start" and the second row is labeled "End". Each row has five input fields: "mm", "dd", "yyyy", "hh", and "mm". The "Start" row has values 5, 21, 2007, 10, and 6. The "End" row has values 5, 21, 2007, 10, and 6. At the bottom of the dialog box is an "Apply" button.

The Requeue Messages option, when used at the base Groups tree, allows you to resend any message previously sent to All Groups by selecting a date and time range..

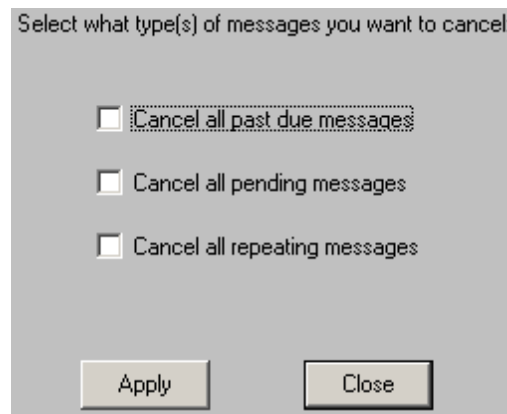
To requeue messages for an individual recipient, please see the Group Context Menu Options.

3.3.9.6 Cancel Messages

Cancel Messages

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

When using the Cancel Messages context menu option, you will receive a screen like this:



The Cancel Messages option, when used at the base Groups tree, allows you to cancel three types of messages to All Groups: Past Due, Pending, and Repeating Messages.

Past Due messages are Repeating Messages that should have gone out but haven't and can possibly interfere with the schedule of messages waiting to be sent.

Pending messages are any messages in the queue currently waiting to be sent.

Repeating messages are Scheduled Messages that repeat based on variables passed by the PageGate Client. For more information, please see the PageGate Client section of the manual.

For example, if you have a message set to repeat every hour, choosing the Cancel Repeating Messages option will stop that message from ever happening again. Choosing Cancel Past Due Messages will cancel any previous repeating messages that failed to go out but will not prevent future repeating messages from being sent.

To Cancel messages for an individual recipient, please see the Group Context Menu Options.

3.3.10 Display Groups

Display Groups

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Display groups can be created so an Administrator can create a group of recipients

and/or "real" groups and lock the PageGate Client to only be able to view the members of a particular display group.

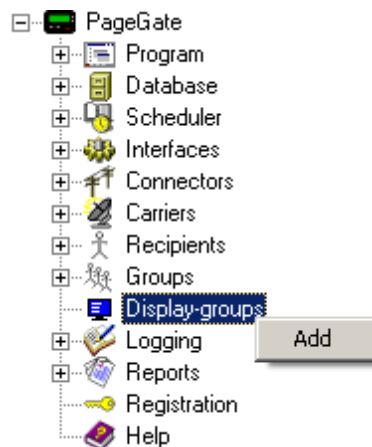
Which is to say, if an Administrator doesn't want everyone to be able to view all groups, they can lock a particular user's viewable list to the member list of a Display Group.

3.3.10.1 Creating a Display Group

Creating a Display Group

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

To add a Display Group, simply Right Click on the words Display Group in the PageGate Admin, then left click add or hit Ctrl+N on your keyboard and select the New Display Group option.



When adding a Display Group, you will be presented with this option:

A screenshot of a dialog box for adding a new display group. It has two text input fields: 'Description' and 'Group'. Below the fields is an 'Apply' button.

Setting	Function
Description	This field is what is displayed in the GUI Client and paging websites.

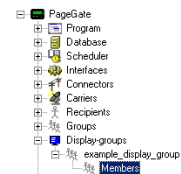
Group	This field is only referenced internally by the program. In the GetAscii module, for example, it is the Group field NOT the Description field that is referenced for messaging purposes.
Apply	Apply saves all recently made changes to a Display Group's settings.

3.3.10.2 Members

Members

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

After a group has been added, you can click on the + next to the Display Group's name (shown right) to reveal the following options: Members



The Members sub-section of a Display Group allows you to specify which Recipients and Groups are a member of the selected group.

To add a member to the member list of this group, simply click on the name of the Recipient or Group under the "Non-members" category.

To remove a member from the member list of this group, simply click on the name of the member under the "Members" category.

3.3.11 Logging

Logging

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

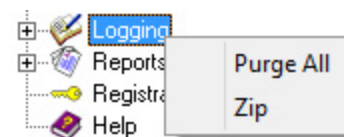
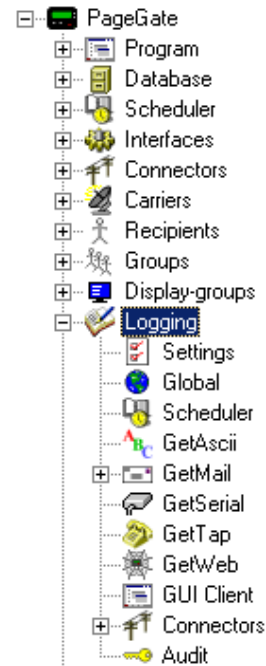
The Logging subsection of the PageGate Admin is found beneath the PageGate object (shown right) and contains settings and information that relate to how PageGate keeps its logs.

By clicking on the + next to Logging, it will expand Logging's sub-sections:

- Settings
- Global
- Scheduler
- GetAscii
- GetMail
- GetSerial
- GetTap
- GetWeb
- GUI Client
- Connectors
- Audit

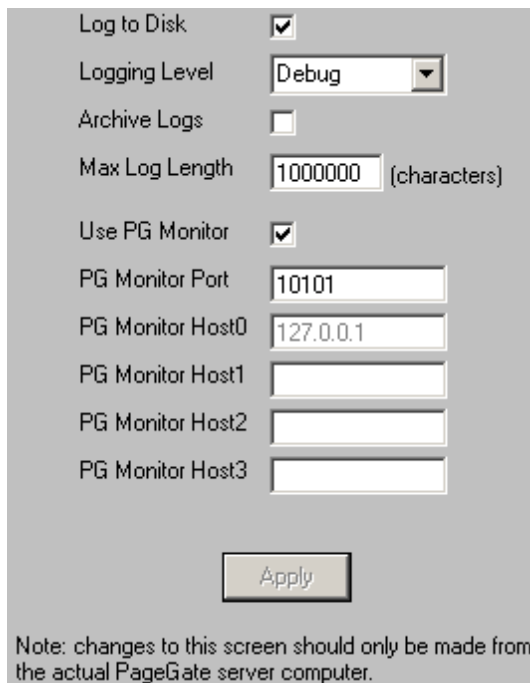
Right clicking on Logging will provide the following options:

- Purge All: This option will purge the content of all of the PageGate Server's logs.
- Zip: This option will compress the contents of the PageGate Server's logs in to a zip file named pglogs.zip located in the PageGate Logging directory. This is extremely useful when interacting with Tech Support.



3.3.11.1 Settings

Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)


Log to Disk ☒

Logging Level Debug ▾

Archive Logs ☐

Max Log Length 1000000 (characters)

Use PG Monitor ☒

PG Monitor Port 10101

PG Monitor Host0 127.0.0.1

PG Monitor Host1

PG Monitor Host2

PG Monitor Host3

Apply

Note: changes to this screen should only be made from the actual PageGate server computer.

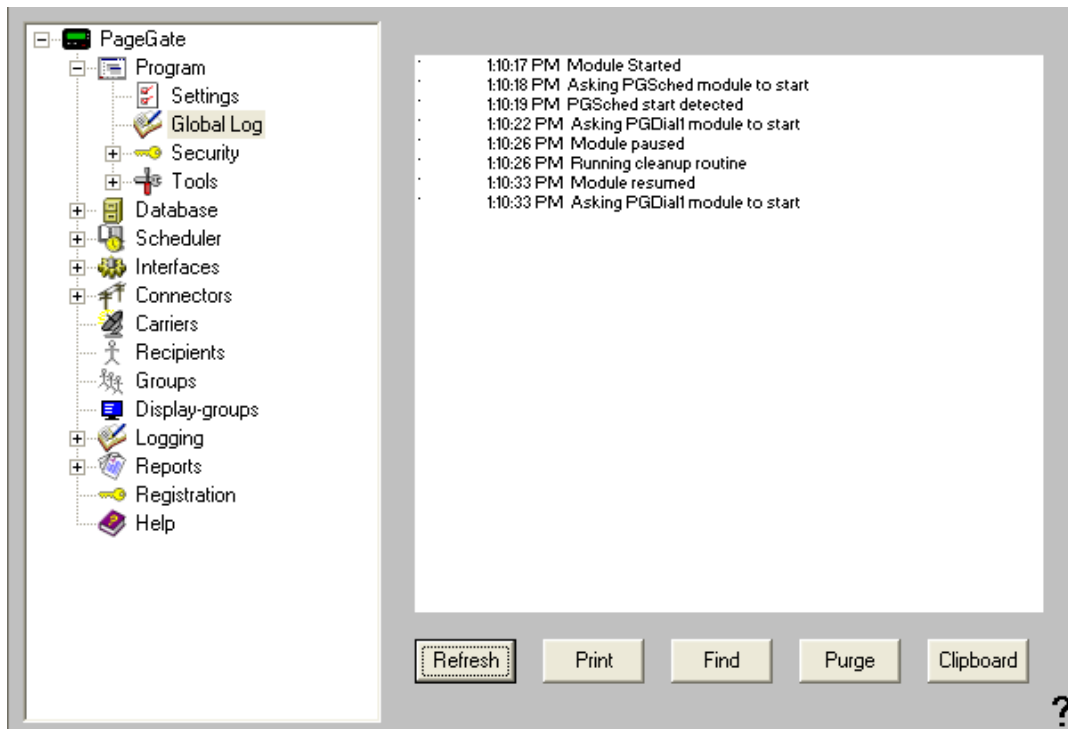
Setting	Function
Log to Disk	When this option is checked, all events are written to the log files. Unchecking this option disables PageGate's logging.
Logging Level	There are three levels of detail for the PageGate logs: Summary, Detail, and Debug. Summary will only write basic information to the log files. Detail will write the specific commands sent and received. Debug will keep track of every command and response issue to and from PageGate.
Archive Logs	Enabling this option will allow the day's logs to be archived. When the midnight cleanup routine runs, instead of purging the log files, PageGate moves them to a sub-directory of the Logging Directory named the day's date.
Max Log Length	This field specifies how large the individual log files can become before old information is purged.
Use PG Monitor	This option specifies whether information is sent to the PageGate Monitor or not. If this option is not enabled, the PageGate Monitor will not display any information.

PG Monitor Port	This field specifies which TCP/IP port PageGate's data is sent on.
PG Monitor Host1 - Host3	These fields allow you to specify what additional systems can use the PageGate Monitor. Enter the LAN IP address of the systems you want PageGate to broadcast information to.
Apply	This button saves all recent changes to the Settings sub-section of Logging.

3.3.11.2 Global

Global

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



If logging is enabled, this log shows a summary of the events generated by PageGate, including all messages scheduled and sent. The Global Log section of the Admin had five buttons:

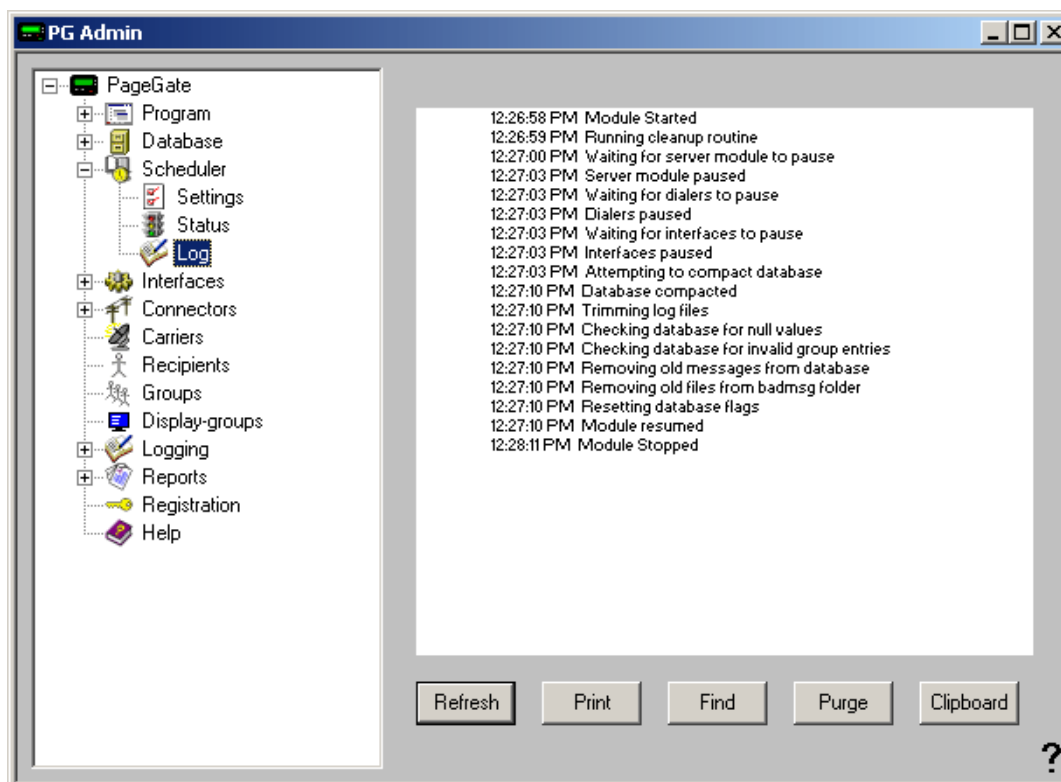
Refresh	Displays the most current entries in the global log.
Print	Sends a copy of everything listed in the Global Log to a printer.
Find	Allows you to search for a variable (such as a carrier or recipient name).

Purge	Deletes the entirety of the Global Log.
Clipboard	Copies the contents of the Global Log to the Windows Clipboard, allowing it to be pasted into another application.

3.3.11.3 Scheduler

Scheduler

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



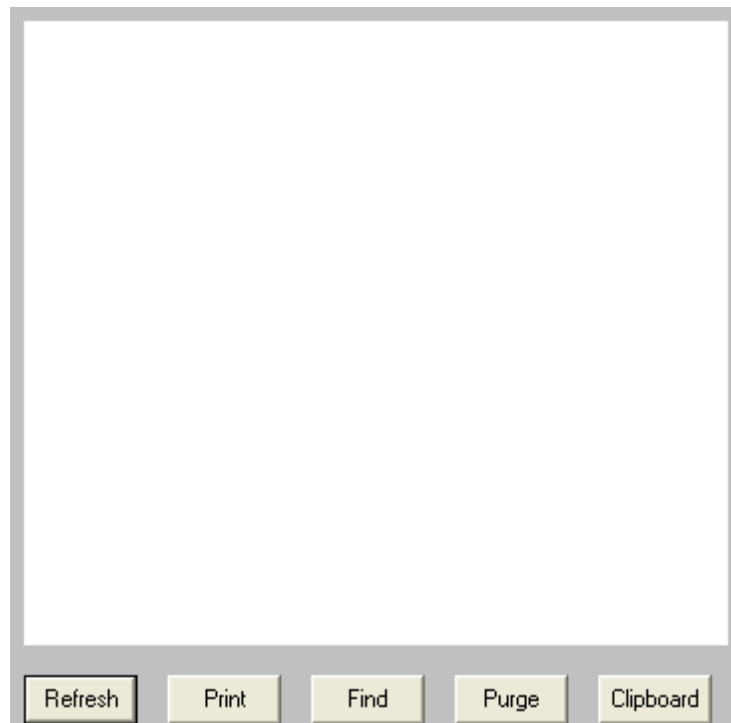
If logging is enabled, this log shows a summary of the events generated by the PageGate Scheduler. The Scheduler Log section of the Admin has five buttons:

Refresh	Displays the most current entries in the global log.
Print	Sends a copy of everything listed in the Scheduler Log to a printer.
Find	Allows you to search for a variable (such as a carrier or recipient name).
Purge	Deletes the entirety of the Scheduler Log.
Clipboard	Copies the contents of the Scheduler Log to the Windows

board	Clipboard, allowing it to be pasted into another application.
-------	---

3.3.11.4 GetAscii

GetAscii

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

If logging is enabled, this log shows a summary of the events generated by the GetAscii Module. The GetAscii Log section of the Admin has five buttons:

Refresh	Displays the most current entries in the global log.
Print	Sends a copy of everything listed in the Scheduler Log to a printer.
Find	Allows you to search for a variable (such as a carrier or recipient name).
Purge	Deletes the entirety of the GetAscii Log.
Clipboard	Copies the contents of the GetAscii Log to the Windows Clipboard, allowing it to be pasted into another application.

3.3.11.5 GetMail

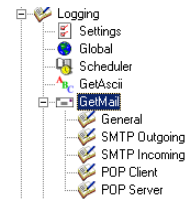
GetMail

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The GetMail subsection of the Logging is found beneath the Logging object (shown right) and the component logs kept by the GetMail module.

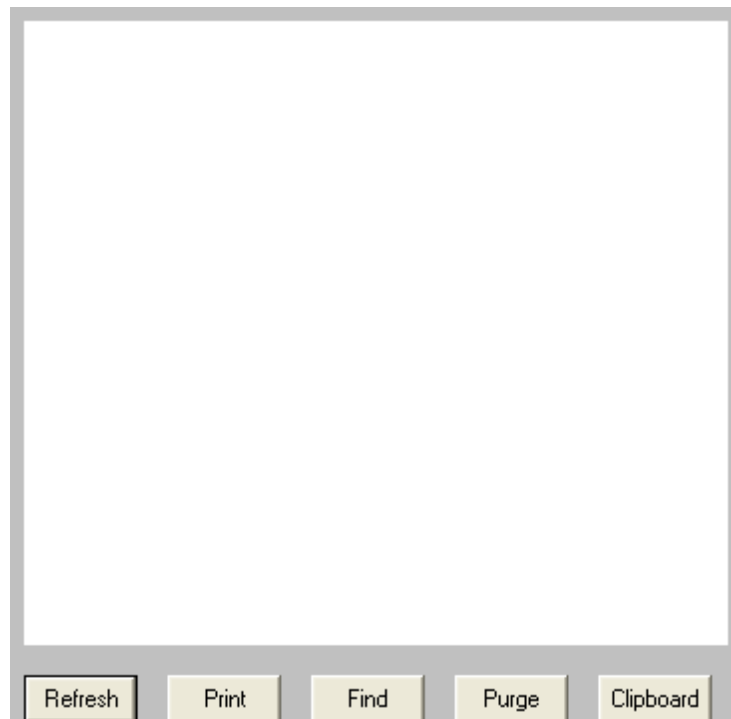
By clicking on the + next to GetMail, it will expand GetMail's sub-sections:

- General
- SMTP Outgoing
- SMTP Incoming
- POP Client
- POP Server



3.3.11.5.1 General

General

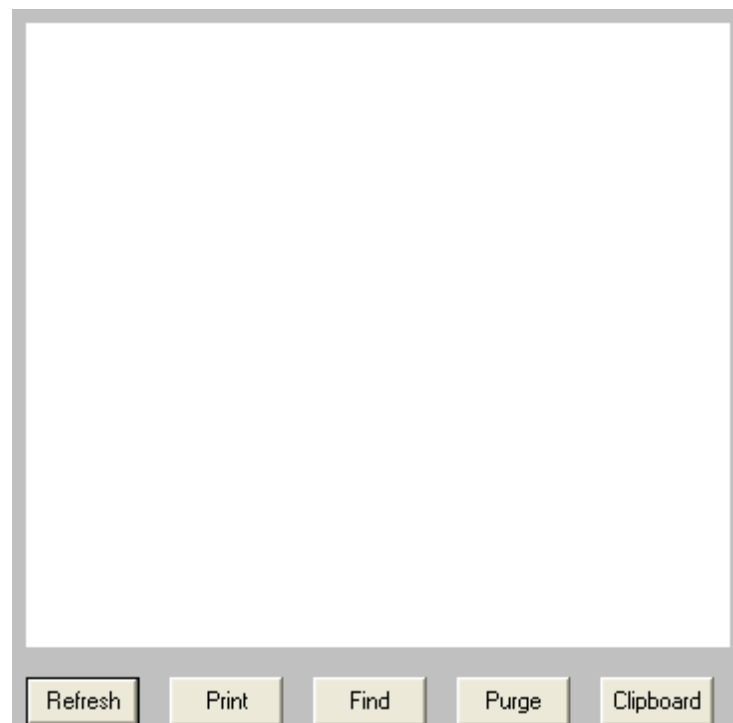
[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

If logging is enabled, this log shows a summary of the events generated by the GetMail Module. The GetMail Log section of the Admin has five buttons:

Refresh	Displays the most current entries in the global log.
Print	Sends a copy of everything listed in the General GetMail Log to a printer.
Find	Allows you to search for a variable (such as a carrier or recipient name).
Purge	Deletes the entirety of the General GetMail Log.
Clipboard	Copies the contents of the General GetMail Log to the Windows Clipboard, allowing it to be pasted into another application.

3.3.11.5.2 SMTP Outgoing

SMTP Outgoing

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

If logging is enabled, this log shows a summary of the events generated by

PageGate's attempts to send SMTP Messages. The SMTP Outgoing Log section of the Admin has five buttons:

Refr esh	Displays the most current entries in the global log.
Prin t	Sends a copy of everything listed in the SMTP Outgoing Log to a printer.
Find	Allows you to search for a variable (such as a carrier or recipient name).
Pur ge	Deletes the entirety of the SMTP Outgoing Log.
Clip boar d	Copies the contents of the SMTP Outgoing Log to the Windows Clipboard, allowing it to be pasted into another application.

3.3.11.5.3 SMTP Incoming

SMTP Incoming

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

If logging is enabled, this log shows a summary of the events generated by PageGate's attempts to receive SMTP messages. The SMTP Incoming Log

section of the Admin has five buttons:

Refr esh	Displays the most current entries in the global log.
Prin t	Sends a copy of everything listed in the SMTP Incoming Log to a printer.
Find	Allows you to search for a variable (such as a carrier or recipient name).
Pur ge	Deletes the entirety of the SMTP Incoming Log.
Clip boar d	Copies the contents of the SMTP Incoming Log to the Windows Clipboard, allowing it to be pasted into another application.

3.3.11.5.4 POP Client

POP Client

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



If logging is enabled, this log shows a summary of the events generated by PageGate's attempts to check an email address. The POP Client Log section of the Admin has five buttons:

Refresh	Displays the most current entries in the global log.
Print	Sends a copy of everything listed in the POP Client Log to a printer.
Find	Allows you to search for a variable (such as a carrier or recipient name).
Purge	Deletes the entirety of the POP Client Log.
Clipboard	Copies the contents of the POP Client Log to the Windows Clipboard, allowing it to be pasted into another application.

3.3.11.5.5 POP Server

POP Server

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

If logging is enabled, this log shows a summary of the events generated by the outside world's attempts to check an email address hosted by PageGate. The POP Server Log section of the Admin has five buttons:

Refr esh	Displays the most current entries in the global log.
Prin t	Sends a copy of everything listed in the POP Server Log to a printer.
Find	Allows you to search for a variable (such as a carrier or recipient name).
Pur ge	Deletes the entirety of the POP Server Log.
Clip boar d	Copies the contents of the POP Server Log to the Windows Clipboard, allowing it to be pasted into another application.

3.3.11.6 GetSerial

GetSerialTop Previous Next



The screenshot shows the 'GetSerial' interface. It features a large, empty rectangular area for displaying log entries. Below this area is a horizontal row of five buttons: 'Refresh', 'Print', 'Find', 'Purge', and 'Clipboard'. The buttons are light yellow with black text and are separated by small gaps.

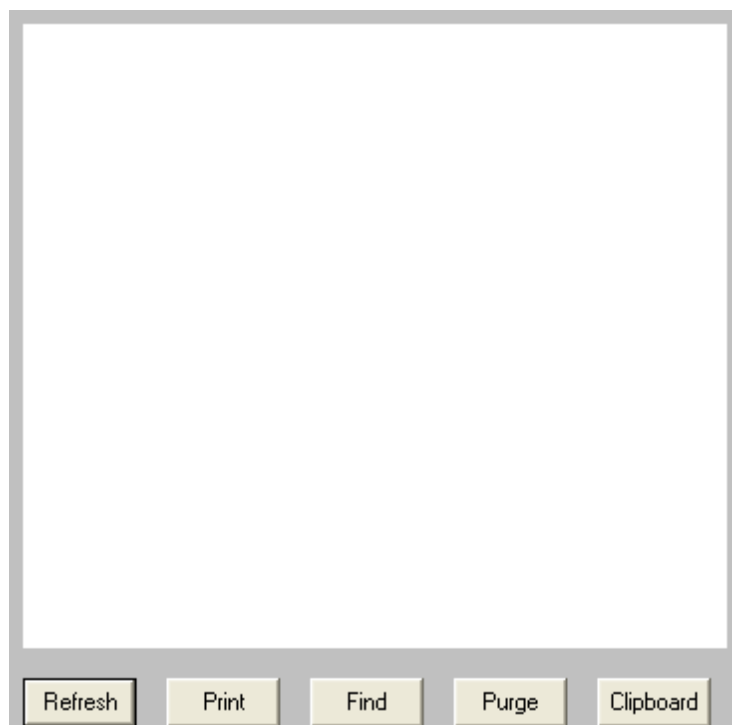
If logging is enabled, this log shows a summary of the events generated by the GetSerial Module. The GetSerial Log section of the Admin has five buttons:

Refr esh	Displays the most current entries in the global log.
-------------	--

Print	Sends a copy of everything listed in the GetSerial Log to a printer.
Find	Allows you to search for a variable (such as a carrier or recipient name).
Purge	Deletes the entirety of the GetSerial Log.
Clipboard	Copies the contents of the GetSerial Log to the Windows Clipboard, allowing it to be pasted into another application.

3.3.11.7 GetTap

GetTap

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

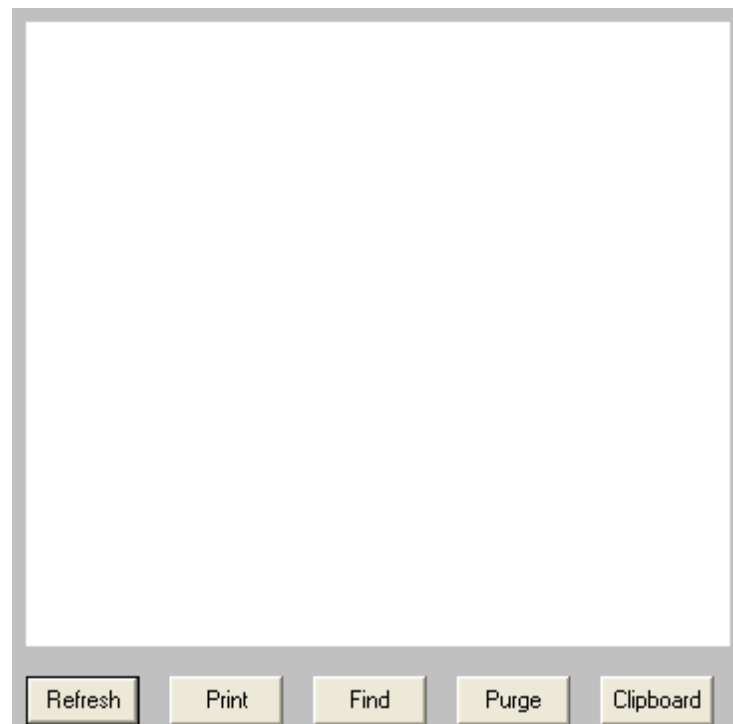
If logging is enabled, this log shows a summary of the events generated by the GetTap Module. The GetTap Log section of the Admin has five buttons:

Refresh	Displays the most current entries in the global log.
Print	Sends a copy of everything listed in the GetTap Log to a printer.
Find	Allows you to search for a variable (such as a carrier or recipient name).

Purge	Deletes the entirety of the GetTap Log.
Clipboard	Copies the contents of the GetTap Log to the Windows Clipboard, allowing it to be pasted into another application.

3.3.11.8 GetWeb

GetWeb

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

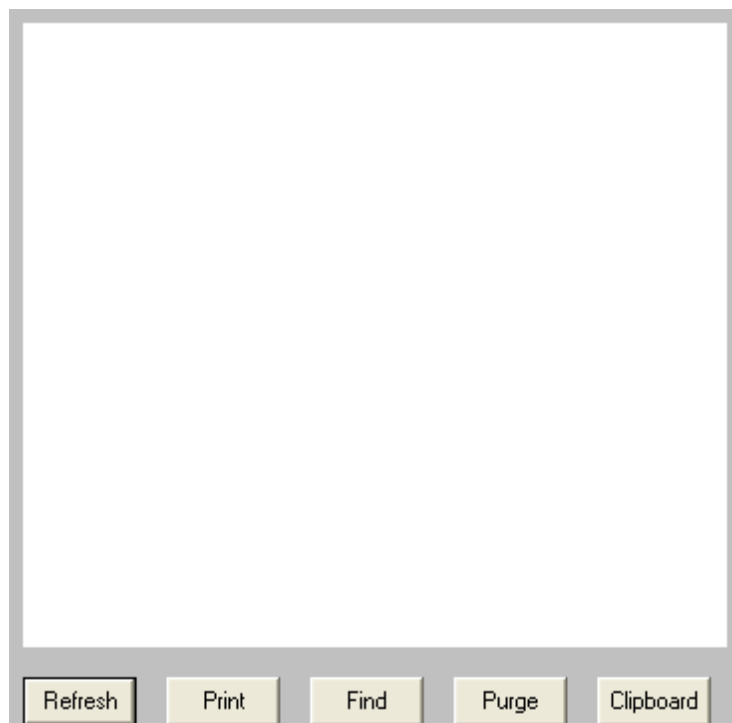
If logging is enabled, this log shows a summary of the events generated by the GetWeb Interface. The GetWeb Log section of the Admin has five buttons:

Refresh	Displays the most current entries in the global log.
Print	Sends a copy of everything listed in the GetWeb Log to a printer.
Find	Allows you to search for a variable (such as a carrier or recipient name).
Purge	Deletes the entirety of the GetWeb Log.
Clipboard	Copies the contents of the GetWeb Log to the Windows Clipboard,

board	allowing it to be pasted into another application.
-------	--

3.3.11.9 GUI Client

GUI Client

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

If logging is enabled, this log shows a summary of the events generated by the GUI Client Interface. The GUI Client Log section of the Admin has five buttons:

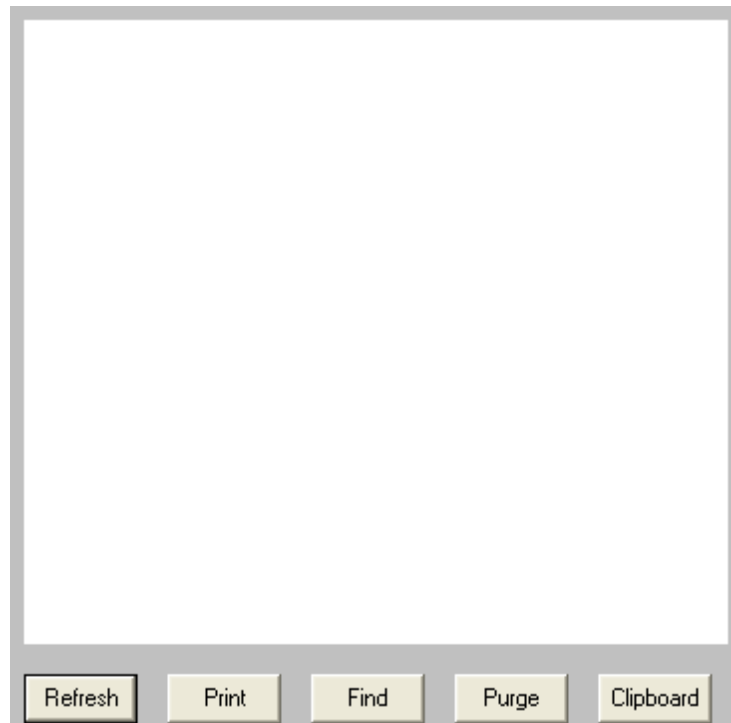
Refresh	Displays the most current entries in the global log.
Print	Sends a copy of everything listed in the GUI Client Log to a printer.
Find	Allows you to search for a variable (such as a carrier or recipient name).
Purge	Deletes the entirety of the GUI Client Log.
Clipboard	Copies the contents of the GUI Client Log to the Windows Clipboard, allowing it to be pasted into another application.

3.3.11.10 Connectors

Connectors

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Beneath the Connectors section of the Logging, you can view the specific log for all Connectors.



If logging is enabled, this log shows a summary of the events generated by the Connector Module selected. The Connector Log section of the Admin has five buttons:

Refresh	Displays the most current entries in the global log.
Print	Sends a copy of everything listed in the Connector Log to a printer.
Find	Allows you to search for a variable (such as a carrier or recipient name).
Purge	Deletes the entirety of the Connector Log.
Clipboard	Copies the contents of the Connector Log to the Windows Clipboard, allowing it to be pasted into another application.

3.3.11.11 Audit

Audit

Top

Previous

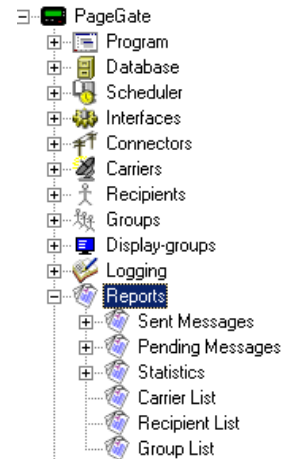
Next

TimeStamp	Object	Change	Machine	Machine Login	PGAdmin Login

The Reports subsection of the PageGate Admin is found beneath the PageGate object (shown right) and contains all of the different Reports that can be run from PageGate.

By clicking on the + next to Reports, it will expand the following sub-sections:

Sent Messages, Pending Messages, Statistics, Carrier List, Recipient List, and Group List



3.3.12.1 Overview

Overview

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

When running any report, you will be prompted for some information on how you would like PageGate to perform the report.

Start Date	12/11/2006	End Date	12/11/2006
Start Time	12:00 AM	End Time	04:42 PM
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Summary <input type="radio"/> Details <input type="radio"/> Totals Only			
<input checked="" type="radio"/> All Msgs <input type="radio"/> Good Msgs <input type="radio"/> Bad Msgs			
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Print report <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preview		<input type="checkbox"/> Zero Values <input type="checkbox"/> Full Names	
<input type="radio"/> Write report to file <div style="border: 1px solid gray; height: 20px; width: 100%;"></div>			

Setting	Function
Start Date	The beginning date of the date range the report should show.
End Date	The ending date of the date range the report should show.
Start Time	The beginning time of the time range the report should show.
End Time	The beginning time of the time range the report should show.

Summary, Details, Totals Only	Summary will give a brief overview of the information requested whereas Details will include all possible information. Totals Only will only output the number of messages reported on, not giving any information about the messages themselves.
All Msgs, Good Msgs, Bad Msgs	The report show you all messages, only those messages that were sent successfully, or only those messages that failed to send.
Print Report	This option allows you to print the report to a selected printer.
Preview	When this option is enabled, before the report is actually printed, you are shown the details of the report and can choose to either close the preview, in which case nothing is printed, or print the report.
Zero Values	Enabling this option will include results that have a value of 0. This option is disabled by default.
Full Names	When this option is enabled, the Full Name field is used in lieu of the Recipient field in the reports.
Write report to file	When this option is enabled, the report is written to a file of your specification and name instead of queued to the printer.

3.3.12.2 Sent Messages

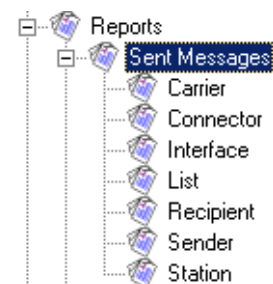
Sent Messages

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Sent Messages subsection of the Reports is found beneath the Reports object (shown right) and contains all of the different Sent Message reports that can be run from PageGate.

By clicking on the + next to Sent Messages, it will expand the following sub-sections:

Carrier, Connector, Interface, List, Recipient, Sender, and Station



Report	Function
Carrier	This report will show what (and how many) messages have been sent through a selected carrier (or all carriers, if you select the All option).
Connector	This report will show what (and how many) messages have been sent through a selected Connector (or all Connectors, if you select the All option).
Interface	This report will show what (and how many) messages have been sent through a selected Interface (or all Interfaces, if you select the All option).
List	This report will show all messages sent within a specified date and time range.
Recipient	This report will show what (and how many) messages have been sent to a specific Recipient or Group.
Sender	This report will show what (and how many) messages were sent by a specific user.
Station	This report will show what (and how many) messages were sent by a specific GUI Client Station.

3.3.12.3 Pending Messages

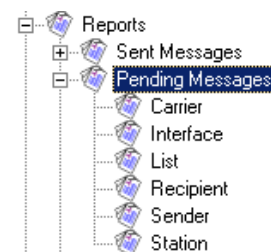
Pending Messages

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Pending Messages subsection of the Reports is found beneath the Reports object (shown right) and contains all of the different Pending Message Reports that can be run from PageGate.

By clicking on the + next to Pending Messages, it will expand the following sub-sections:

Carrier, Interface, List, Recipient, Sender, and Station



Report	Function
Carrier	This report will show what (and how many) messages are currently waiting to go out to a carrier (or all carriers, if you select the All option).
Interface	This report will show what (and how many) messages are currently

e	waiting to go were scheduled by which Interface (or all Interfaces, if you select the All option).
List	This report will show all messages waiting to be sent out within a specified date and time range.
Recipient	This report will show what (and how many) messages are queued to be sent to a specific Recipient or Group.
Sender	This report will show what (and how many) queued messages were scheduled by a specific recipient.
Station	This report will show what (and how many) queued messages were scheduled by a specific GUI Client Station.

3.3.12.4 Statistics

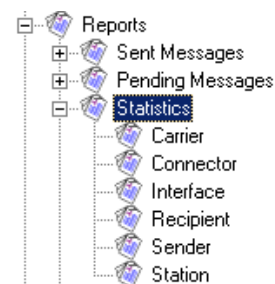
Statistics

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Statistics subsection of the Reports is found beneath the Reports object (shown right) and contains all of the different Statistics Reports that can be run from PageGate.

By clicking on the + next to Statistics, it will expand the following sub-sections:

Carrier, Interface, Recipient, Sender, and Station

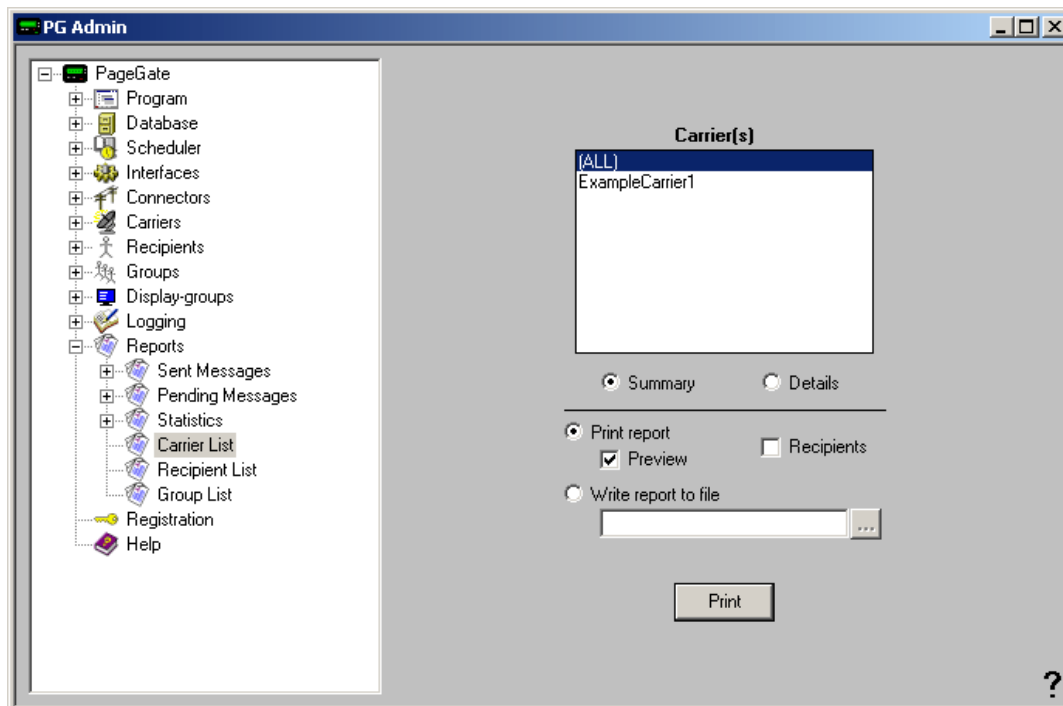


Report	Function
Carrier	This report will give the Carrier statistics such as throughput, timing, and delivery results for a carrier (or all carriers, if you select the All option).
Connector	This report will give the Connector statistics such as throughput, timing, and delivery results for a Connector (or all Connectors, if you select the All option).
Interface	This report will give the Interface statistics such as throughput, timing, and delivery results for an Interface (or all Interfaces, if you select the All option).
Recipient	This report will give the Recipient statistics such as throughput, timing, and delivery results for a Recipient or Group (or all Recipients and Groups, if you select the All option).

Sender	This report will give the Sender statistics such as throughput, timing, and delivery results for messages sent by a specific user.
Station	This report will give the Sender statistics such as throughput, timing, and delivery results for messages sent by a specific GUI Client Station.

3.3.12.5 Carrier List

Carrier List

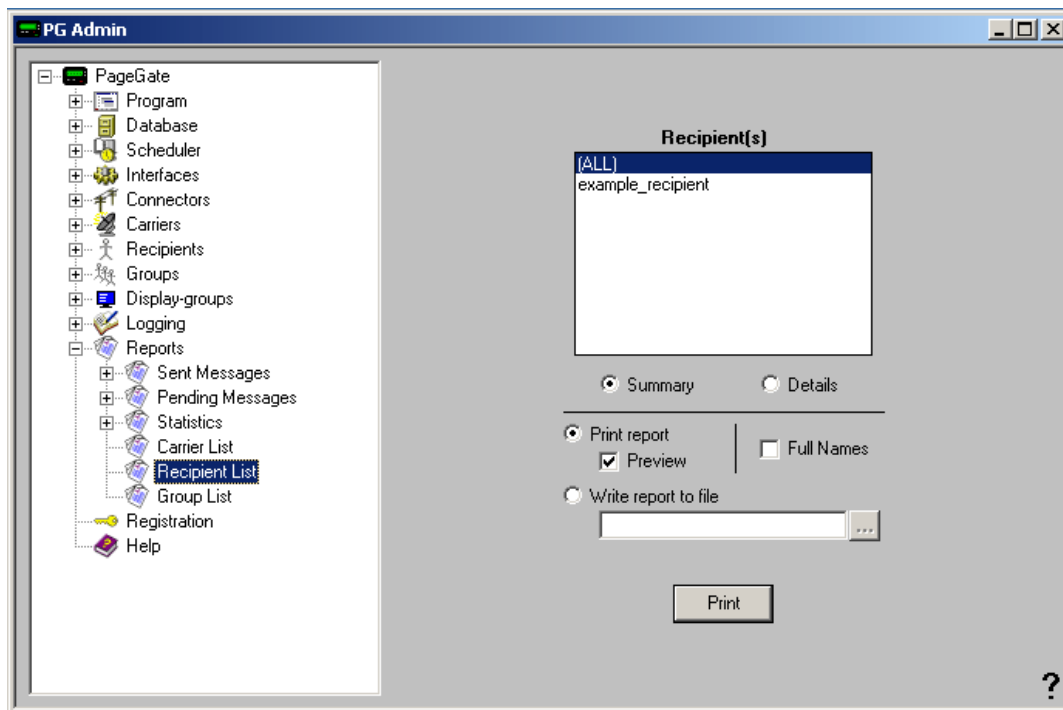
[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Carrier List Report allows you to print your Carriers List or a specific Carrier.

3.3.12.6 Recipient List

Recipient List

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

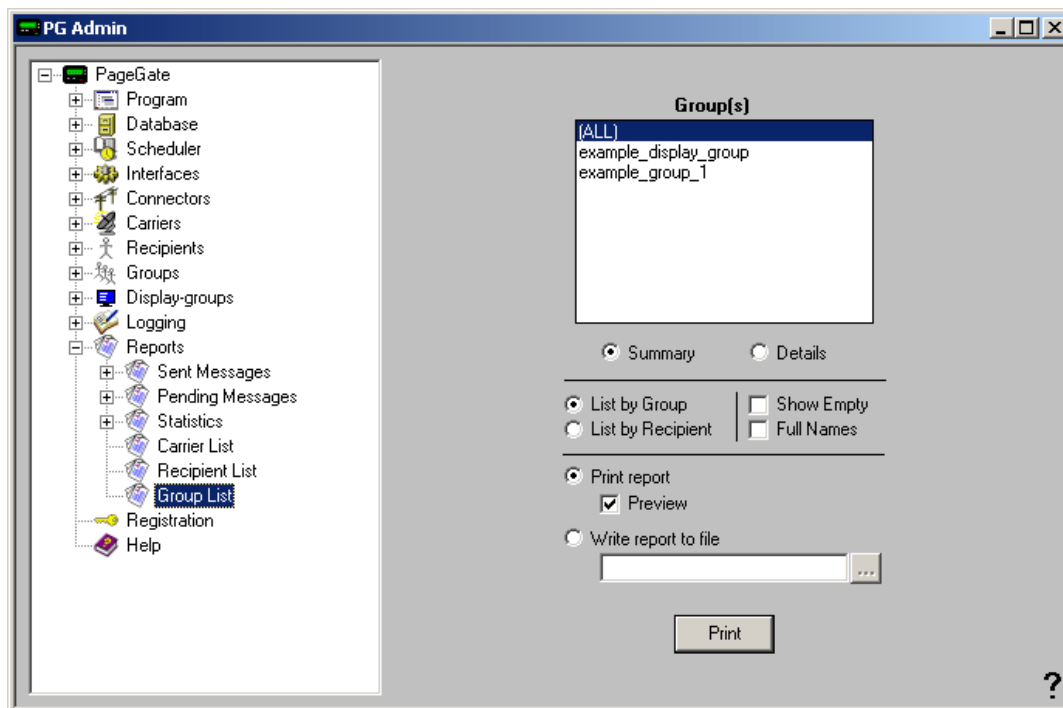


The Carrier List Report allows you to print your Recipient List or a specific Recipient.

3.3.12.7 Group List

Group List

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



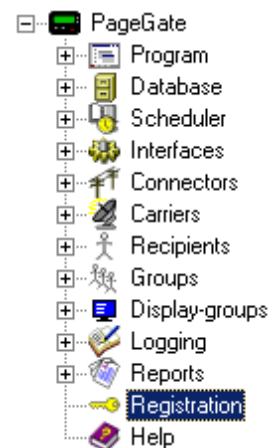
The Carrier List Report allows you to print your Group List or a specific Group.

3.3.13 Registration

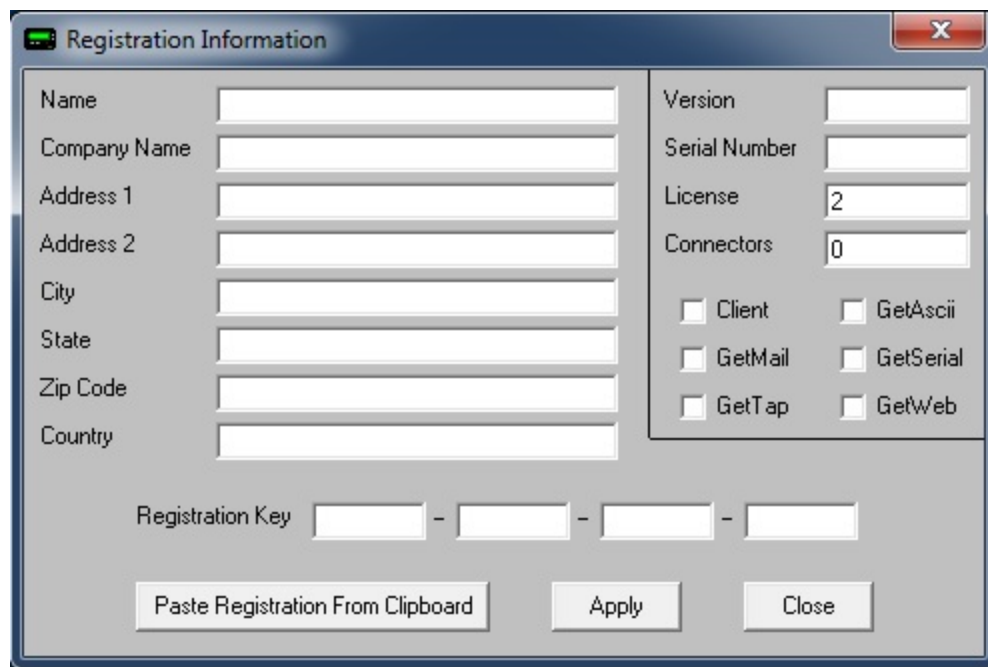
Registration

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Registration section of the PageGate Admin is found beneath the PageGate object (shown right) and contains all of the Registration Information for PageGate.



Clicking on the Registration option of the PageGate Admin will show you the current Registration Information for the product:



The image shows a 'Registration Information' dialog box with the following fields and options:

- Name: [Text Box]
- Company Name: [Text Box]
- Address 1: [Text Box]
- Address 2: [Text Box]
- City: [Text Box]
- State: [Text Box]
- Zip Code: [Text Box]
- Country: [Text Box]
- Version: [Text Box]
- Serial Number: [Text Box]
- License: [Text Box] (Value: 2)
- Connectors: [Text Box] (Value: 0)
- Client: ☐
- GetAscii: ☐
- GetMail: ☐
- GetSerial: ☐
- GetTap: ☐
- GetWeb: ☐
- Registration Key: [Text Box] - [Text Box] - [Text Box] - [Text Box]
- Paste Registration From Clipboard: [Button]
- Apply: [Button]
- Close: [Button]

After entering your registration information, click on Apply.

3.3.14 Advanced Server Settings

Advanced Server Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

There are several settings in PageGate that are not contained within the Administrative GUI Interface. These settings are not commonly used but are available for knowledgeable Administrators to control certain advanced functions within the Server. All of these Advanced functions are controlled through Registry entries, so you **MUST** be logged in to Windows with an Administrative Account to configure them.

These registry settings are for modifying the default behavior of the program. Unless they are needed, these registry entries **SHOULD NOT EXIST**.

These registry entries must be created in the HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE - Software - Wow6432Node - NotePage - PageGate section of the registry.

Entry	Type	Value	Function
NPP_Sender	String	AlphaNumeric	If you have the NotePager Pro Alerts configured in the PageGate Monitor, this value specifies what the Monitor should use as

			for the Sender's Information.
SnppMessOnly	Dword	0 for False 1 for True	MESS is an obsolete command in SNPP but there are some hosts that still exclusively use it. If set to true, this value forces all outbound SNPP traffic to communicate with the MESS, rather than the PAGE command.
SMTP_Force_Auth	String	0 for False 1 for True	If set to true, this value forces all outbound SMTP traffic to exclusively use Auth Plain and Login authentication.
SMTP_Force_STARTTLS	Dword	0 for False 1 for True	If set to true, this value forces all outbound SMTP traffic to exclusively use STARTTLS for authentication.
Proxy_Host	String	AlphaNumeric	If PageGate needs to route through a Proxy Server, enter the Proxy Server's host address here.
Proxy_Port	Dword	Numeric	This entry must be set to a numerical value. This field specifies the port on which to connect to the Proxy Host.
GSM_Message_Delay	Dword	0 - 2000	This entry must be set to a numerical value. This value creates a slight pause between message transactions in a GSM-AT negotiation sequence.
SERIAL_Message_Delay	Dword	0 - 2000	This entry must be set to a numerical value. This value creates a slight pause between message transactions in a RawSerial negotiation sequence.
SMTP_Message_Delay	Dword	0 - 2000	This entry must be set to a numerical value that represents a number of milliseconds. This value creates a slight pause between message transactions in an SMTP negotiation sequence.
SNPP_Message_Delay	Dword	0 - 2000	This entry must be set to a numerical value that represents a number of milliseconds. This value creates a slight pause between message transactions in an SNPP negotiation sequence.
TAP_Message_Delay	Dword	0 - 2000	This entry must be set to a numerical value that represents a number of milliseconds. This

			value creates a slight pause between message transactions in a TAP negotiation sequence.
TCP_Message_Delay	Dword	0 - 2000	This entry must be set to a numerical value. This value creates a slight pause between message transactions in a RawTCP negotiation sequence.
UCP_Message_Delay	Dword	0 - 2000	This entry must be set to a numerical value that represents a number of milliseconds. This value creates a slight pause between message transactions in a UCP negotiation sequence.
WCTP_Message_Delay	Dword	0 - 2000	This entry must be set to a numerical value that represents a number of milliseconds. This value creates a slight pause between message transactions in a WCTP negotiation sequence.
POST_Message_Delay	Dword	0 - 2000	This entry must be set to a numerical value that represents a number of milliseconds. This value creates a slight pause between message transactions in an HTTP-POST negotiation sequence.
GET_Message_Delay	Dword	0 - 2000	This entry must be set to a numerical value that represents a number of milliseconds. This value creates a slight pause between message transactions in an HTTP-GET negotiation sequence.
GetTapIdExtras	String	Ascii Code (s)	This entry allows you to specify additional characters to be passed after the ID= in the TAP response. Values must be entered in ascii, so for a Carriage Return/Life Feed <CR><LF>, you would enter \013\010 as the value.
POP_IP	String	IP Address	If the PageGate is installed on a server that is multi-homed (uses multiple network interface cards), by default, the PageGate Mail Server will listen for incoming POP connections on all NIC's and IP addresses. This setting forces the PageGate Mail Server process to only listen on the IP specified.

POP_Port	Dword	Numeric	This entry specifies the Port on which PageGate's POP server should respond to POP connection requests. By default, PageGate monitors port 110 for incoming POP connections. If you need to specify a different port, do so with this entry.				
POP_Collection_Port	Dword	Numeric	This entry specifies the Port that PageGate's POP server should use to retrieve POP messages from another server. By default, PageGate uses port 110 for POP collection sessions. If you need to specify a different port, do so with this entry.				
SMTP_IP	String	IP Address	If the PageGate is installed on a server that is multi-homed (uses multiple network interface cards), by default, the PageGate Mail Server will listen for incoming SMTP connections on all NIC's and IP addresses. This setting forces the PageGate Mail Server process to only listen on the IP specified.				
SMTP_Port	Dword	Numeric	This entry specifies the Port on which PageGate's SMTP server should respond to SMTP connection requests. By default, PageGate monitors port 25 for incoming SMTP connections. If you need to specify a different port, do so with this entry.				
SMTP_Delivery_Port	Dword	Numeric	This entry specifies the Port that PageGate's SMTP server should use to deliver SMTP messages. By default, PageGate uses port 25 for outgoing SMTP connections. If you need to specify a different port, do so with this entry.				
SMTP_Auth	Dword	See Function	<p>This value determines when authentication is required for inbound SMTP connections.</p> <table><tr><td><u>Value</u></td><td><u>Setting</u></td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>No Authentication Required.</td></tr></table> <p>NOTE: Unless required, do not use t</p>	<u>Value</u>	<u>Setting</u>	0	No Authentication Required.
<u>Value</u>	<u>Setting</u>						
0	No Authentication Required.						

			<p>1 No authentication is required if the command is addressed to a domain of the GetMail Module and its Aliases file. The other domain must authenticate for mail to be accepted.</p> <p>2 All inbound SMTP connections must</p>
DNS_Spam_List	String	See Function	This value is a comma separated list of DNS Servers that are used to check for blacklisted domains. For more detailed information, reference the DNSBL.
Drop_Msgs_with_Executables	Dword	0 for False 1 for True	If enabled, PageGate's GetMail module will not process inbound email messages that have an executable attached to them.
Max_POP_Collection_Threads	Dword	0 - 50	This value sets the maximum number of concurrent outbound POP Collection threads. It is recommended that this value never be set higher than 50. Standard values for this setting are between 20 and 30.
Max_POP_Listener_Threads	Dword	0 - 50	This value sets the maximum number of concurrent inbound POP Listener threads. It is recommended that this value never be set higher than 50. Standard values for this setting are between 20 and 30.
Max_SMTP_Delivery_Threads	Dword	0 - 50	This value sets the maximum number of concurrent outbound SMTP Delivery threads. It is recommended that this value never be set higher than 50. Standard values for this setting are between 20 and 30.
Max_SMTP_Listener_Threads	Dword	0 - 50	This value sets the maximum number of concurrent inbound SMTP Listener threads. It is recommended that this value never be set higher than 50. Standard values for this setting are between 20 and 30.

4 PageGate GUI Client

PageGate GUI Client

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The PageGate GUI (Graphical User Interface) Client is the Windows based graphical client for the PageGate Paging application. It allows workstations on a network to send messages to the PageGate paging server, which in turn delivers the messages (via a modem, a direct cable connection, or the internet) to your paging carrier(s) for delivery. Your paging carrier will then send the message to the appropriate pager, phone, or wireless messaging device. The PageGate GUI Client program is one of several front-end interfaces available for the PageGate paging server. It can be used alone, or in conjunction with any or all of the other interfaces.

The PageGate server application must be installed and configured before the PageGate GUI Client can be used. Please refer to the PageGate Server's help file for more information on the installation, configuration, and operation of the PageGate Server.

4.1 Overview

Overview

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The PageGate GUI (Graphical User Interface) Client is the visual interface for the PageGate Server. It allows workstations on a network to send messages to the PageGate Server, which in turn delivers the messages to your paging carrier (s) for delivery. Your paging carrier will then send the message to the appropriate pager, phone, or wireless messaging device. The PageGate GUI Client program is one of several front-end interfaces available for the PageGate paging server. It can be used alone, or in conjunction with any or all of the other interfaces.

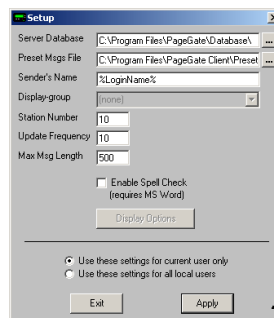
The PageGate server application must be installed and configured before the PageGate GUI Client can be used. Please refer to the PageGate Server's help file for more information on the installation, configuration, and operation of the PageGate Server.

4.2 Configuring the PageGate Client

Configuring the PageGate Client

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The very first time you run the PageGate Client, you will be prompted for some information:



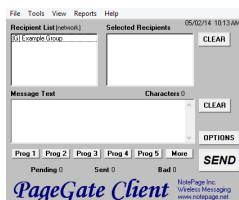
Setting	Function
Server Database	This should be the path to the PageGate Server's Database. This can be either a local path (if you're running the GUI Client on the same system as the PageGate Server) or a network path.
Preset Msgs File	If you have configured any preset messages, this should be the path to the Preset messages. This can either be a local path or a network path.
Sender's Name	By default, this field is set to %LoginName% - This value will use the username of whoever is currently logged into Windows as the Sender's Name messages sent from the GUI Client. This field can also be set to a static value such as Tech, Sales, Jeremy, Lamar, etc.
Display-group	This option cannot be configured on initial setup.
Station Number	The Station Number is a unique identifying number for this

	GUI Client and allows the PageGate Admin to track how many messages this instance of the GUI Client has sent and to whom the messages were sent. If you are performing multiple GUI Client installations, make sure that no two installations of the GUI Client have the same Station Number.
Update Frequency	This field determines how often (in seconds) the GUI Client posts data to the PageGate Database.
Max Msg Length	This field determines how many characters can be typed in the Message field of the GUI Client.
Enable Spell Check	By enabling this option, the GUI Client will automatically spellcheck any messages typed. This option requires MS Word to be installed.
Display Options	This field cannot be configured on initial setup.
Use these settings for current user only	Set this option if each Windows User needs to have their own copy of the GUI Client configured.
Use these settings for all local users	Set this option if you want these settings to be saved for all Windows Users who log in to this workstation.

4.3 Using the GUI Client

Using the GUI Client

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



The PageGate GUI Client is used for scheduling and sending messages to the PageGate Server's list of Recipients and Groups. It shows

a list of available Recipients and Groups and is highly customizable.

The PageGate Client can be run from the paging server or on any workstation that has network access to the PageGate Database.

Recipients can be moved to the Selected Recipients column simply by clicking on their name.

The Message Text field is where you type the message you want to send.

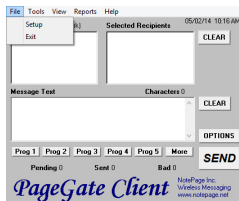
As shown above, there are many buttons and options within the program.

First are the menus:

- File
- Tools
- View
- Reports
- Help

4.3.1 File

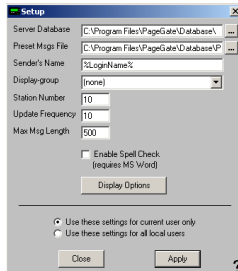
File

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The two options under the File menu are Setup and Exit. Selecting the Exit option will close the GUI Client. Selecting Setup will allow you to modify the base settings of the current installation of the GUI Client.

When selecting the Setup option, you will be presented with

the following
options menu:



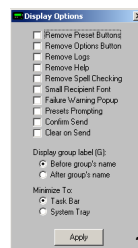
Setting	Function
Server Database	This should be the path to the PageGate Server's Database. This can be either a local path (if you're running the GUI Client on the same system as the PageGate Server) or a network path.
Preset Msgs File	If you have configured any preset messages, this should be the path to the Preset messages. This can either be a local path or a network path.
Sender's Name	By default, this field is set to %LoginName% - This value will use the username of whoever is currently logged into Windows as the Sender's Name messages sent from the GUI Client. This field can also be set to a static value such as Tech, Sales, Jeremy, Lamar, etc.
Display-group	If you have configured any Display Groups for the PageGate Server, you can specify the Display Group this installation of the GUI Client is locked to. By selecting a Display Group, this installation of the GUI Client will only list those recipients that are members of the Display Group.
Station Number	The Station Number is a unique identifying number for this GUI Client and allows the PageGate Admin to track how many messages this instance of the GUI Client has sent and to whom the messages were sent. If you are performing multiple GUI Client installations, make sure that no two installations of the GUI Client have the same Station Number.
Update Frequency	This field determines how often (in seconds) the GUI Client posts data to the PageGate Database.

Max Msg Length	This field determines how many characters can be typed in the Message field of the GUI Client.
Enable Spell Check	By enabling this option, the GUI Client will automatically spellcheck any messages typed. This option requires MS Word to be installed.
Display Options	Click on this button to view the Display Options.
Use these settings for current user only	Set this option if each Windows User needs to have their own copy of the GUI Client configured.
Use these settings for all local users	Set this option if you want these settings to be saved for all Windows Users who log in to this workstation.

4.3.1.1 Display Options

Display Options

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



Setting	Function
Remove Preset Buttons	Enabling this will remove the Prog1, Prog2, Prog3, Prog4, Prog5, and More buttons.
Remove Options Button	Enabling this will remove the Options button.
Remove Logs	Enabling this will remove the ability of this GUI Client to view any log files.
Remove Help	Enabling this will remove the Help menu.
Remove Spell Checking	Enabling this will remove the Spell Checking function of this GUI Client.
Small Recipient Font	Enabling this will display the recipient and selected recipient lists in a smaller font.
Failure Warning Popup	When this is enabled, every time a message fails, you will be notified by a popup window.
Presets Prompting	For this setting to function properly, you must first configure a set of preset messages in the PageFate client. Next, set up one of the first nine presets with a recipient but no message.

	If that has been done and this option is enabled, if you click on the visible preset button, a pop-up will list all of the possible preset messages for that recipient. This allows a user to click a preset for a recipient and choose a commonly used message for them.
Confirm Send	When this is enabled, every time the Send button is clicked, you will be prompted to confirm the delivery of the message.
Clear on Send	When this option is enabled, the Message and Selected Recipient portions of this GUI Client are cleared after the Send button is clicked.
Display group label (G)	You can choose to have the (G) for Group label appear before or after your groups' names. If the (G) appears before, the groups will automatically be sorted to the top of the Recipient list. If the (G) appears after, the groups will be sorted by the first letter in the group name.
Minimize To	You can choose to have the GUI Client minimize to the Task Bar or the System Tray. If the GUI Client is set to minimize to the Task Bar, you will see it to the right of the Start Menu when the program is minimized. When the program is set to minimize to the System Tray, it will appear as an icon of a pager next to the clock in the lower right hand corner of the screen.

4.3.2 Tools

Tools

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Tools 
Menu of the
GUI Client
will display
the following
options:

- Filter Recipients

- Presets
- Local Recipients
- Check Spelling.

Note: The Check Spelling option will not work if you don't have Microsoft Word installed.

4.3.2.1 Filter Recipients

Filter Recipients

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

By using the Filter Recipients option, you can filter the list of recipients that is shown in the 'Recipient List'. You can filter recipients by full name (the name that is displayed in the 'Recipient List'), by short name (the name used by the Admin program), or by any of for other user definable fields (these are setup within the Admin program).

In each field, enter characters that must match each recipient to be included in the list.

To return to the full list, leave all the filter fields blank, or click on the 'Clear' button next to the

recipient list

Setting	Function
Full Name	This field requires the Full Name field of a recipient in the PageGate Admin to match the pattern you enter here. For example, to have only those recipients whose Full Name field begins with Tech show in the recipient list, you would enter Tech here.
Short Name	This field requires the Recipient field of a recipient in the PageGate Admin to match the pattern you enter here. For example, to have only those recipients whose Recipient field begins with oncall show in the recipient list, you would enter oncall here.
Comment1 - Comment4	When creating a recipient in the PageGate Admin, you can specify certain comment fields. This field requires the Comment Field in the Recipient's Settings to match whatever you enter here.
Filter	Clicking on this button will Filter the Recipient list with your criteria.
Close	This will close this option dialog without filtering your Recipient view.

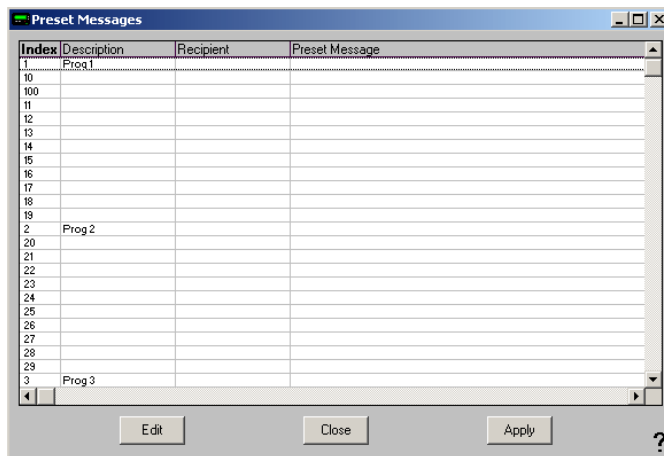
4.3.2.2 Presets

Presets

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Presets tool allows you to customize and create preset messages that will go to a recipient, group, or list of recipients and groups. This is useful if you need 'canned' messages and don't want to have to type the same message over and

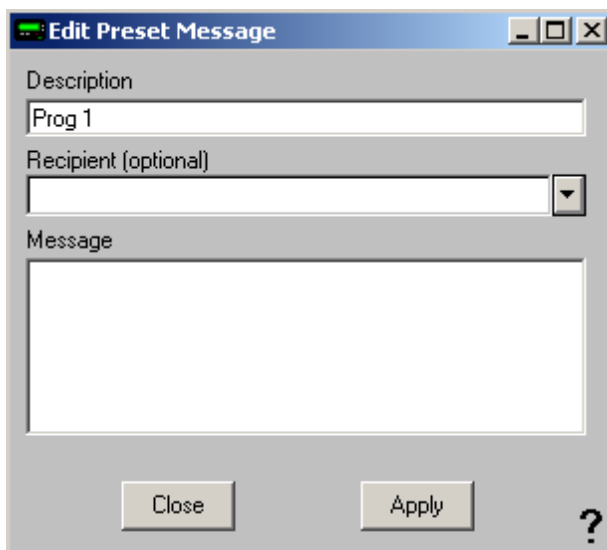
over and over.



To modify an existing preset message, highlight the existing line and click on Edit.

to create a new preset message, highlight one of the blank lines and click on Edit.

When you click on Edit, you will receive this prompt:



Simply type in a Description for the preset message, select a recipient or group, then type in

the preset message.

Click on Apply and the preset message will be saved.

Click on Close and the settings will not be saved.

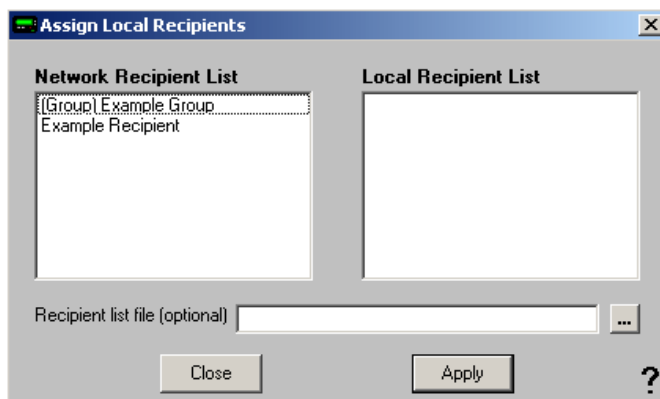
4.3.2.3 Local Recipients

Local Recipients

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

NOTE: If you have a local recipient list setup, it will be the default recipient list displayed each time you startup the PageGate GUI Client.

In the PageGate GUI Client, you can select several commonly used recipients and put them into a local (personal) recipient list. This can save you from scrolling through a long network recipient list to select your most commonly used recipients. This local recipient list is unique to each PageGate GUI Client.



The left column shows all recipients available to this installation of the GUI Client. The right box shows which recipients will be displayed in your local recipient list.

All you have to do is click on a recipient's name in the 'Network Recipient List' to move them to the 'Local Recipient List'.

To remove someone from the Local Recipient List, click on the recipient's name under the Local Recipient List column.

The 'Recipient List File' field can be used to centralize local recipient lists for multiple workstations. This option allows an administrator to keep a list of local recipients for this PageGate GUI Client in a central location. This enables the administrator to maintain local user list files in a central location. The file is a simple Ascii text file with a single recipient name on each line of the file.

4.3.3 View

View

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The View Menu of the GUI Client will display the following options:



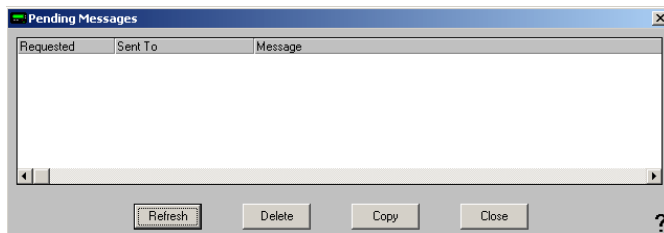
- Pending
- Sent
- Bad
- Scheduled
- History
- Local Recipients
- Network

Recipients

4.3.3.1 Pending

Pending[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Pending option of View will show you all messages this GUI Client has scheduled that are waiting to be delivered.

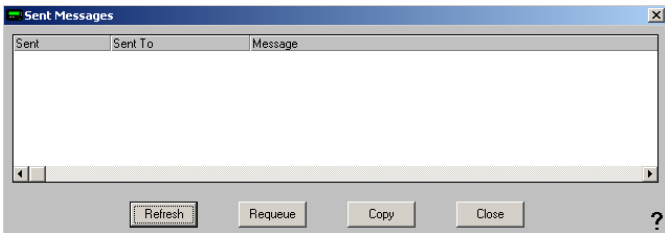


Requested	This column displays the Date and Time at which the pending message was scheduled.
Sent To	This column displays to whom the message was intended.
Message	This column displays the message intended for the recipient.
Refresh	Clicking this button will refresh the list of Pending Messages. If a messages has been sent, it will be removed from this list. If a new message has been queued, it will be added to this list.
Delete	By highlighting a Pending message and clicking this button, it will cancel the pending message.
Copy	By highlighting a Pending message and clicking this button, you will be taken back to the main GUI Client interface, the message will be inserted into the Message section and the Selected Recipients will be moved.
Close	This button closes the Pending Messages view.

4.3.3.2 Sent

Sent[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Sent option of View will show you all messages this GUI Client has successfully sent.



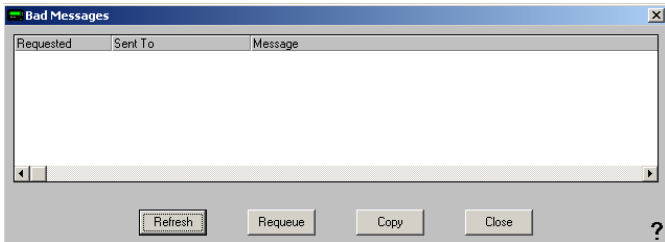
Sent	This column displays the Date and Time at which the message was sent.
Sent To	This column displays to whom the message was intended.
Message	This column displays the message sent to the recipient.
Refresh	Clicking this button will refresh the list of Sent Messages. If a new message has been sent, it will be added to this list.
Requeue	By highlighting an existing Sent message and clicking this button, that message will be re-sent to the recipient.
Copy	By highlighting a Sent message and clicking this button, you will be taken back to the main GUI Client interface, the message will be inserted into the Message section and the Selected Recipients will be moved.
Close	This button closes the Sent Messages view.

4.3.3.3 Bad

Bad

Top Previous Next

The Bad option of View will show you all messages this GUI Client has failed to send.



Requested	This column displays the Date and Time at which the message failed..
Sent To	This column displays to whom the message was intended.
Message	This column displays the message intended for the recipient.

Refresh	Clicking this button will refresh the list of Bad Messages. If a new message has failed to be delivered, it will be added to this list.
Requeue	By highlighting an existing Bad message and clicking this button, that message will be re-sent to the recipient.
Copy	By highlighting a Bad message and clicking this button, you will be taken back to the main GUI Client interface, the message will be inserted into the Message section and the Selected Recipients will be moved.
Close	This button closes the Bad Messages view.

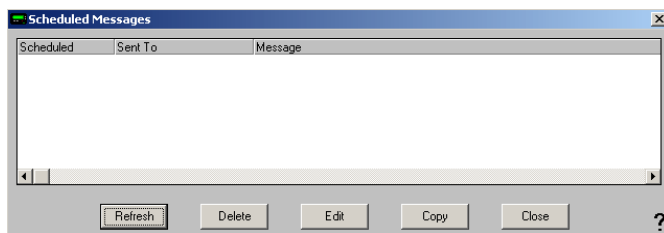
4.3.3.4 Scheduled

Scheduled

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Scheduled option of View will show you all messages this GUI Client is scheduled to send.

Scheduled messages are not Pending messages until the date and time for their delivery arrives.



Requeste d	This column displays the Date and Time at which the message will be sent..
Sent To	This column displays to whom the message is intended.
Message	This column displays the message intended for the recipient.
Refresh	Clicking this button will refresh the list of Scheduled Messages. If a new message has been added to the delivery schedule, it will be added to this list.
Delete	By highlighting an existing Scheduled message and clicking this button, that message will be removed from the delivery schedule.
Edit	By highlighting an existing Schedule message and clicking on this button, you can modify the date and time the message will be sent, who the

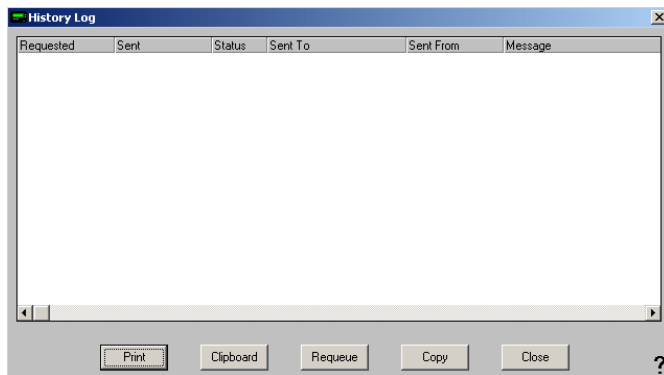
	message will go to, and the content of the message.
Copy	By highlighting a Scheduled message and clicking this button, you will be taken back to the main GUI Client interface, the message will be inserted into the Message section and the Selected Recipients will be moved.
Close	This button closes the Scheduled Messages view.

4.3.3.5 History

History

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The History option of View will show you all messages this GUI Client has failed to send.



Requeste d	This column displays the Date and Time at which the message was scheduled..
Sent	This column displays the Date and Time at which the process to deliver the message was completed.
Status	This column displays whether the process to deliver the message was successful or not.
Sent To	This column displays to whom the message was intended.
Sent From	This column displays the Sender that queued the message.
Message	This column displays the message intended for the recipient.
Print	Clicking this button will send the Message History Log to the printer.
Clipboar d	This button will copy the entire Message History Log to the clipboard and will allow you to paste the message into a text editor or email.

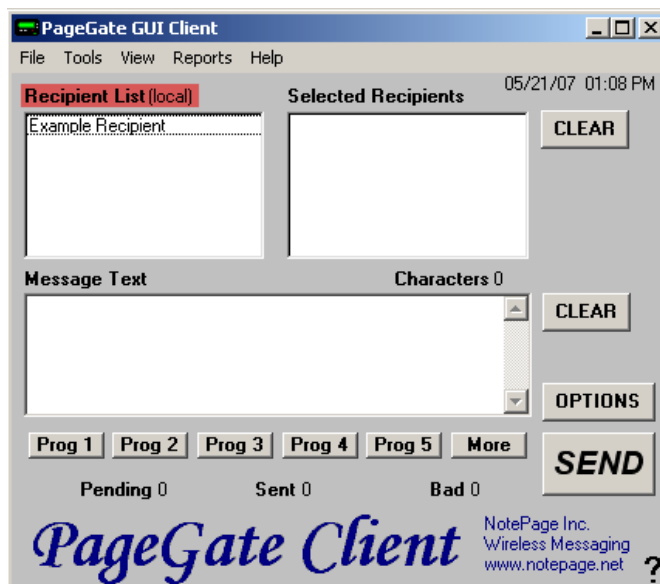
Requeue	By highlighting any message in the Message History Log and clicking this button, that message will be re-sent to the recipient.
Copy	By highlighting any message in the History Log and clicking this button, you will be taken back to the main GUI Client interface, the message will be inserted into the Message section and the Selected Recipients will be moved.
Close	This button closes the History Log view.

4.3.3.6 Local and Network Recipients

Local and Network Recipients

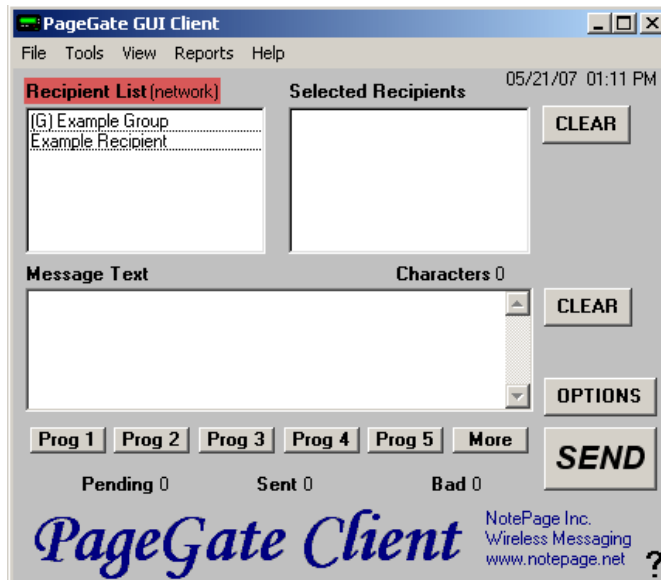
[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

If you have configured a set of Local Recipients, you can change views by selecting either option. If you want to view your Local Recipient List, click on Local Recipients. After clicking on Local Recipients, you'll notice that the recipient list says (local) next to it:



If you want to view the Network Recipient List, click on Network Recipients. After clicking on

Network Recipients, you'll noticed that the Recipient List says (network) next to it.

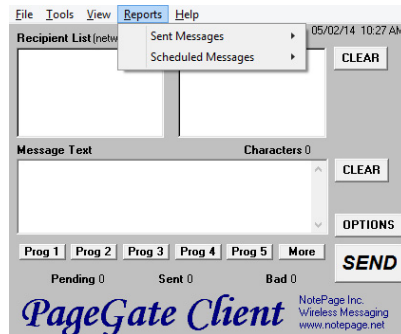


4.3.4 Reports

Reports

Top Previous Next

The Reports Menu of the GUI Client will allow you to run reports displaying a range of messages that meet a certain criteria.

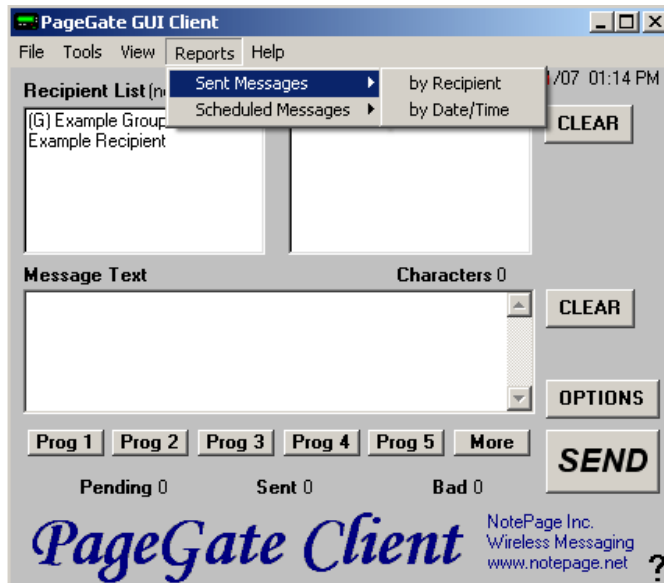


The Reports Menu of the GUI Client will display the following options:

Sent Messages and
Scheduled
Messages

4.3.4.1 Sent Messages

Sent Messages

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

By mousing over the Sent Messages portion of the Reports menu, you'll be given the option to run a report of all sent messages by the recipient they were sent to or by the Date and Time they were sent.

4.3.4.1.1 By Recipient

By Recipient

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Sent Messages

Recipient(s)

(ALL)
(G)Example Display Group
(G)Example Group
Example Recipient

Start Date: 5/21/2007 End Date: 5/21/2007
Start Time: 12:00 AM End Time: 01:15 PM

☒ Summary ☐ Details ☐ Totals Only

☒ All Msgs ☐ Good Msgs ☐ Bad Msgs

☒ Print report
☒ Preview ☐ Zero Values

☐ Write report to file

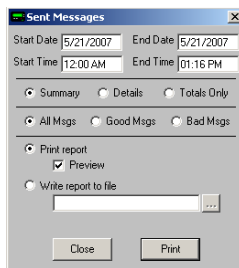
Close Print ?

Setting	Function
Recipient(s)	You can select a single recipient or group or leave the (ALL) option highlighted to run a report on all recipients and groups.
Start Date	The beginning date of the date range the report should show.
End Date	The ending date of the date range the report should show.
Start Time	The beginning time of the time range the report should show.
End Time	The beginning time of the time range the report should show.
Summary, Details, Totals Only	Summary will give a brief overview of the information requested whereas Details will include all possible information. Totals Only will only output the number of messages reported on, not giving any information about the messages themselves.
All Msgs, Good Msgs, Bad	The report show you all messages, only those messages

Msgs	that were sent successfully, or only those messages that failed to send.
Print Report	This option allows you to print the report to a selected printer.
Preview	When this option is enabled, before the report is actually printed, you are shown the details of the report and can choose to either close the preview, in which case nothing is printed, or print the report.
Zero Values	Enabling this option will include results that have a value of 0. This option is disabled by default.
Write report to file	When this option is enabled, the report is written to a file of your specification and name instead of queued to the printer.

4.3.4.1.2 By Date/Time

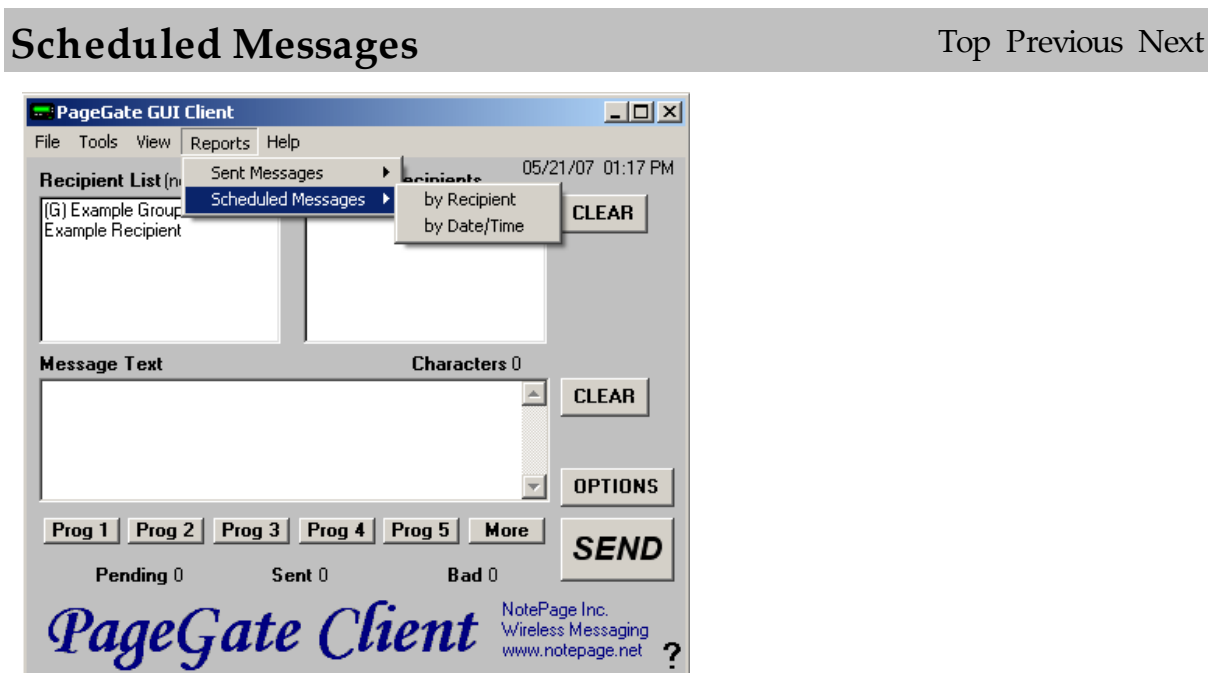
By Date/Time

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)


Setting	Function
Start Date	The beginning date of the date range the report should show.
End Date	The ending date of the date range the report should show.
Start Time	The beginning time of the time range the report should show.
End Time	The beginning time of the time range the report should show.
Summary, Details, Totals Only	Summary will give a brief overview of the information requested whereas Details will include all possible information. Totals Only will only output the number of messages reported on, not giving any information about the messages themselves.

All Msgs, Good Msgs, Bad Msgs	The report show you all messages, only those messages that were sent successfully, or only those messages that failed to send.
Print Report	This option allows you to print the report to a selected printer.
Preview	When this option is enabled, before the report is actually printed, you are shown the details of the report and can choose to either close the preview, in which case nothing is printed, or print the report.
Write report to file	When this option is enabled, the report is written to a file of your specification and name instead of queued to the printer.

4.3.4.2 Scheduled Messages



By mousing over the Scheduled Messages portion of the Reports menu, you'll be given the option to run a report of the delivery schedule by the recipient they were sent to or by the Date and Time they were sent.

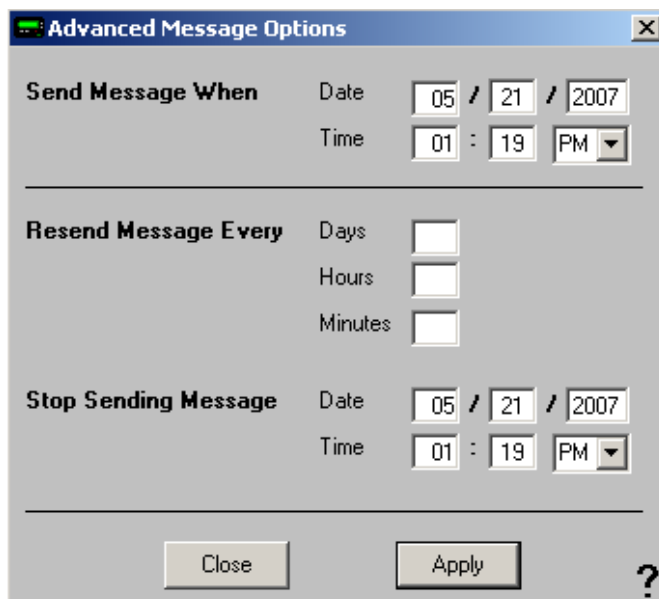
4.3.5 Scheduling Messages

Scheduling Messages

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

One of the functions of the PageGate Client is to set up a delivery schedule for messages. To do so, you would first select a recipient (or group) and type in your message. BEFORE you click the Send button, click on the Options button.

By clicking on the Options button in the PageGate GUI Client's main screen, you will be given the following prompt:



The image shows a screenshot of a Windows-style dialog box titled "Advanced Message Options". It contains three sections for scheduling a message. The first section, "Send Message When", has date fields set to 05 / 21 / 2007 and time fields set to 01 : 19 PM. The second section, "Resend Message Every", has empty input fields for Days, Hours, and Minutes. The third section, "Stop Sending Message", also has date fields set to 05 / 21 / 2007 and time fields set to 01 : 19 PM. At the bottom, there are "Close" and "Apply" buttons, and a question mark icon in the bottom right corner.

With this prompt, you can schedule messages to automatically be sent at some point in the future. You can also determine if that message will repeat or not.

To schedule a page to be sent at a future date and time, fill in the 'Send Message When' fields.

To have the scheduled message repeat, fill in the "Resend Messages Every" fields to set the interval

at which the message is resent.

Finally, fill in the 'Stop Sending Message' fields to set the date and time for the message to stop being sent.

For example, let's say that you had a message that, starting tomorrow, needed to be sent out once a day for the next month.

You would set the "Send Message When" date to tomorrow's date, set the time for whatever time the message needs to be delivered.

You would then set the "Resend message every" to 1 day OR 24 hours OR 1440 minutes.

The final step would be to set the "Stop Sending Message" date and time to exactly one month from the "Send Message When" Date.

Click on Apply, then click on the Send button.
The message is now scheduled!

5 PageGate Monitor

The PageGate Monitor (PG Monitor) is used for monitoring all aspects of the PageGate Server. It shows a set of real time log windows that display what each module of the program has done and is currently doing.

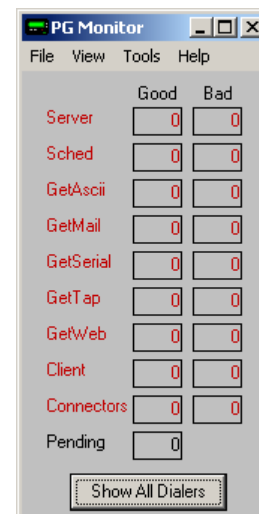
PG Monitor can be run from the paging server or on an administrator's workstation.

Items shown in green are currently running. Items shown in red are stopped.

The Good and Bad Columns show how many messages each module has successfully or unsuccessfully processed.

The Pending category shows the number of messages currently waiting to be delivered.

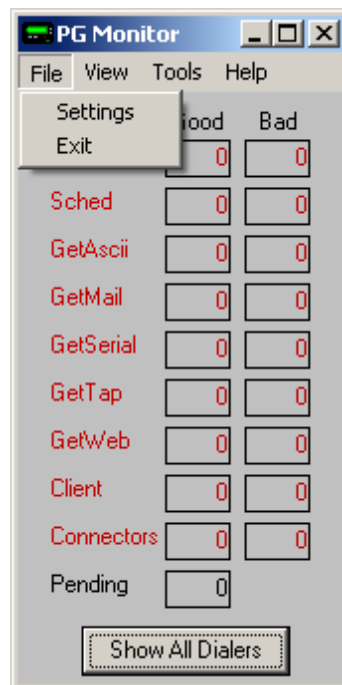
The four menus of the PageGate Monitor are File, View, Tools and Help.



5.1 File

File

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



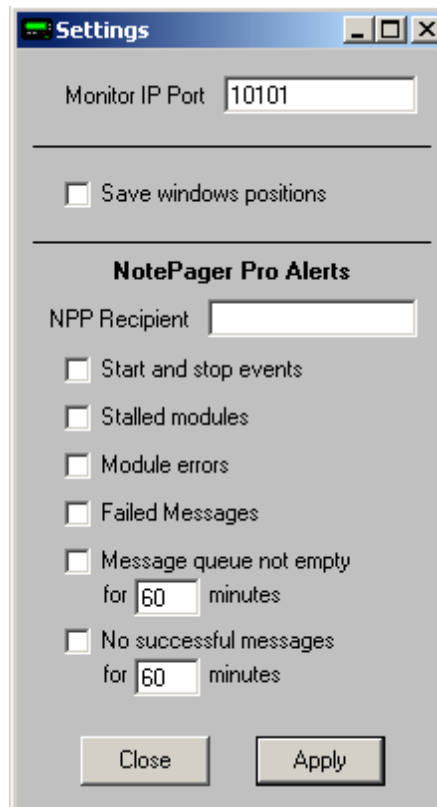
Under the File Menu of the PageGate Monitor, you have the options Settings and Exit.

By clicking on Settings, you can modify the base functions of your installation of the PageGate Monitor:

5.1.1 Settings

Settings

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

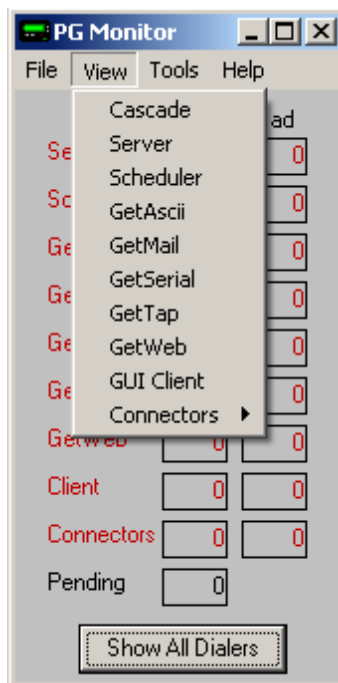


Setting	Function
Monitor IP Port	This is the port on TCP/IP that the PageGate Monitor receives data through. This setting must match the port specified in the Logging Settings of the PageGate Admin.
Save windows positions	If you move or modify the position, shape, or size of the log windows displayed by the PageGate Monitor and don't have this option checked, the log windows will revert to their original state each time you close the Monitor.
NotePager Pro Alerts	Everything under this heading requires NotePager Pro to be installed and configured. For more information, please refer to our website: http://www.notepager.net/notepagerpro.htm
NPP Recipient	Use this field to specify a recipient or group you've configured within NotePager Pro. All alerts sent from the PageGate Monitor will go to this NotePager Pro Recipient.

Start and stop events	When this option is enabled, all instances of a PageGate Module Starting or Stopping will be messaged to the specified NotePager Pro Recipient or Group.
Stalled modules	When this option is enabled, if a module has stalled or is unresponsive in Windows, the specified NotePager Pro Recipient or Group will be messaged.
Module errors	When this option is enabled, if a module produces an error message, that error message will be sent to the specified NotePager Pro Recipient or Group.
Failed Messages	When this option is enabled, if a message fails, the specified NotePager Pro Recipient or Group will be notified.
Message queue not empty for X minutes	When this option is enabled, if the number of pending messages never reaches zero for a specified amount of time, the specified NotePager Pro Recipient or Group will be notified.
No successful messages for X minutes	When this option is enabled, if no message is successfully sent for X number of minutes, the specified NotePager Pro Recipient or Group will be notified.
Close	This button will close the Settings of the PageGate Monitor. If you haven't Applied your changes, they will be lost.
Apply	This button will save all modifications you've recently made to the Settings of the PageGate Monitor.

5.2 View

[View](#)[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

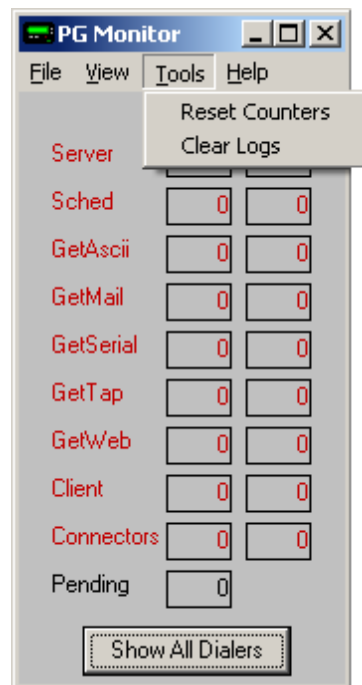


The View menu allows you to specify which log windows are shown. Generally, you should always run the Server, Scheduler, and Connector1 log windows; the rest are optional. You can specify whether a log window is shown by checking or unchecking each option under the View menu.

5.3 Tools

Tools

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)



Option	Function
Reset Counters	Resets all counters, except for Pending, to zero.
Clear Logs	Clears the active log windows but does not purge the information written to the log directory by the PageGate Admin.

6 Running PageGate the First Time

Running PageGate the First Time

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Before running PageGate for the first time, be sure you've configured each of the components you wish to run. For information on what modules are available, how to configure the program to send messages and how to Administrate the software, please review the PageGate Admin portion of the documentation.

If you're using Windows XP or Server 2003, launch the PageGate server by selecting its shortcut in the Start menu.

If you're using Windows Vista, 7, 8/8.1, Server 2008/R2 or Server 2012, launch the PageGate server by right clicking on the PageGate Server shortcut in the start menu and selecting the "Run As Administrator" option to authorize the program with the User Accounts Control security feature.

For more detailed information, please review the following sections:

One Time Configuration

Starting and Stopping PageGate

Monitoring PageGate

6.1 One Time Configuration

One Time Configuration

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

1. Go to the system that's going to host the database and main paging program for PageGate (I'll refer to it as the PageGate Server).
2. Browse to our website, <http://www.notepage.net>
3. Click on the Download button under the PageGate section.
4. Save the pgsetup.exe file to your desktop.
5. Once it's downloaded, run it.
6. When it comes up with the four different installation options, choose the first: PageGate Server
7. This step isn't required but I would highly recommend changing the installation directory from c:\program files\PageGate\ to c:\PageGate\ - reason being, the Program Files directory is generally a 'protected' directory in the most recent version of Windows and you'll save yourself a networking headache later if you do this step.
8. The rest of the steps you can largely breeze through, just click on next until the installation is finished.

9. From your Start Menu, run the PageGate Admin.

1 Unless you need to specify a different location, leave the Program directories at their
0 default values.

.

1 Click Apply.

1

.

1 You'll get a message that a new database has been created and that PageGate must
2 be restarted. Click on OK and run the Admin from the Start Menu again.

.

1 Go to the Program - Settings section of the Admin.

3

.

1 Under 'Run PageGate As' click on Windows Service and click Apply.

4

.

1 When you do this, you'll be prompted for a username and password. Leave both
5 boxes blank and click on Apply.

.

1 When it finishes switching run styles, all that remains is to set up the Carriers and
6 Recipients. To add a Carrier, right click on Carriers and left click on Add. Same for
. the Recipients (right click on Recipients, left click on Add).

When it finishes switching run styles, all that remains is to set up the Carriers
and Recipients.

To add a Carrier, right click on Carriers and left click on Add. Same for the
Recipients (right click on Recipients, left click on Add).

Now, to get the Client installed and working on the workstations, there's a little
networking setup that has to be done in advance. All you really need to do is

share the PageGate Database directory (on the PageGate Server) on the network.

To install the PageGate Client on one of your workstations:

1. Go to a system that's going to run the PageGate Client.
2. Browse to our website, <http://www.notepage.net>
3. Click on the Download button under the PageGate section.
4. Save the pgsetup.exe file to your desktop.
5. Once it's downloaded, run it.
6. When it comes up with the four different installation options, choose the fourth item:
Install PageGate Client
7. You can largely just breeze through the installation, clicking on next.
8. When you run the Client for the first time, it's going to ask you for a database Path.
That database path is going to be the network path of the PageGate directory that you shared on the network
(example: \\servername\directory\)
9. Click on Apply.

6.2 Starting and Stopping PageGate

Starting and Stopping PageGate

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Start PageGate by choosing 'PageGate Server' from the Windows start menu. Typically this can be found at Start - Programs - PageGate - PageGate Server.

After PageGate is started, a pager icon will appear in the Windows system tray on the bottom right-hand corner of the screen (next to the clock). This icon is used to stop PageGate, start the PG Admin program, or start the PG Monitor

program. Clicking on the pager with the left mouse button will display a menu with these options.

If PageGate is running as an application, the first menu option is the Restore function and will simply remove the pager icon from the system tray, and open a window on your desktop. Use the minimize button to return the icon to the system tray and remove the PageGate window. Quitting the PageGate window by using the 'X' control or by using the 'Quit PageGate' button will stop the entire PageGate Server application.

If PageGate is running as a Windows System service, the first menu option will be 'Start' instead of 'Restore'. This option will start the PageGate system service if it is not already running.

The second menu item is 'PG Admin'. Choosing this item will start PageGate's Administration program (if it is not already running).

The third menu item is 'PG Monitor'. Choosing this item will start PageGate's real-time monitoring program.

If PageGate is running as an Application, the last option is 'Quit'. Selecting 'Quit' will stop the entire PageGate application. If PG Admin or PG Monitor are running, they will need to be exited individually.

If PageGate is running as a Windows System service, the last option is 'Stop'. This will stop the PageGate Server service from running. If the PG Admin or PG Monitor programs are running, they will need to be quit out of individually.

If PageGate has been setup to run as Windows Service, it will start automatically each time the computer is restarted. Otherwise, you must start PageGate manually from the Windows start menu. (or add it to the computer's startup group).

6.3 Monitoring PageGate

Monitoring PageGate

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

While setting up PageGate and experimenting with its capabilities, PageGate's

behavior can be monitored by using the PG Monitor, which is installed along with the PageGate Server.

It can be started from the PageGate group in the Windows Start Menu, or ,if the PageGate server is already running, by clicking on the icon of the pager in the Windows system tray (down by the clock).

Whenever the PageGate server is running, it will send status and logging information to the PG Monitor program.

For more information about the operation of PG Monitor, see the section under the 'Modules' chapter in this manual labeled 'PG Monitor'. .

7 Support

Support

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

NotePage Support is available Monday through Friday from 9:00 AM to 5:00 PM Eastern Time. For more information and contact details, please visit the Support section of our website: <http://www.notepage.net/support.htm>

7.1 FAQs

FAQs

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Most, if not all, of your questions can be answered either on our support site: <http://www.notepage.net/support.htm>
or on our support forum: <http://www.notepage.net/forum/>

7.2 Where to Find Help

Where to Find Help

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

There are several places to find help on the operation of PageGate.

This Help file is probably the best resource for most questions; it can be accessed from the PageGate program group in your Start Menu, or by clicking Help in the PageGate Admin.

If contacting NotePage's Technical Support Department, please obtain the

relevant PageGate Log files and database. For more information on how to do that, please review the Database and Logging sections of the documentation.

All of PageGate's manuals are also available on NotePage's websites in HTML format. (found under the 'Support' section):

<http://www.notepage.net>

<http://www.notepage.com>

All of PageGate's manuals are also available to download in .doc format (readable by WordPad, MS Word, etc.), from the 'Support' section of our website:

<http://www.notepage.net>

<http://www.notepage.com>

NotePage Forum at <http://www.notepage.net/forum/>

7.3 Glossary

Glossary

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Glossary defines the modules, features and capabilities in the PageGate software.

7.3.1 Ad-Hoc

Ad-Hoc

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Ad-Hoc feature enables text messages to be sent to recipients not already setup in PageGate's database. An Ad-Hoc recipient is set up for each carrier. Enter the cell phone in the text message. PageGate uses the cell phone number when delivering the text message to the recipient's wireless carrier.

The Ad-Hoc feature is available with the PageGate's 5,000 Pager License or greater.

7.3.2 Carrier

Carrier

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

A carrier refers to the recipient's wireless carrier or service provider.

7.3.3 Cell Phone

Cell Phone

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Cell phone or mobile phone refers to a wireless device that can receive a SMS text message sent from PageGate software.

7.3.4 Character Content

Character Content

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Messages sent by PageGate software include more information than just the message text. The Sender's Name (can be optionally disabled) and the Subject of the message (optional). A colon (:) separates these fields.

Most pagers have a limited character set usually consisting of upper and lower case letters, numbers, and some symbols (periods, commas, dollar signs, exclamation points, etc.)

Non-printing characters such as carriage returns, line feeds, and tabs can optionally be removed from a recipient's messages.

If the Reliepage feature is enabled, messages that are split into a series of messages will include the numbering index, i.e. 1 of 3, 2 of 3, 3 of 3.

7.3.5 Character Length

Character Length

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The maximum characters or Max Chars for each message can be set for each carrier and recipient. The character number default is 240.

Different carriers accept different message lengths. Common message lengths that actual carriers accept are 160, 180, 200 and 240.

In the PageGate GUI Client Interface set the maximum message length.

If the Reliepage feature is enabled messages that are split into a series of messages will be prefixed and include the numbering index, i.e. 1 of 3, 2 of 3, 3 of 3. See Reliepage.

7.3.6 Comments

Comments

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Add 'Comments' into 4 different fields, in the PageGate Admin module, by selecting 'Recipients' or 'Groups'. Select the relevant name of the recipient or group and then select 'Misc'. Enter comments into the relevant boxes (i.e. Senior Technical Specialist, IT Dept, etc.)

Change the label name of 'Comment1', 'Comment2', etc. in the PageGate Admin module by selecting 'Database' - 'Settings'. Under 'Recipient Extra Field Labels', enter into the relevant boxes the Comment field labels (i.e. Title, Dept, etc.)

Setup filtered recipients in PageGate GUI Client's main screen right-click on the name of the recipient or group in the 'Recipient List' box. or the 'Selected Recipients' list to view the 'Full', 'Short Name' and 'Comments'.

The 'Recipient List' box, displayed on the PageGate GUI Client's main screen, lists individual recipients or groups of recipients, that users can send messages to. Search for a recipient by typing the first few letters of the name. The recipient can then be selected.

Keyboard and Mouse Shortcuts, as well as the Manual can be found in the PageGate GUI Client's menu bar.

7.3.7 Connectors

Connectors

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Connectors are part of the PageGate software that is responsible for delivery of the messages. PageGate supports multiple connections with Additional Connectors.

The term Connector refers to more than activating a modem and dial. More specifically a Connector refers to activating a protocol (i.e. TAP, FAX, SNPP, WCTP and STMP) to send a message.

7.3.8 Dialers

Dialers

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

A Dialer is a Connector. A Connector is part of the PageGate software that is

responsible for delivery of the messages. PageGate supports multiple connections with Additional Connectors.

The term Connector refers to more than activating a modem and dial. More specifically a Connector refers to activating a protocol (i.e. TAP, FAX, SNPP, WCTP and STMP) to send a message.

7.3.9 Direct Connect

Direct Connect

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

PageGate supports a direct serial connection (TAP) to an in-house paging terminal, the most efficient connection for delivery.

7.3.10 Display-group

Display-group

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

A Display group is a control group that allows administrators to specify a list of users that a workstation or client can be locked to display.

7.3.11 Email

Email

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Using the SMTP protocol PageGate can send messages out an internet connection to an email address.

PageGate with the front-end Email Interface can receive messages from an email account or mail server using SMTP/POP3 mail.

The Email Interface is not required to send messages or email outbound using SMTP and an internet connection.

7.3.12 Export

Export

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Export settings to PageGate from other NotePage software to keep settings updated. See also the Synchronization feature.

PageGate can also export settings out to standard comma delimited text files.

7.3.13 Failover

Failover

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

The Failover feature, in the PageGate Admin module's carrier and recipient settings, allows undeliverable messages to be sent to an alternative carrier, recipient, group or out another connection.

7.3.14 Fax

Fax

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

FAX protocol is used by PageGate software to dial-up and send a message to a fax machine.

7.3.15 Filter

Filter

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Filter the list of recipients of the GUI Client Interface. Filter recipients by full name (the name displayed in the 'Recipient List'), short name (the name used by the PageGate Admin module) or Comment fields (definable in the PageGate Admin module).

In each field, enter characters that match exactly each recipient to be included in the list.

To return to the full list leave all the filter fields' blank or click on the 'Clear' button next to the Selected Recipient box.

7.3.16 Font

Font

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Font can be altered to Small Recipient Font.

7.3.17 Group

Group

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Groups can be created to send a message to a predefined group of recipients. There are no limits to the number of groups.

Do not include any groups within a group that has a member of the original group. This would create a never-ending circle of messages.

7.3.18 GSM

GSM

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

GSM or Global System for Mobile communication - direct message delivery using a GSM modem.

7.3.19 History

History

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

History Log shows activity about all messages sent from GUI Client's workstation.

The 'Station Number' set in the 'Setup' screen is used to generate this log. If unique station numbers are not used for each workstation, messages sent from other workstations may appear in this log. There is also the option of printing the log, or copying the log to your computer's clipboard for use in another application.

7.3.20 Hold Messages

Hold Messages

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Hold Messages enables messages for a recipient to be put on hold until a later time. This feature might be used to hold noncritical messages during the night until day time.

7.3.22 ID/Pin

ID/Pin

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

ID/Pin refers to the pager, cell phone or wireless number for the recipient's wireless device.

ID/Pin numbers are sometimes incorrectly referred to as a capcode. A pager's capcode, ID/Pin and phone number could all be the same number, or they could all be different numbers.

7.3.23 Import

Import

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Import settings to PageGate from other NotePage software to keep settings updated. Also see the Synchronization feature.

PageGate can also import settings from standard comma delimited text files.

7.3.24 Init String

Init String

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Init String used by PageGate software to send strings to initialize modems, before using your server's modem to dial, connect and communicate with the carrier's modem.

A modem's init string help control different parameters such as speed, error correction, compression algorithms, etc.

7.3.25 Interface

Interface

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

PageGate has several front-end Interfaces, which enables the software to accept messages or input of data from many different sources. PageGate's front-end Interfaces: GUI Client, Web, Commandline/Ascii, Email, TAP-In, Serial, SNPP-In and Touch-Tone.

Each Interface can be used by itself, or in conjunction with the other Interfaces. Some of the Interfaces gain added capabilities when used with each other. For example, if the Email Interface is used at the same time as the Web Interface, a copy of each message received via a web page can be sent to the recipient's wireless device and forwarded to the recipient's email account. This gives the recipient a record of messages received in his/her email mailbox.

With the Interfaces PageGate can be integrated with another program or system. The Commandline/Ascii Interface can be used for command line messaging, and polling a predetermined file for data.

7.3.26 Internet

Internet

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Internet connection refers to a T1 Line, DSL, cable, wireless satellite service, etc. for PageGate to send messages to the recipient's wireless carrier or email address.

Internet connection often refers to a high-speed or broadband connection.

7.3.27 Local Domain

Local Domain

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Local Domain refers to the most detailed domain your computer resides in.

Determine your Local Domain this is, by looking at the domain name reserved for your computer: the domain name of the most detailed domain is the domain name of your computer with the first word omitted. For example, "yourlocaldomain.com".

The local domain is often the IP number range and/or domain of your organisation or ISP.

If your company domain names are "mycompany.com" and "myothercompany.com", you would specify: mycompany.com

7.3.28 Local Recipient List

Local Recipient List

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

With each PageGate GUI Client Interface, users can send text messages to recipients from a Local Recipient List or the Network Recipient List. The Local Recipient List limits the user to send messages to specific recipients in PageGate.

Recipients in a Local Recipient List must still be recipients in PageGate.

Lock a user to the Local Recipient List by using the Password

the 'Setup' screen
inside the PageGate GUI Client program.

7.3.29 Lock To Group

Lock To Group

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Lock to Group feature locks a PageGate GUI Client to send to only a specific group.

Lock to Group prevents recipients and groups from one department being displayed in the another department's GUI Client's Recipient List.

7.3.30 Logs / Logging

Logs / Logging

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Logs contain information about the status and functions of PageGate.

7.3.31 Maximum Characters

Maximum Characters

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Maximum Characters or Max Chars determines the number or characters or length of the message.

In the PageGate Admin module under each Recipient and Carrier settings the maximum character default is 240. Maximum characters can be set up to 2000 characters. The actual carriers set their own maximum characters or message length for each message accepted. Common message lengths that carriers accept are from 120 to 300.

A message with a character count in excess of the Carrier Max Chars setting will be split into an individual number of messages until the entire length of original message has been completely sent. In addition, with a character count in excess of what the actual carrier accepts a text message will send out individual, sequential or concatenate numbered messages (i.e. 1 of 3, 2 of 3, 3 of 3) until the entire message is sent. See Reliabase.

If a recipient's character limit is set larger than the carrier's character limit, the message will be automatically broken into smaller messages and sequentially numbered (i.e. 1 of 3, 2 of 3, 3 of 3). The numbering of messages is important because, although PageGate sends the messages in the correct order to the wireless carrier, the messages may not be received by the wireless device in the same order. This is possible due to the way the wireless network or system works.

To avoid sending truncated messages set the carrier character's length higher than the recipient character's length.

7.3.32 Mobile Phone

Mobile Phone

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Mobile phone or cell phone refers to a wireless device that can receive a text message from PageGate software.

7.3.33 Modem

Modem

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Modem or dial-up modem use by PageGate to send messages to a wireless carrier or paging terminal. Additional Connectors are used by PageGate to connect to multiple modems and/or a paging terminal.

7.3.34 MultiPage

MultiPage

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

MultiPage feature enables PageGate to accept a single message that is addressed to multiple recipients.

Only a single MultiPage recipient needs to use the MultiPage feature. When a message is sent to a MultiPage recipient, PageGate knows to look for a list of the actual recipients in the message itself.

For example, when using the MultiPage feature with PageGate's Email Interface and email, address the email message to the name of the MultiPage recipient, and provide a list of the actual recipients on the subject line of the email.

7.3.35 Network Recipient List

Network Recipient List

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

With each PageGate GUI Client Interface, users can send text messages to recipients from the Network Recipient List or a Local Recipient List. The Network Recipient List allows users to send messages to all recipients in PageGate.

7.3.36 Notification

Notification

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

PageGate notifies of whether the sent text message was successful or failed. Notification is by the recipient's wireless carrier that PageGate is communicating with.

7.3.37 Notify Only

Notify Only

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Notify Only is a predefined notification code or number to be sent by PageGate instead of the actual message. This option is most commonly used when paging a numeric pager.

7.3.38 On-Call Group

On-Call Group

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

On-Call Group feature, whereby a schedule can be setup defining when recipient's are on-call (starting day and time, ending day and time). Only the recipients that are scheduled to be on-call receive the message.

7.3.39 Pager

Pager

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Pager refers to a wireless device that can receive a message sent from PageGate software.

PageGate can page alpha-numeric and numeric pagers.

7.3.40 Preprogram

Preprogram

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Preprogram or preset messages to instantly add a pre-canned message to the GUI Client Interface's Message Text box. Create and access 5 preprogrammed messages on the GUI Client Interface's main screen (i.e. Prog 1-5 buttons). Create and access a total of 100 commonly preprogrammed messages (i.e. More button).

Each preprogrammed message can be assigned a specific recipient or group.

7.3.41 Protocols

Protocols

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Protocols and protocol settings are how PageGate software communicates with the recipient's wireless carrier.

PageGate uses the internet protocols: SNPP, WCTP and SMTP with an internet connection.

PageGate uses the modem protocols: TAP, FAX, GSM, UCP and TONE with dial-up modems.

PageGate uses TAP with a direct serial connection to an in-house paging terminal.

The recipient's wireless carrier determine what protocols they support, and what their protocol settings or host formats are. Carrier protocol settings at <http://www.notepage.net/support.htm>

7.3.42 Purge After

Purge After

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Purge After sets the number of days that delivered text messages are kept in the PageGate database before being deleted.

7.3.43 Recipient

Recipient

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Recipient is synonymous with cell phone or mobile phone, pager, PDA or email address. Recipient refers to the person who is receiving the message on their wireless device or email.

PageGate uses the recipient's name, which remains the same, recipient's carrier and the wireless device's number. Using the recipient's name simplifies any changes to the pager or cell phone number and carrier.

Note: in older versions of PageGate software the term 'user' was used instead of 'recipient'. In recent versions a 'user' is the sender of the text message, and a 'recipient' is the receiver of the text message.

7.3.44 Redundancy

Redundancy

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Redundancy enables PageGate to continue sending messages out. If Additional Connectors are used with PageGate, and a failure occurs on one Connector (i.e. with modem, internet connection, serial ports, etc.), PageGate will continue to operate on the other Connector(s), ensuring that there is no outage of messaging.

Connectors are intelligent and will try to deliver messages in the most efficient manner possible.

7.3.45 Reliapiage

Reliapiage

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Reliapiage sequentially numbers (i.e. 1 of 3, 2 of 3, 3 of 3) a message when split or broken up into a series of individual messages. Reliapiage and the numbering sequence is maintained for each recipient. Missed messages for a recipient can be resent from the Sent or History logs.

With a character count in excess of what the actual carrier accepts, PageGate will also send out sequentially numbered messages (i.e. 1 of 2, 2 of 2) until the entire message is sent.

If a wireless device receives the split messages with a number missing, recipients will know part of the message was missed. Reliapiage is useful in areas with poor coverage.

To avoid sending truncated messages set the carrier character length higher than the recipient character length (or the recipient character length lower than the carrier character length).

See also Character Length.

7.3.46 Repeating

Repeating

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Repeating messages feature to send from PageGate the same message by minute, hour and date. Available with PageGate GUI Client Interface under Options.

7.3.47 Reports

Reports

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Reports on sent messages can be can be previewed with recipient, date/time, carrier and message, before printing or saving to a text file.

7.3.48 Schedule

Schedule

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Schedule messages to be sent at a future preset date and time.

The Schedule feature is available with the PageGate's GUI Client Interface - Options button. The GUI Client's run state does not affect delivery since the scheduled message is written to the database with a delivery date and time. The PageGate Server must be running (at the scheduled time) to deliver the scheduled message.

7.3.49 Sender's Name

Sender's Name

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Sender's Name is sent at the beginning of each message, so the recipient knows who the message is sent from. Carrier's may reject the message is there is no sender's name.

7.3.50 Serial Connection

Serial Connection

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Direct serial connection (TAP) is supported by PageGate to send pages to an in-house paging terminal.

7.3.51 Service Provider

Service Provider

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Service Provider refers to the recipient's wireless service provider or a carrier (as labeled in PageGate).

7.3.52 SMS

SMS

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

SMS or Short Messaging Service are short text messages sent from PageGate software to a wireless device such as a mobile phone, cell phone, pager, PDA, etc. Also known as paging and text messaging.

7.3.53 SMTP

SMTP

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

SMTP or Simple Mail Transport Protocol: an internet protocol for sending text messages or email over the internet. SMTP uses port 25.

7.3.54 SNPP

SNPP

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

SNPP or Simple Network Paging Protocol: an internet protocol to send messages over the internet. SNPP uses port 444.

7.3.55 Spell Check

Spell Check

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Spell Check can be enabled in the PageGate GUI Client Interface Setup screen. MS Word is required.

7.3.56 Station Number

Station Number

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Station Number is used by the Log files to indicate which station messages were sent from.

A unique number should be set for each workstation in each GUI Client Interface's Setup screen. To have a group of networked workstations or GUI Client Interfaces to share a common history log, set their station numbers to be the same.

7.3.57 Synchronization

Synchronization

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Synchronization feature is for keeping databases in multiple PageGate's updated.

7.3.58 TAP

TAP

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

TAP or Telocator Alphanumeric Protocol: a protocol to deliver messages using a dial-up modem.

7.3.59 Text Message

Text Message

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Text message is a short message of text or data sent from PageGate software to a wireless device such as a cell phone, mobile phone, pager, PDA, etc. Also known as paging and SMS.

7.3.60 Touch-Tone

Touch-Tone

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

TONE or DTMF (Touch Tone): a protocol used for message delivery to numeric pagers.

7.3.61 UCP

UCP

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

UCP or Universal Computer Protocol: a protocol to send messages using a modem.

7.3.62 Update Frequency

Update Frequency

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

Update Frequency setting specifies how often (in seconds) the PageGate GUI Client Interface updates its statistics and logs from PageGate.

Too small a value may generate unnecessary network traffic, while too large a value will not give the user current information.

7.3.63 WCTP

WCTP

[Top](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#)

WCTP or Wireless Communications Transfer Protocol: internet protocol used to send messages over the Internet. WCTP uses port 80.

7.3.64 Wireless Devices

Wireless Devices

[Top](#) [Previous](#)

Wireless devices refers to a cell phone, mobile phone, pager, PDA or Personal Digital Assistant, digital phone, bill boards, TAP/IXO messaging devices, Pager PC, PCMCIA Cards, email address or any device that can receive a text message from PageGate.

Index

- [-

[OBJECT] 117